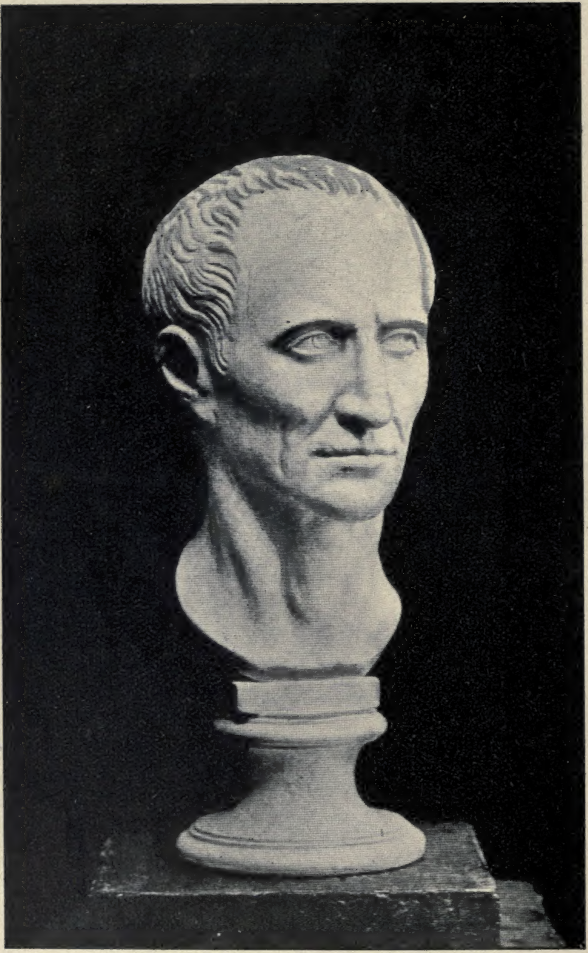
MATRICULATION LATIN

CARRUTHERS AND ROBERTSON

To
Professor Fletcher,
with kind regards of
Toronto May 1907,

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/matriculationlat00carruoft



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(From the Roman Gallery, British Museum.)

LaL.Gr
C3196m.2

Cl. Sem.

Gage's Twentieth Century Series

MATRICULATION
LATIN

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.,

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF GREEK, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE,
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO,

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, M.A.,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK, VICTORIA COLLEGE,
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO.

182116
6.7.23

DEPARTMENTAL
LIBRARY

W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED
TORONTO

Entered according to Act of Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, by W. J. GAGE & CO. LIMITED, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

THIS book contains the Caesar and Virgil required for pass University Matriculation, besides a considerable amount of prose Latin for practice in sight reading. It contains also a statement of the principles of Latin syntax, together with exercises in prose composition based on Caesar. This inclusion of selections from both prose and poetry in the same volume is attended with certain advantages, and is not altogether a new departure, as the plan has been followed in recent years in more than one excellent work published in England and the United States for pupils at this stage.

Since the character of the work required, in future, of pupils preparing for the examination in Latin for University Matriculation and Junior Teachers is materially changed, the book has been prepared mainly with a view to meeting the new requirements.

According to the new prescription, special importance is to be attached to the translation at sight of passages of average difficulty from Caesar. The prescribed portion of Caesar, while of an amount sufficient to prepare the pupil for the test of his knowledge of Latin Syntax and his power of idiomatic translation, is obviously too small to give sufficient practice in sight reading. Accordingly, the story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul (Books I.-IV.) has been given in, as far as practicable, Caesar's own language. This has been reduced in amount to somewhat more than the length of an average book of Caesar, by the elimination of digressions, by the omission or modification of passages of more than average difficulty, and in the earlier sections by a certain measure of simplification. These simplified sections would also serve admirably for an easy transition from the introductory book to the reading of Caesar.

The prescribed text of Caesar has been annotated with a view to the accurate comprehension of the author, to syntactical study and idiomatic translation. The classified index of noteworthy points of syntax will, we trust, be found useful to both teacher and pupil, especially for purposes of review.

The statement of syntax contains, printed in large type, the more common rules, which should be carefully studied by all pupils, and upon which the exercises in composition are based. It deals also with many points which are not found in the ordinary introductory book, or necessary for the prescribed prose composition, but a knowledge of which, nevertheless, is often required for the intelligent reading of the prescribed authors, and the absence of which would necessitate the use of an additional book on Latin grammar. The portions dealing with these points are printed in smaller type.

Of the sections printed in smaller type the following should be carefully studied: sections 179 to 184 on the use of the tenses; and sections 201 to 205 on idiomatic translation.

An attempt has been made to give an accurate presentation of the rules and facts of Latin syntax, in the light derived from the standard authorities, including Gildersleeve and Lodge, Harkness, Bennett, Allen and Greenough, Lane, West, and Hale and Buck.

To illustrate the common rules of Latin syntax, a double series of exercises on prose composition is given, one series based on the Bellum Gallicum generally, the other on the prescribed chapters of Books IV. and V.

The notes on the prescribed Virgil are meant to promote the intelligent and appreciative reading of that author, in other words to help the pupil to understand the author's meaning, to feel the influence of his poetic charm, and to render the Latin lines with taste and sympathy into worthy idiomatic English prose. While it has been deemed undesirable to treat the Virgil, like the Caesar, as a subject of special grammatical study, yet every effort has been made to enable the pupil to cope with those difficulties in Virgilian syntax and Virgilian diction which so often prove a bar to the comprehension or the adequate expression of the poet's meaning.

TORONTO, July, 1906.

CONTENTS.

PAGE
Introduction to Caesar 9
The Story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul 13
Caesar, De Bello Gallico, IV. 20—V. 23 39
Notes on Caesar, De Bello Gallico, IV. 20—V. 23. . . 67
Index of Points of Syntax and Accidence 94
Vocabulary to Caesar 101
Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition . . 169
English-Latin Vocabulary 309
Introduction to Virgil's Aeneid 323
Virgil, Aeneid II., 1–505 337
Notes on Virgil's Aeneid II., 1–505 355
Vocabulary to Virgil 391
Index 414

Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition.

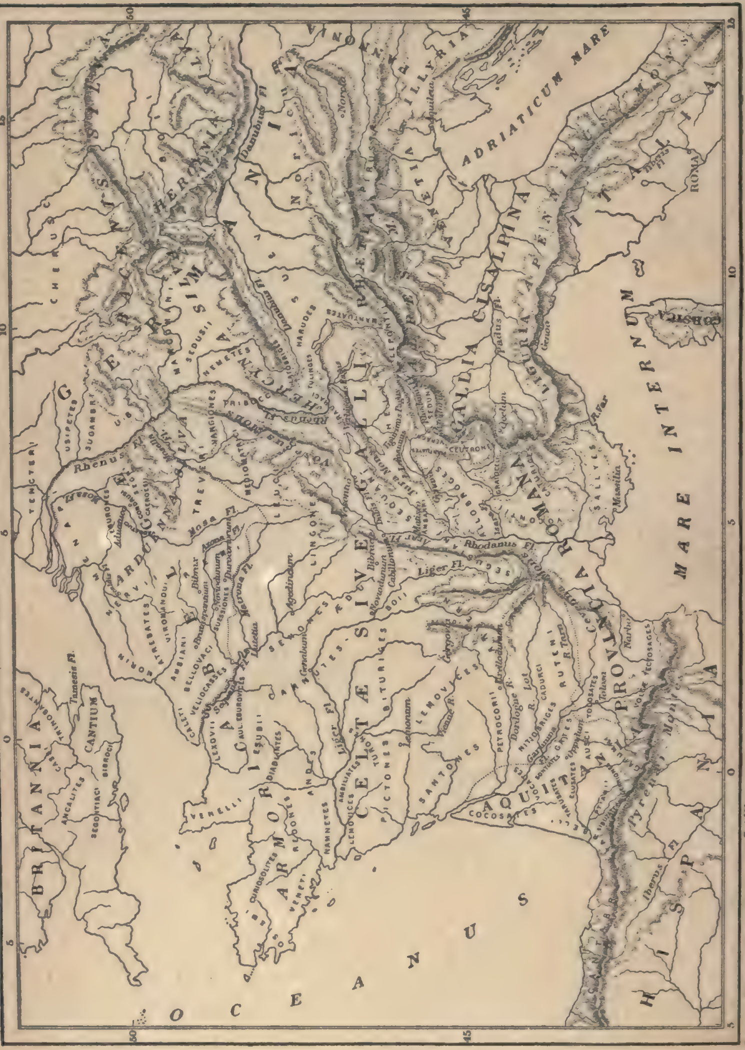
Introductory.—Order of Words, Order of Clauses, Concords 169
The Accusative and Infinitive 176
Complementary Infinitive 180
Final Clauses (Clauses of Purpose) 183
Consecutive or Result Clauses. Clauses of Characteristic . 187
Questions, Direct and Indirect 190
The Present and Perfect Participles 195
The Ablative Absolute 199
Verbs Completed by the Dative, Genitive or Ablative. The Impersonal Passive 202

PAGE
Conditional Sentences 207
Clauses of Concession. Clauses of Proviso. Conditional Clauses of Comparison 211
Uses of the Accusative 214
Uses of the Dative 218
Uses of the Genitive 223
Uses of the Ablative 229
Verbal Nouns—Infinitive, Gerund, Supine . . . 236
Verbal Adjectives—Gerundive, Participles 240
Expressions of Place and Time 243
Imperative. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive . . 247
Verbs of Fearing. Uses of **Quīn** and **Quōminus** . . . 251
Duty, Necessity, Possibility, Permission 253
Causal Sentences. Uses of **Cum** 256
Temporal Clauses 260
Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns 264
Indefinite Pronouns 269
The Relative Pronoun 273
Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse 277
Tenses of the Indicative 281
Indirect Discourse **(Ōrātiō Oblīqua)** 286
Different Forms of the Noun Clause 294
Continuous Prose and Idiomatic Translation . . . 298

ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE
Caius Julius Caesar . . . . *Frontispiece*
Roman Eagle 9
Sub Sarcinīs 31
Roman Sword 38
Legionary Soldier 50
Armor and Weapons 61
Roman Soldiers on the March 66
Roman War Galleys 79
Testūdō (*from Trajan's Column*) 86
Transport Ship 94
Attack on a Walled City 168
Ancient City Wall and Gate 308
Virgil 323
Ancient Temple 336
The Laocoon Group 353
Ruins of Ancient Troy 354
Spear 390

Map of Gaul and Britain 8


GALLIA
CELTÆ SIVE GALLI
BELGÆ
AQUITANI
PROVINCIA ROMANA
GALLIA CISALPINA
GERMANIA
BRITANNIA
HISPANIA
ITALIA
ILLYRIA
RHAETIA
NORICUM
VINDELICIA
HELVETII
ARMORICA
LIGURIA
APENNINUS M.
HERCYNIA SILVA
ARDUENNA SILVA
CANTIUM
CORSICA
ROMA
OCEANUS
MARE INTERNUM
ADRIATICUM MARE
Rhenus Fl.
Rhodanus Fl.
Liger Fl.
Sequana Fl.
Mosa Fl.
Garumna
Danubius Fl.
Padus Fl.
Iberus Fl.
Tamesis Fl.
Arar Fl.
Matrona Fl.
Axona Fl.
Lutetia
Massilia
Narbo
Tolosa
Genava
Vesontio
Bibracte
Cenabum
Gergovia
Alesia
Agedincum
Samarobriva
Aquileia
Genua
Jura Mons
Vosegus
Pyrenæi Montes
Alpes
Lemannus
50
45
15
10
5
0
0 50 100 150 200 Eng. Miles

INTRODUCTION.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

Rise to Eminence.

Caius Julius Caesar was born at Rome on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. (or, as Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest patrician families of that city. Although of aristocratic birth, he espoused the cause of the popular party, and after barely escaping with his life on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82 B.C., he withdrew from active politics for several years. By 70 B.C., however, he had become a favorite of the people, and one of its most influential leaders. He rose rapidly through the various grades of office, being made in succession quaestor, aedile, pontifex maximus (a life-office), praetor, and finally consul in 59 B.C.

First Triumvirate.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles ; Caesar, the leader of the popular party ; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. On Caesar's suggestion they formed a coalition (the so-called First Triumvirate), the result of which was to place the practical supremacy of the state in the hands of these three men. The powerful influence of this coalition secured for him, after his consulship, the administration for five years of the three provinces, Illyricum and Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul.* In 55 B.C., by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, this command was extended for another period of five years.

Conquest of Gaul and Expeditions to Britain.

From 58 to 51 B.C. Caesar was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. In the first three campaigns he made himself master of that country from the Province and the Pyrenees to the Rhine and the Ocean. In the fourth year (55 B.C.), after driving back across the Rhine certain invading German tribes, Caesar late in the summer undertook a reconnoitring expedition to Britain. He did not venture inland, and returned in a few weeks, but "he had learned where and how to land, and had noted the British method of fighting ; above all he had accustomed his men to the sight of the sea and the painted barbarians." Caesar was not satisfied with this expedition, and in the next summer (54 B.C.), in spite of growing disaffection in Gaul, set sail for Britain with a much larger force, as if for a serious invasion. But though he subdued all the south-eastern districts, the Britons fought obstinately, and he had to withdraw at the end of the summer without being able to make any permanent impression upon this distant country, which was not again visited by a Roman army for nearly a century. The remaining three years (53 to 51 B.C.) were spent in completing the subjugation of Gaul, and especially in crushing the insurrections that from time to time broke out. Among the results of Caesar's conquest of Gaul were, first, that the boundaries of the Roman empire were now extended to the English Channel and the Rhine, and secondly, that the Roman language and civilization became so firmly implanted in Gaul that, even after nearly two thousand years, the language of that country (the French) is a modified Latin, and its laws and institutions show everywhere the influence of Rome. A more immediate result also was to furnish Caesar with an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman world had never before seen.

---

* For the various senses in which the word *Gaul* is used, see the Vocabulary under *Gallia*.

Civil War and Death.

After the conquest of Gaul, civil war arose between Caesar and Pompey, now his sole remaining rival, Crassus having fallen in battle in the East. By the overthrow of the Pompeian party Caesar became practically supreme ruler of the Roman world. He showed unexpected clemency to his former opponents, and began a brilliant career as administrator and reformer. But the Roman aristocracy, alarmed at his great power and popularity and their own loss of prestige, formed a conspiracy to remove him, being actuated in some cases by jealousy, in others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom ; and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., "the foremost man of all this world" fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, at the base of Pompey's statue. Saddest of all, one of his many wounds was dealt by the hand of his intimate friend Brutus.

Personal Appearance.

We are told that in personal appearance Caesar was noble and commanding. He was tall of stature and of slender build, his complexion was pale, his nose prominent and decidedly "Roman," his eyes were black, keen and full of expression. In later life he had a tendency to baldness. His constitution was naturally delicate, and he was subject to attacks of epilepsy, but by constant exercise and temperate living he managed to acquire vigorous health, so that he could endure the most prolonged toil and most arduous exertions.

Versatile Genius.

The genius of Caesar was many-sided, and he excelled in everything he undertook. Not only was he one of the greatest generals of all time, but he was pre-eminent as a law-giver, a jurist and a statesman. Moreover, he has left behind him a reputation as an orator, a poet, a mathematician, an architect and engineer, while as an historian he will ever rank with the highest.

Extant Works.

Caesar was the author of numerous literary works, on many different subjects, but of these all that have come down to us are his *Commentarii De Bello Gallico* (from which the selections contained in this book are taken), and his *Commentarii De Bello Civili* (in three books), a history of the war between himself and Pompey. The Commentaries* of Caesar are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns. It is uncertain whether the work was written as the war went on, and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war. Each book of the Commentaries on the Gallic War contains the account of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Caesar's death by Aulus Hirtius, one of his lieutenants.

Literary Style.

The *Commentarii*, by universal consent, are written in the purest Latin, in a style marked by great simplicity and conciseness, and, in spite of its condensation, by singular ease and elegance. The best judges among Caesar's contemporaries praise his literary style for its purity of diction, and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, has this to say of the Commentaries: "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable; for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments." In the choice of words also Caesar is pure and classical, in accordance with the advice quoted from him by the Roman grammarian Gellius, "to shun an uncommon or out-of-the-way word as a ship would a rock."

---

* *Commentarii*, meaning *sketches, jottings*, is used as the title of a book on any subject, but especially an historical one, which is only sketched down or written without careful revision.

THE STORY OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL.

THE FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

Caesar, hearing of a threatened emigration of the Helvetian nation, hastens from Rome to Transalpine Gaul to prevent a movement so dangerous to the Roman Province.

1. Gallia est omnis[1] dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Gallī, quī ipsōrum[2] linguā Celtae appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, quī ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. Sed undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex parte est flūmen Rhēnus altissimus et lātissimus; alterā[3] ex parte mōns Jūra altissimus; tertiā ex parte flūmen Rhodanus nostram prōvinciam[4] ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs dē causīs Helvētiī nōn lātē vagārī poterant, nec facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre. Itaque, cum essent hominēs bellandī cupidī, angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur. Hīs rēbus adductī, oppida sua omnia vīcōsque incendere et dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre cōnstituērunt et optimam partem tōtīus Galliae occupāre.

---

[1] Translate **omnis** by *as a whole*, in opposition to the narrower sense in which Caesar proceeds to speak of the **Gallī**.

[2] Translate by *their own* (in opposition to that of the Romans).

[3] Translate here by *a second*.

[4] Since 118 B.C. the southern part of France had been a Roman province (hence the modern name *Provence*). See the map of Gaul.

2. Itineribus omnīnō duōbus domō[1] exīre poterant; quōrum ūnum erat per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Caesar, cui prōvincia Gallia eō annō dēcrēta erat, audīvit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Statim ab urbe proficīscitur et in Galliam pervenit. Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; sed Caesar negat sē posse iter[2] ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Relinquēbātur ūna[3] per Sēquanōs via. Mox Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiōs per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā nostrā absunt. Intellegēbat perīculōsum prōvinciae fore[4], sī hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīcī, prōvinciae fīnitimi essent[5]. Ob eās causās in Ītaliam contendit; duās ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs ex hībernīs ēdūcit; cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus in Galliam per Alpēs īre contendit.

Caesar surprises the Helvetians at the river Arar, and soon after, near Bibracte, inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder. The survivors are sent back to the homes they had abandoned.

3. Helvētiī jam per fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Itaque nē omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōnsūmerentur, Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad Helvētiōs pervēnit[6]. Trēs jam partēs Helvētiōrum flūmen Ararim trānsierant; reliquōs aggressus, māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās cōnsequī posset[7], pontem facit, atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Tum per[8] multōs diēs Caesar Helvētiōs īnsequitur, novissimumque agmen lacessit.

---

[1] See 126. [References are to Syntax and Composition, page 169.]

[2] Translate by *passage* or *right of passing.*

[3] Translate **ūna via** by *only the way.*

[4] **Fore = futūrum esse,** the future infinitive of **sum.**

[5] Translate by *should be* (or *were to be*). **Sī** with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may represent future conditions put in indirect discourse (187, *b*).

[6] Translate by *came up with.*

[7] For the use of secondary sequence with the historical present see 28, iv.

[8] Translate by *throughout* or *for.*

4. Tandem ut reī frūmentāriae prōspiceret, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum et cōpiōsissimum īre contendit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs esse et discēdere ā sē exīstimābant. Itaque, itinere conversō, nostrōs īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciemque īnstruit. Helvētiī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proelium commīsit. Diū atque ācriter pūgnāvērunt. Sed cum diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, Helvētiī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Caesar Helvētiōs in fīnēs suōs, unde profectī erant, revertī jussit, et oppida vīcōsque restituere. Helvētiōrum trecenta et sexāgintā octō mīlia domō exierant; vix centum et decem mīlia domum[1] rediērunt.

The leading men of several Gallic tribes ask Caesar's assistance against Ariovistus, a German king, who had recently gained a footing in central Gaul. Caesar at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain.

5. Hōc bellō cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae prīncipēs ad Caesarem convēnērunt atque petiērunt ut sibi auxilium ferret contrā Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, quī multa mīlia suōrum in Galliam trādūxisset optimumque agrum occupāvisset atque Gallōs ex fīnibus pelleret. Dēmōnstrant Ariovistum Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcisse et nunc crūdēliter imperāre atque obsidēs[2] nōbilissimōrum līberōs poscere; neque posse ējus imperium diūtius sustinērī. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque sē Galliam ab Ariovistī injūriā dēfēnsūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā prīncipēs dīmīsit. Simul Germānōs cōnsuēscere[3] in Galliam trānsīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum esse vidēbat, nē, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent. Itaque cōnstituit ad

---

[1] See 125.

[2] Translate by *as hostages;* for the case see **69**, v.

[3] See the second illustrative sentence in **110** with the footnote.

Ariovistum lēgātōs mittere quī ab eō postulārent ut aliquem locum colloquiō[1] dīceret.

6. Quod[2] cum nōllet Ariovistus facere, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs mittit quī postulārent prīmum nē amplius Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde ut obsidēs Gallīs redderet nēve bellum iīs īnferret. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit sē Gallōs vīcisse atque jūre bellī ūtī cōnstituisse; sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque Gallīs injūriā[3] bellum illātūrum sī imperiō suō pārērent[4]; atque sī Caesar vellet sēcum congredī, intellectūrum quanta esset virtūs invictōrum Germānōrum.

7. Eōdem tempore Caesar certior factus est Germānōs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs Aeduōrum populārī, et māgnam multitūdinem Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur. Quibus[5] rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus, mātūrāre cōnstituit nē nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē conjungerent. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. In eō oppidō omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat facultās, idque nātūrā locī ēgregiē mūniēbātur. Hūc Caesar contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Deceived by false reports, the Roman soldiers are at first reluctant to advance, but Caesar calms their fears. On drawing near the Germans, Caesar has an interview with Ariovistus which the enemy's treachery renders fruitless.

8. Dum paucōs diēs ibi reī frūmentāriae causā morātur, mīlitēs falsīs rūmōribus māgnopere perturbātī sunt. Nam Gallī ac mercatōrēs Germānōs ingentī māgnitūdine[1] esse corporum, incrēdibilīque virtūte praedicābant. Caesar cum animadvertisset mīlitēs propter timōrem castra movēre ac sīgna contrā hostēs ferre nōlle, convocātō conciliō, dēmōnstrat Germānōs saepe ab Helvētiīs superātōs esse, quī tamen parēs esse exercituī Rōmānō nōn potuissent. Tum affīrmāvit sē proximā nocte quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, atque sī praetereā nēmō sequerētur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est[2], atque quārtā vigiliā, ut[3] dīxerat, profectus est cum omnī exercitū. Septimō diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

---

[1] Translate the dative by *for*.

[2] To emphasize the connection with the preceding words, Latin often uses **quī** for **hīc** or **is**, placing it even before a conjunction. Here **quod** (literally *which thing*) is the object of **facere**; translate by *this* (172).

[3] Translate by *wrongfully* (103).

[4] For **pārērent** and **vellet** compare footnote 5, page 14.

[5] Compare footnote 2 above, and translate as if it were **hīs**.

9. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit quī dīcerent Ariovistum, cum Caesar propius accessisset, colloquī cum eō jam velle: simul postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret, sed ut uterque cum equitātū venīret; verērī[4] sē nē per īnsidiās[5] ab eō circumvenīrētur. Plānitiēs erat māgna inter castra Ariovistī et Caesaris. Eō uterque cum equitātū ad colloquium venit, atque cum paucīs equitibus in mediam plānitiem prōgreditur. Reliquī equitēs mediocrī intervāllō[6] cōnstitērunt.

10. Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis ostendit quanta a sē senātūque beneficia Ariovistus accēpisset; simul docēbat Aeduōs diū sociōs populī Rōmānī fuisse. Postulāvit deinde eadem quae[7] lēgātī. Ariovistus respondit sē rogātum esse ā Gallīs ut Rhēnum trānsīret; nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum posteā intulisse; atque inīquum esse exercitum Rōmānum[8] in suōs fīnēs venīre. Postulāvit igitur ut Caesar dēcēderet et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trāderet. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius accēdere, et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conjicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit, suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent, nē pulsī hostēs dīcere possent sē in colloquiō per īnsidiās circumventōs. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, multō mājus studium pūgnandī exercituī injectum est[1].

---

[1] Translate **māgnitūdō corporum** by *stature.*

[2] Translate *was aroused.*

[3] **Ut,** in the sense of *as*, takes the indicative.

[4] The infinitive is in indirect discourse, the verb of *saying* being easily understood. For **nē** = *lest* or *that* after verbs of *fearing* see 138.

[5] Translate by *treacherously.*

[6] The ablative, as well as the accusative, may be used to express distance (101, i). Translate here by *at.*

[7] Translate by *made the same demands as.*

[8] See footnote 3, page 15.

After several delays, Caesar comes to a decisive engagement with Ariovistus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.

11. Post paucōs diēs Ariovistus, castrīs mōtīs, praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus[2] ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō[3] ut frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Tum diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūxit. Ariovistus autem, etsī dīmicandī potestās nōn deerat, hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit[4], et equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum ubi Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse[5], tertiam castra mūnīre jussit. Tum cōpiās Ariovistus mīsit quae nostrōs mūnītiōne[6] prohibērent. Caesar tamen, ut anteā cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra mājōra redūxit.

---

[1] Translate **injiciō** and the dative by *inspire* (or *arouse*) *in.*

[2] For the ablative expressing distance see footnote 6, page 17.

[3] Translate by *with this design*, explained by the following clause.

[4] Translate by *kept in camp.*

[5] Translate by *to remain under arms.*

[6] Translate by *from fortifying.*

12. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā mājōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit[1]. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellexit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Posterō diē praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, atque triplicī īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās ēdūxērunt, omnemque aciem rēdīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

13. Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs, sīgnō datō, impetum fēcērunt, itaque[2] hostēs celeriter prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs conjiciendī nōn darētur. Rejectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pūgnant. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant[3]. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus, quī equitātuī praeerat, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī salūtem repperērunt; in[4] hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus, eā profūgit. Reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

14. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in[1] Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. Hībernīs Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam profectus est.

---

[1] Translate by *gave an opportunity.*

[2] **Itaque,** here two words, **ita** + **que.**

[3] Translate the imperfect by *kept pressing* (180, *b*).

[4] Translate by *among.*

THE SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

Learning that the tribes of the Belgae are combining against the Romans, Caesar advances into their territory and encamps on the bank of the river Axona.

15. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur[2], litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre. Conjūrandī hae erant causae: prīmum verēbantur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad Belgās exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre in Galliā cōnsuēscere[3] nōlēbant; nōnnūllī etiam ex potentiōribus, quī rēgna occupāre cupiēbant, molestē ferēbant quod minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō[4] cōnsequī possent. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte[5], in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret[6], Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pabulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Imperat Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant utī[7] ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet, diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

---

[1] Translate by *among;* the phrase modifies a verb of motion (127, iv).

[2] The imperfect denotes repeated action, *kept coming in;* so **fīēbat,** *was repeatedly informed.*

[3] Translate by *that an army should become accustomed* (21).

[4] Translate by *under our rule.*

[5] An ablative absolute; translate by *at the beginning of summer.*

[6] For the relative clause of purpose see 26.

[7] Distinguish **utī** = **ut** and **ūtī** the infinitive of **ūtor.**

16. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnī opīniōne[1] vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex[2] Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē neque cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāsse[3], parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta[4] facere; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs conjunxisse. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent[5], sīc reperiēbat[6]: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque[7] antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse.

17. Dē numerō eōrum Rēmī dīcēbant quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit[8] sē cōgnōvisse. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre[9]; hōs pollicitōs esse sexāgintā mīlia armātōrum, tōtīusque bellī imperium[10] sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre; oppida habēre numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur[11] longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs vīgintī quīnque mīlia, Menapiōs septem mīlia, Caletōs decem mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduātucōs decem et novem mīlia.

18. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus[12] omnem senātum ad sē convenīre, prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī jussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Tum postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque jam longē abesse ab iīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus cōgnōvit, flūmen[1] Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titurium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit: castra pedum[2] duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum[2] mūnīrī jubet.

---

[1] Literally *than all expectation;* translate by *than any one had expected.*

[2] To be taken closely with **proximī** and translated by *of*

[3] A contracted form for **conjūrāvisse.**

[4] Translate by *his bidding.*

[5] Translate by *what their strength was* (72).

[6] Translate by *he obtained this information.*

[7] **Rhēnum** depends on **trāns** in **trāductōs** (69, iv).

[8] For the tense see 190, vi.

[9] Translate **plūrimum valēre** by *were the strongest;* the infinitive, like those which follow, depends on **cōgnōvisse.**

[10] Translate by *the supreme command.*

[11] Translate by *are considered;* **ferī** is the predicate nominative.

[12] Translate by *addressing them with kindly words.*

After an unsuccessful attack on Bibrax, the Belgae advance against Caesar. They are, however, defeated with great slaughter at the river Axona, and at once disband.

19. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est[3]. Sed cum fīnem oppūgnandī nōx fēcisset[4], Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et gratiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī lēgātī[5] dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse[6]. Eō mediā nocte Caesar sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs[7] mittit; quōrum adventū, hostēs, paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quōs adīre potuerant, incēnsīs ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt.

---

[1] Notice the double accusative with **trādūcere** (69, iv).

[2] Referring to the height and width respectively.

[3] For the use of the impersonal passive see 56. Translate by *they held out* or *the defence was maintained* (203, *d*).

[4] Translate **fīnem fēcisset** by *put an end* (*to*).

[5] Translate by *as ambassadors*, referring to those mentioned in § 16 above.

[6] **Nisi**....**posse** is indirect discourse, depending on the idea of *saying* implied in **nūntium mittit**.

[7] For the double dative see 81.

20. Caesar duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relīctīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās[1] īnstrūxērunt. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent[2], hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fīeret[3], ut impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur[4]. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt[3], Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent[2], castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titurius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent[5], agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

21. Caesar certior factus ab Tituriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae[6] Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquī audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum repulsī sunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et de flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse[7] intellexērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent[8], ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī sunt nūllō[9] certō ōrdine neque imperiō, sīc ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

---

[1] Translate by *led out and* (43, *c;* 50, iii).

[2] See the second and third illustrative sentences in 177.

[3] Translate **initium faciō** by *take the first step* (*in*), or *set the example.*

[4] See 56. Translate by *a cavalry engagement was going on* (203, *d*).

[5] For the tense see 187, *b*, i.

[6] Translate by *light armed*, literally *of light equipment.*

[7] From **fallō.** **Ipsōs,** in contrast with the Romans.

[8] Translate by *should lead* (187, *b*, i); the antecedent of **quōrum** is **eōs.**

[9] Translate **nūllō . . . imperiō** by *without any . . . control.*

22. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum[1] equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē[2] ab explōrātōribus omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, mīsit. Hīs Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī jussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, sub occāsumque sōlis sē in castra, ut erat imperātum[3], recēpērunt.

Caesar advances into the Belgian country, receiving the submission of various tribes, and at last comes to the Nervii, the bravest of all the Belgae, who offer resistance.

23. Postrīdiē ējus diēī[4] Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent[5], in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et māgnō itinere cōnfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab[6] dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus[7] expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās ad oppidum agere, aggerem jacere, turrēs cōnstituere[8] quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Tum Gallī māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit[1] exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

---

[1] Referring to the infantry alone.

[2] Translate by *on the fact being established.*

[3] Translate by *according to instructions* (56; 203, *d*).

[4] Translate by *next day;* literally *on the morrow of that day.*

[5] See 156, *b*, with the illustrative sentence.

[6] Translate by *empty* or *destitute of.*

[7] See the last illustrative sentence in 46.

[8] Translate by *erect.* **Quaeque** is two words. **Audierant** = **audīverant,** *had heard of.*

24. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs mājōrēs nātū[2] ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in ējus fidem ac potestātem venīre[3] neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre[4] pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt. Caesar, quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

25. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent[5] patriamque virtūtem prōjēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius[6] mīlia passuum decem abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque[7] per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum conjēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

---

[1] Translate by *received the surrender of the Suessiones.*

[2] Translate by *the older men* or *the elders* (102). **Vōce** means *the tones of their voices*, for they could not speak Latin.

[3] Translate by *put themselves under his protection*, etc.

[4] Translate by *according to* (103, iii); so **cōnsuētūdine suā,** page 26.

[5] See 171 and translate by *for surrendering.*

[6] Translate by *more than* (98, iv).

[7] **Quīque** has the force of **eōsque quī.** **Quō** is an adverb = **ad quem,** with antecedent **locum**; translate by *a place to which.*

The Nervii plan to surprise the Roman army. The design in part fails, but the Romans are for a time in great jeopardy, the utmost confusion prevailing, because of the suddenness and fury of the enemy's onset.

26. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Sed quīdam ex dēditiciīs Belgīs quī ūnā cum Caesare iter faciēbant, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt[1] inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī[2], cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs[3] adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut[4] reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem[5] locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō[6] aequāliter dēclīvis ad flumen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbatur adversus huic, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset[7]. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō[8] sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

27. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs[9]; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac[10] Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostī appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae[1] vēnerant, castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte adversō colle[2] ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

---

[1] For **dēmōnstrāvērunt.** Translate **singulās** by *the several* or *every two.*

[2] Translate by *and that there was no difficulty* (86, i).

[3] Translate by *while still burdened with the packs.* (See cut on page 31.)

[4] Translate **futūrum (esse) ut** by *the result would be that* (33, iv).

[5] Omit in translation (173, *b*).

[6] Translate by *from the top;* but for **ab superiōre parte** see 127, v.

[7] Translate by *one could not see* (56).

[8] Translate by *in hiding.* For **pedum** see 87, iii.

[9] See 103, ii.

[10] Translate by *was different from what* (168, *a*, i; 12, ii, *b*).

28. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda[3]: vexillum[4] prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus[5] duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum (nam superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, sibi praescrībere poterant), et quod ab opere lēgātōs Caesar discēdere, nisi[6] mūnītīs castrīs, vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil jam[7] Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs cohortātus, utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus[8] occurrit.

---

[1] See 205, *a*. In the next sentence translate by *the head of the baggage-train* (86, iv, *b*).

[2] Translate by *up the hill*, literally *by way of the hill facing them* (99, ii, *a*).

[3] See 120; understand **erat** or **erant** throughout the sentence.

[4] The **vexillum** indicated an impending battle; the **tuba** gave the signal to fall in; the final signal was to begin the battle.

[5] Translate by *these difficulties were relieved by two circumstances* (81); these were, first, **scientia atque ūsus,** and second, **quod . . . vetuerat.** For **quod,** *the fact that*, see 198, *c*.

[6] See 50, iv.; translate freely by *until after*, etc.

[7] Translate by *no longer*. **Vidēbantur,** as often, means *seemed best.*

[8] Understand **eīs**, *them;* for the dative see 52.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia[1] accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit.

29. Legiōnis[2] nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, quī in sinistrā parte aciēī cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs Atrebatēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et redintegrātō proeliō hostēs in fugam conjēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae[3] duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine[4] ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars castra petere coepit.

30. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs[5] hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur[6]. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quī auxiliī causā ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās esse, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs[7] nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

---

[1] Such as crests and distinguishing badges. For the tense of **dēfuerit** see 33, iii.

[2] To be repeated with **decimae**; translate freely by the plural.

[3] Translate by *apart from the rest;* and **ipsīs**, by *the very.*

[4] Translate by *in a very dense column.*

[5] Translate by *face to face.*

[6] For the number see 12, ii, *b.*

[7] Used transitively by Caesar in the ablative absolute; translate by *despairing of our success.*

Caesar by his presence and example at length rallies the legions, and after desperate fighting the Nervii are driven back with enormous loss, and submit to the Romans.

31. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, suōs urgērī et duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occīsōs esse sīgniferumque interfectum, sīgnum āmissum, reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerātōs aut occīsōs, et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset. Tum vērō scūtō mīlitī[1] dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, mīlitēsque cohortātus sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre jussit, quō[2] facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūjus adventū spē illātā mīlitibus[3] ac redintegrātō animō, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

32. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs conjungerent et sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō[4] in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus, et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam quī[5] vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent.

33. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis[6] tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent[7], proximī jacentibus īnsisterent, atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent, et ut[1] ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conjicerent. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, mājōrēs nātū, quī ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs conjectī erant, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt. Quōs Caesar suīs[2] fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī jussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab injūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

---

[1] Translate the dative by *from* (80, *a*).

[2] See 28, iii.

[3] Translate the dative by *in*, or more freely as in 78, v, *c* (last example).

[4] Translate by *quickening their pace*. For **summō** see 86, iv, *b*.

[5] Translate by *even such of our men as;* for **prōcubuissent** see 32. For the ablative **scūtīs** see 107, ii.

[6] Translate by *when hope of safety was all but gone* (86, iv, *b*).

[7] From **cadō.** Translate **jacentibus** by (*upon*) *the fallen* or *their prostrate bodies* (78, v, *c;* 205, *g*).

The Aduatuci, retiring to a strongly-fortified place, prepare to resist Caesar, but on realizing the efficiency of the Romans' siege artillery, make their submission.

34. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum[3] māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs[4] cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō passuum in circuitū quīndecim mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōnstituī[5] vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod[6] tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō[7] instruerētur.

35. Ubi vērō movērī[8] et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, nova atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt; sē nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī[1] tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūjus bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent[2], mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās[3], imperāta factūrās pollicērentur.

---

[1] Translate by *as;* **conjicerent** depends on the first **ut.**

[2] Translate by *their own*, referring to **quōs** (164, i).

[3] Translate by *at this time* or *now.*

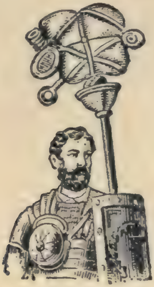
[4] Translate by *skirmishes.*

[5] See footnote 8, page 24; for the historical infinitives following see 112.

[6] See 147. Translate by *at the idea of.*

[7] Translate by *so far off;* **ab** is used adverbially; for **spatiō** see 101, i.

[8] Understand **turrim** as subject. Translate **speciē** by *spectacle.*



Sub Sarcinīs.

THE THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

The tribes on the north-western coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty.

36. Hīs rēbus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret[4], atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ējus bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas[5], Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

---

[1] Translate by *seeing that they* (171). [2] See 177, i.

[3] Feminine referring to the **nātiōnēs**, whom the envoys represented.

[4] Translate by *had every reason to think.*

[5] In the names of Gallic tribes, the Greek ending **-as** is often used instead of **-ēs** in the accusative plural of Declension III.

37. Hūjus est cīvitātis[1] longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rērum reliquōs antecēdunt. Hī retinent Silium atque Velānium quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dēdissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī (ut[2] sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs reliquās cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā mājōribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum[3] servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat[4].

Caesar builds a fleet and makes other preparations for quelling the revolt, but because of the difficulties of the situation spends most of the summer without making much headway.

38. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius[5], nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligere, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit[6], ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent[7], prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc mājōre spē[8], quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque[1] nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac perspiciēbant sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habērē nāvium neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse.

---

[1] Translate by *this state possesses*, or *to this state belongs* (83, i).

[2] Translate by *for* (145). Translate **repentīna** by *unexpected.*

[3] Translate the genitive by *to* (85, ii).

[4] The idea of *saying* is implied in **lēgātiōnem mittunt;** translate by *telling him to restore* (186, *c*, i).

[5] Translate by *too far* (98, vi). Translate **īnstituī** by *to be organized.*

[6] Translate by *as soon as the season permitted.*

[7] Equal to **quae ūsuī sunt nāvibus.** Translate **parāre** by *prepare for.*

[8] Translate by *all the more confidently;* for **hōc** (literally *by this*) see 101, ii, *c*, and footnote.

39. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum conjūrātiō. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent[2], lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

40. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs duodecim et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī jubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs conjungantur. Decimum Brutum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre jusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum posset, in Venetōs[3] proficīscī jubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit. Erant ējusmodī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs[4] lingulīs prōmunturiīsque propter aestūs neque pedibus aditum habērent[5], neque nāvibus. Ita oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō māgnitūdine operis[6] forte superātī, suīs fortūnīs[1] dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appulsō, sua dēportābant omnia, sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūrsus iīsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō[2] facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque[3] erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

---

[1] Equal to **et nōn,** the negative going only with **posse.**

[2] Translate by *before . . should* and compare footnote 5, page 24.

[3] Translate by *into the country of the Veneti* (205, *j*).

[4] Translate by *the points of* (86, iv, *b*). With **posita** understand **oppida.**

[5] Translate by *were accessible.*

[6] Translate by *of the siege-works,* and **superātī** by *being overmatched.*

At last a decisive naval battle is fought in which the Romans are completely victorious.

41. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellexit frūstrā tantum[4] labōrem sūmī, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae vīgintī nāvēs eōrum[5] parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antennās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant[6], nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antennae concidēbant, ut hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.

42. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in[7] virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in[8] mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur. Disjectīs, ut dīximus, antennīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae[9] nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac jam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat[1], tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō commovēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē fuit opportūna: nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum[2] tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est.

---

[1] Translate the dative by *of*, literally (*lose hope*) *for*. For the tense of **coeperant** and **dēportābant** see 64, v. Translate the three imperfects by *would* (180, *b*).

[2] See footnote 8, page 32.

[3] With **difficultās.** For the intervening ablatives, to be translated by *as*, see 49.

[4] Translate by *all this*. With **exspectandam** understand **esse** (200).

[5] Translate by *of theirs*. For **parātissimae**, *well* or *fully equipped*, see 44, *b*. Translate **armōrum** by *of appliances*. With **nostrīs** understand **nāvibus.**

[6] See 149. For the translation of the imperfect see footnote 1 above.

[7] Translate **erat positum in** by *depended on* (183, *c*).

[8] Translate by *over*.

[9] Translate by *two or three* or *by twos and threes*.

THE FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

Certain German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, hard pressed by their neighbors, cross into Gaul. Caesar, fearing an alliance of Germans and disaffected Gauls, advances to the Rhine, surprises and routs the invaders.

43. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, Usipetēs et item Tencterī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod[3] ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs[4] Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant et ad[5] utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre[6] prohibēbant.

44. Illī omnia[7] expertī cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē[8] in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū[1] cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

---

[1] Translate by *was blowing*. For **quo = in quam** see footnote 7, page 25. Translate **exstitit** by *came* or *ensued*.

[2] Translate the genitive by *with* or *against* (85, ii).

[3] Translate by *that* (198).

[4] Translate by *through many parts*. For the case see 127, ii.

[5] Translate by *on*.

[6] See 22, i, and for the force of the imperfect, 180, *d*.

[7] Translate by *every device*, and **vī contendere** by *to force a passage*.

[8] See 18, iv.

45. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat[2], ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset ea quae fore[3] suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs quae invītārent eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, pollicērenturque omnia, quae postulāssent[4], ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Caesar, rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs[5], iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat.

46. Cum ab hoste octō mīlia passuum abesset, aciem triplicem īnstituī equitātumque agmen subsequī jussit, et celeriter itinere cōnfectō prius[6] ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī celeritāte adventūs nostrī perterritī, neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō[7], perturbantur, cōpiāsne[8] adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quī[1] celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

---

[1] Translate by *with*, literally *by means of*. Translate **itinere . . . cōnfectō** by *having covered . . . distance*.

[2] For the tense see 182, *e*; = **cōnsuēverat.**

[3] Translate by *would be the case*; = **futūra esse.** Translate **facta (esse)** by *had happened*.

[4] See 187, *b*, i; = **postulāvissent.**

[5] Translate by *levied*. Omit **locīs** in translation, and see footnote 5, page 26.

[6] **Prius . . . quam** = **priusquam,** to be taken with **possent** (156, *b*, i).

[7] Translate by *and having no time for holding*, etc.

[8] Translate **-ne . . an . . an** by *whether . . or . . or*. See 38 (last example).

To prevent any further inroads, Caesar builds a bridge across the Rhine, and crossing into Germany, so overawes the German tribes that at his approach they flee into the forests of the interior.

47. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abjectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relīctīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā[2] fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt[3]. Nostrī ad ūnum[4] omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre[5], cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trīgintā mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

48. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit jūstissima[6], quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus[7] eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās erat faciendī pontis propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen flūmen ponte jungere[8] dēcrēvit. Diēbus decem, quibus[9] māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem[1] pontis fīrmō praesidiō relīctō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus[2] līberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī jubet. At Sugambrī fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās[3] abdiderant.

---

[1] Translate by *those who.* Translate **suīs** below by *their families.*

[2] Translate by *further;* see footnote 7, page 28.

[3] From **pereō.** Translate **oppressī** by *overcome.*

[4] Translate by *to a man.*

[5] Translate by *after* (or *relieved from*) *all their dread of a formidable war.* Translate **cum** by *for.* For the case of **mīlium** see 87, iii.

[6] Translate by *the strongest.* For **quod** see footnote 3, page 35.

[7] Translate by *interests* or *security* (79).

[8] Translate by *to bridge the river.*

[9] Translate by *within ten days after,* literally *within the ten days within which* (131). For **coepta erat,** *had begun,* see 22, iii.

49. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī[4] ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent[5], līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent: hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse[6]. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rēbus iīs cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā[7] trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum injiceret[8], ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō decem et octō trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

---

[1] Translate by *end.*

[2] Translate by *on their asking for.*

[3] Translate by *in the solitude of the forests* (127, iii).

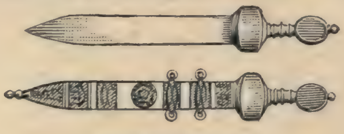
[4] Translate by *in case.* For the subjunctive see 177.

[5] The three subjunctive clauses depend on the idea of *telling* implied in **nūntiōs dīmīsisse**; translate by *instructing them to*, etc. (191).

[6] Coordinate with **dīmīsisse.**

[7] Translate by *having attained all the objects for which.*

[8] Translate by *namely to inspire*, etc. For the dative see 78, v, *c.* The **ut** clauses are in apposition with **rēbus.**



Roman Sword.

C. JULII CAESARIS
COMMENTARII
DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Having decided on an expedition to Britain, Caesar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs 1
locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae
sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit,
quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde
subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad 2
bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore
arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset et genus hominum
perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia
ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter 3
mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iīs ipsīs quicquam
praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt
contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique 4
mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque
quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum
bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī
essent ad mājōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs,
reperīre poterat.

Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.

1 **21.** Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret,
idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā
2 praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus
3 ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs
in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in
4 Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs
regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum
5 effēcerat classem jubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ējus
cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā com-
plūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī
polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī
6 obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hor-
tātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum
7 remittit, et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus
superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūjus et virtūtem et
cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur,
cūjusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur,
8 mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortē-
turque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter
9 eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus
omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī
ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad
Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Caesar collects his fleet and makes his final arrangements.

1 **22.** Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnē-

runt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse 2 arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās jūdicābat, māgnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter octōgintā onerāriīs coāctīs contrāctīsque, 3 quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant duodēvīgintī 4 onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent: hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum 5 Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium 6 Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre jussit.

He reaches Britain, but has difficulty in getting a suitable landing-place.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum 1 tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset admini- 2 strātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās

3 hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī 4 ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs 5 exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstābilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab 6 iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.

1 **24.** At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī 2 prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus 3 erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conjicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs in- 4 citārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūjus omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

Caesar manœuvres to dislodge the enemy, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās quārum 1
et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior,
paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs
incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde
fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī
jussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium 2
figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum
permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt.
Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē 3
propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam
ferēbat, contestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret:
"Dēsilīte," inquit, "mīlitēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus
prōdere: ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī
officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex 4
nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum 5
nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur,
ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus 6
cum cōnspexissent subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, 1
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque
sīgna subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque
sīgnīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur;
hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex 2
lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant,
incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs cir-

cumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla con-
4 jiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās
longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus com-
plērī jussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia
5 submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs
omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs
in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt,
quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn
potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī
dēfuit.

The Britons sue for peace.

1 **27.** Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā
recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt;
obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs pollicitī sunt.
2 Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprā
dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.
3 Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō
Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vin-
4 cula conjēcerant, tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā
pāce ējus reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et
5 propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar
questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs
pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent,
6 īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum
illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus
7 locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. In-
tereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, prīncipēsque un-
dique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre
coepērunt.

A portion of Caesar's ships crossing later is dispersed by a storm and driven back to the mainland.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā post diem quārtum, 1
quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī, dē
quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant,
ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appro- 2
pinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta
tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre
posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur,
aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis
occāsum, māgnō suī cum perīculō dējicerentur ; quae tamen 3
ancorīs jactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō ad-
versā nocte in altum profectae continentem petiērunt.

The same storm does great damage to the vessels which had crossed with Caesar, and causes much alarm in the camp.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs 1
maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit,
nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās 2
nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat
quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et one-
rāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat,
neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī
dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent 3
fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvi-
gandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere,
tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs 4
erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant,
quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus
cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in
locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces.

1 **30.** Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post
proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum
equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent
et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent,
quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs
2 Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt
rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre
et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut
reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in
3 Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus conjūrātiōne
factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam
ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet.

1 **31.** At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat,
tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs
dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.
2 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et
frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae
gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere
ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant
3 ūsuī ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, cum summō
studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs,
reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons. Caesar goes to its relief.

1 **32.** Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā
frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā

ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem mājōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod 2
erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum 3
paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conjicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs 4
partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō 5
adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs 1
partēs perequitant et tēla conjiciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim 2
ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem 3
peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et

per tēmōnem percurrere et in jugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few days in collecting larger forces.

1 **34.** Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ējus adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre re-
2 cēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs
3 redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs,
4 quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in cas-
5 trīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur,
6 sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

When the Britons come against his camp, Caesar meets them and routs them with great slaughter.

1 **35.** Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā quōs Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāns-
2 portāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs
3 ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō

secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Having received the enemy's submission, Caesar returns to Gaul, the summer being now over.

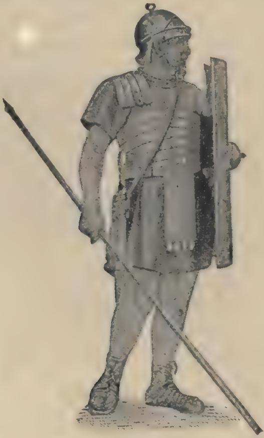
36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē 1
pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante 2
imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit,
quod propinquā diē aequinoctiī īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī
nāvigātiōnem subjiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam 3
tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs
solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; 4
sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem, quōs reliquī, portūs capere
nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

A detachment of the Romans, after landing, is attacked by the Morini, but is rescued by Caesar.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter 1
trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar
in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae
adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt
ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt.
Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem 2
hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā
Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit.
Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque 3
amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucīs
vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā 4
vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs
abjectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus
est occīsus.

After crushing this uprising Caesar arranges his winter camps.

1 **38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs
legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī
2 rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs
palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō superiōre
annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī
3 pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī
in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum
agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod
Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad
4 Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum
hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā
5 obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs
ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū
dēcrēta est.



Legionary Soldier.

LIBER QUINTUS.

Caesar orders more vessels to be built ; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.

1. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab 1
hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat,
lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam
plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās
cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. 2
Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque paulō facit humiliōrēs,
quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus,
atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs
aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat ; ad
onera ac multitūdinem jūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō
lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās 3
omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem humilitās
multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, 4
ex Hispāniā apportārī jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae 5
citeriōris perāctīs in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs
fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat.
Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in 6
locum convenīre jubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs 7
ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō
factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus
ratiōnibus dē injūriīs satisfacere Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum 8
Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī jubet ;
nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat.
Iīs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter 9
cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

Returning in the spring he orders the fleet and army to assemble for another expedition to Britain, then goes to the country of the Treveri, whose loyalty was suspected.

1 **2.** Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem
Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur.
2 Eō cum vēnisset, circuitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī
mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter
sescentās ējus generis, cūjus suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs
et longās vīgintī octō, invenit īnstrūctās, neque multum
3 abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Collaudātīs
mīlitibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid
fierī velit ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre
jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trājectum
esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlium passuum trīgintā
ā continentī ; huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum
4 relīquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quattuor et equitibus
octingentīs in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī
neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque
Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Two rival chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Caesar.

1 **3.** Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū
valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut
2 suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē
prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx ;
3 ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque
adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit ; sē suōsque omnēs in
officiō futūrōs, neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs
4 cōnfīrmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur, ostendit. At
Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iīsque, quī

per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteāquam nōnnūllī prīncipēs 5
ex eā cīvitāte et familiāritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt, et dē suīs prīvātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: sēsē 6
idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque esse 7
cīvitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitātisque fortūnās ējus fideī permissūrum.

Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix, while requiring the submission of Indutiomarus.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur, 1
quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum ducentīs obsidibus venīre jussit. Hīs adductīs, in 2
iīs fīliō propinquīsque ējus omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est, utī in officiō manēret: nihilō tamen sēcius prīncipibus Trēverōrum 3
ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit: quod cum meritō ējus ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ējus auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūjus tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem

4 perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indūtiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et quī jam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

Coming to the seaport Caesar finds the fleet and army ready.

1 **5.** Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum
2 legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit sexāgintā nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rējectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īn-
3 strūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit numerō mīlium quattuor, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitāti-
4 bus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, causes trouble.

1 **6.** Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quo ante ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis
2 cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant.
3 Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur; partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timē-
4 ret; partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī

adēmptā prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs
hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū ter- 5
ritāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte
spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōnspectū
Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam
trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, jūsjūrandum 6
poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī
cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem
dēferēbantur.

Caesar delays his departure in order to check disaffection. Dumnorix flees, but is overtaken and slain.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā, Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduae 1
dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, qui-
buscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod 2
longius ējus āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē
quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter 3
vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus
nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis tem-
poris in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō
Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ējus
cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem 4
mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere in nāvēs jubet. At omnium 5
impedītīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā
castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē 6
nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus
postpositīs māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum
mittit, retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, 7
interficī jubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum
arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille enim 8

revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse
9 cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt ; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.

1 **8.** Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relīctō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō
2 rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relīctam cōnspexit.
3 Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum
4 superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum
5 adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est
6 vīsus ; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships he advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, 1 ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relīctīs et equitibus trecentīs, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancoram relinquēbat; et praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū 2 prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter duodecim hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī, equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen 3 prōgressī, ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās 4 abdidērunt locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā jam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs 5 erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque 6 intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis 7 septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adjectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī 8 vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

As troops are setting out in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

10. Postrīdiē ējus diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque 1 in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum jam extrēmī essent 2 in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī

nūntiārent superiōre nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope
omnēs nāvēs afflīctās atque in lītore ējectās esse, quod neque
ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque
3 vim tempestātis patī possent ; itaque ex eō concursū
nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Caesar returns, arranges for the repairing of these losses, and again sets out against the enemy, now under Cassivellaunus.

1 **11.** Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque
revocārī atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs
2 revertitur ; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cōgnōverat,
cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter quadrāgintā
nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur.
3 Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī
4 aliōs arcessī jubet ; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās
posset, iīs legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat.
5 Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum
esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum
6 castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne conjungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs
decem cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem
7 mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque
ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus
8 relīquit : ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eō cum
vēnisset, mājōrēs jam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum
convēnerant, summā imperiī bellīque administrandī
commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūjus fīnēs ā
maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis,
9 ā marī circiter mīlia passuum octōgintā. Huic superiōre
tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant :
sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī
bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

A description of the people, products and climate of Britain.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs 1
in īnsulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab 2
iīs, quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt
(quī omnēs ferē iīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus
ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt
atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta 3
multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia,
pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur [aut aere] aut nummō 4
aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō
nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs 5
regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ējus exigua est cōpia;
aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūjusque generis, ut in
Galliā, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam 6
et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen
alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra
quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

The geography of Britain.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūjus ūnum latus est contrā 1
Galliam. Hūjus lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,
quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem
sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc pertinet circiter
mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam 2
atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō
minor, ut aestimātur, quam Britannia; sed parī spatiō
trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc 3
mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs
praetereā minōrēs subjectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus
īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub

4 brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse 5 quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūjus est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, septingentōrum mīlium. 6 Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cuī partī nūlla est objecta terra, sed ējus angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem 7 esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

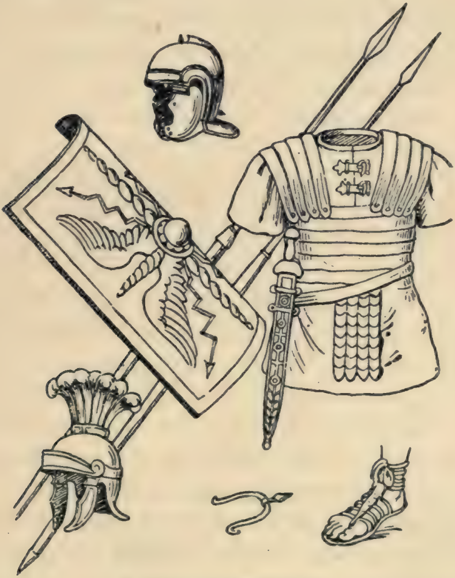
The manners and customs of the Britons.

1 **14.** Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā 2 Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in 3 pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō, atque omnī parte 4 corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs, et māximē 5 frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed, sī quī sunt ex hīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

The Romans are surprised while building a camp, but drive off the enemy.

1 **15.** Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās 2 collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius 3 īnsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō

spatiō imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ējēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā 4
Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. 5
Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.



Armor and Weapons.

The disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting with the Britons.

1 **16**. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad 2 hūjus generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent, et pedibus disparī proeliō con- 3 tenderent. Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et 4 īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

The Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.

1 **17**. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs 2 equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque 3 nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs 4 hostēs ēgērunt; māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī

facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique 5
convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus
umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar forces a passage across the Thames.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim 1
in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō
omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō 2
cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam
māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat 3
acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs mūnīta, ējusdemque generis sub
aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs 4
ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim
legiōnēs subsequī jussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū 5
mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs
impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent,
rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Caesar's line of march.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dē- 1
positā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus
circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relīctīs, itinera nostra servā-
bat, paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac
silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus
nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs
in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster līberius 2
praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ējēcerat, omnibus
viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, et māgnō
cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum iīs cōnflīgēbat atque

3 hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes, a powerful British tribe, submit to Caesar.

1 **20.** Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūjus pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad
2 Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque
3 imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī prae-
4 sit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Many other tribes now submit, and Caesar captures the 'town' of Cassivellaunus.

1 **21.** Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum injūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī,
2 Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum
3 pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōn-
4 suērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit

ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum ; tamen hunc duābus
ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī 5
mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex
parte oppidī ējēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris re- 6
pertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

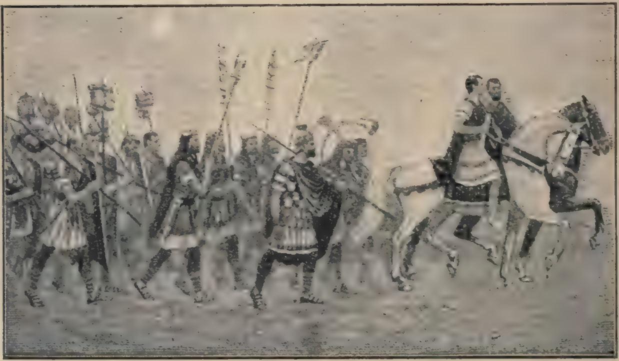
A sudden attack on the camp by the sea is repulsed, and Cassivellaunus sues for peace.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur Cassivellaunus ad 1
Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus
regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius,
Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat,
utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō
adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Iī cum ad castra vēnissent, 2
nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam
nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cas- 3
sivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs,
vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitā-
tum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad
Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in 4
continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum
aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret,
obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō
Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit ; interdīcit atque 5
imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus
noceat.

Caesar returns to the mainland.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs 1
invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māg- 2
num numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit.
3 Ac sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus,
neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis,
4 quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsīderārētur; at ex iīs, quae inānēs
ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs
expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat
numerō sexāgintā, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae
5 ferē omnēs rējicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar
frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur,
quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius
6 mīlitēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā
initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque
incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.



Roman Soldiers on the March.

NOTES ON CAESAR, BOOK IV.

N. B.—The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning at page 169.

The following abbreviations are used: cf. = compare; ch., chap. = chapter; fn. = footnote; lit. = literally; sc. = supply, or understand; trans. = translate, translation.

CHAP. 20.

1. **exigua**: emphatic from position. **parte reliqua**: abl. absolute (49); equivalent to an *etsi* clause (48); trans. 'although only a small part . . . and although . . . yet Caesar made an effort.' **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **ad septentriones vergit**: 'lies towards the north.' **bellis**: for case see 130. **hostibus subministrata**: sc. *esse* (14); 'had been furnished to the enemy.'

2. **si**: 'even if.' **gerendum**: see 119. **deficeret**: 'did not enable him,' lit. ? (175; 187, *b*). **usui**: see 81. **fore**: see 14; the subject is contained in the clauses *si modo . . . cognovisset*. **adisset**: for *adiisset*.* For the mood and tense see 187, *b*, i.; trans. 'approached,' lit. 'should have approached.' **genus hominum**: 'the character of the inhabitants.' **quae omnia**: 'all of which,' lit. ? (86, iv. *a*). **fere**: with *omnia*.

---

* Contracted forms in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses:

(*a*) Perfects in **-āvī, -ēvī,** and also **mōvī** and **nōvī** (from **moveō** and **nōscō**), often drop **v** before **-is-, -er-** or **-ēr-** and contract the two vowels thus brought together to **ā, ē, ō** respectively; *e.g.*, **nōrat** for **nōverat, cōnsuērunt** for **cōnsuēvērunt, imperāsse** for **imperāvisse.**

(*b*) Perfects in **-īvī** also drop **v** before **-is-, -er-** or **-ēr-**, but the vowels thus brought together are contracted (to **ī**) only before **-is-**; *e.g.*, **adīsset** for **adiisset.** Before **-er-** and **-ēr-, ī** is shortened to **i**; *e.g.*, **audierat** for **audīverat.**

But **eō** and its compounds, also **petō** and **dēsinō,** drop **v** also in the first and third singular and first plural of the perfect indicative.

3. **neque . . . quisquam** : 'no . . . one,' lit. ? **illo** : adverb. **iis ipsis** : *i.e.*, *mercatoribus*. **Gallias** : 'Gaul.' The plural has reference to the triple division of Gaul with which Caesar begins his Commentaries on the Gallic War : *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres* (page 13).

4. **vocatis** : trans. by 'although' (48). **quanta esset . . . portus** : depending on *reperire poterat* (35). **belli** : 'in war' (85, ii.). **uterentur** : 'they had' (54). **qui essent . . . portus** : 'what harbors suitable for . . . existed.' **majorum** : 'larger than usual' (98, vi.) ; the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of those regions. **poterat** : for the imperfect see 180, *b*.

CHAP. 21.

1. **Ad haec cognoscenda** : with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum* (119). **priusquam faceret** : 'before making' (156, *b*). **idoneum** : 'a suitable person.' **arbitratus** : see 44, ii.

2. **Huic** : for the case see 52. **ut exploratis . . . revertatur** : for the subjunctive see 27 ; trans. 'to find out . . . and return' (47, *c*). **quam primum** : see 174, i.

3. **in** : trans. 'into the country of' (205, *j*). **inde . . . trajectus** : the straits of Dover are meant.

4. **quam . . . classem** : 'the fleet which' (173, *c* i.). **ad** : 'for.' **Veneticum bellum** : the year before (56 B.C.) the tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combined to recover their liberty, but were defeated by the Romans in a sea-fight.

5. **qui polliceantur** : trans. 'to promise' ; see 26. **dare** : irregularly used for *se daturos esse* (17 ; 22, vi.). **imperio** : see 52.

6. **Quibus, eos** : both referring to *legati* (50, iii. and fn.) ; trans. *quibus* by 'these' (172). **liberaliter pollicitus** : '(and) having made liberal promises,' lit. ? (203, *d*). **permanerent** : see 27. **domum** : see 125.

7. **una** : adv. **Commium** : with *mittit*. **superatis** : referring to 'That day he overcame the Nervii' (57 B.C.), with which people

the Atrebates were allied (see pages 24–30). **constituerat**: 'had made.' **ibi**: *i.e.*, among the Atrebates. **his**: of Gaul, not Britain. **magni habebatur**: 'was valued highly'; for *magni* see 88.

8. **quas . . . civitates**: 'all the states he can,' lit. 'the states which he can'; sc. *adire.* **possit**: see 175. **adeat**: with the same force as *ut adeat*, 'to visit'; so *hortetur* and *nuntiet* (186, 1, *c*, i.). **ut fidem sequantur**: 'to embrace the alliance,' depending on *hortetur.*

9. **regionibus**: 'country.' **quantum,** etc.: 'so far as one could who,' etc.; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one who'; for *tantum facultatis quantum* (174, ii.), 'according to such measure of opportunity as could be given.' The whole clause has the value of an adverbial acc. modifying the abl. absol. **auderet**: for mood see 32. **quaeque**: = *et quae.* **perspexisset**: see 36, i.

CHAP. 22.

1. **parandarum**: see 119. **moratur**: for the tense see 153. **de . . . consilio**: 'for their previous conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Caesar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti. **quod,** etc.: 'in that, being uncivilized,' etc. **consuetudinis**: see 90. This 'custom' was, as the Roman poet Virgil expressed it:

> 'The ways of peace to proclaim,
> Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame.'

populo: trans. by 'on' (79). **fecissent**: for mood see 147. **-que**: joins *excusarent* and *pollicerentur.* **ea quae**: 'whatever.' **imperasset**: see on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

2. **satis**: 'quite.' **post tergum**: 'behind him.' **has tantularum,** etc.: 'attention to such trifling matters,' lit. ? (85, ii.). **anteponendas**: sc. *esse.* **Britanniae**: dat. (78, v. *c*); meaning the expedition against Britain. **iis imperat**: 'requires (*or* demands) of them' (55, iii.). **Quibus**: the hostages; trans. as in ch. 21, 6. **eos**: the Morini. **in fidem**: 'under his protection.'

3. **coactis contractisque**: the former of impressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot**: 'the number which,' lit. 'as many as'; *quot* is subject of *esse.* **quod,** etc.: 'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit.? (86, i.). This clause furnishes the object of *distribuit.*

4. **Huc accedebant**: 'besides this there were,' lit. 'to this were added.' **ab**: used adverbially = 'away'; or trans. 'at a distance of.' **milibus**: see 101. **passuum**: see 86. **tenebantur quo minus,** etc.: 'were detained . . . and prevented from being able.' *Quo minus,* lit. 'whereby the less,' may also be written as one word. **possent**: see 139, *a.*

5. **ducendum**: for the gerundive with *do,* here agreeing with *exercitum,* see 121.

CHAP. 23.

1. **ad navigandum**: see 114, *c.* **tertia vigilia**: the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal hours (*horae*), the length of each varying with the season. **solvit**: sc. *naves.* **ulteriorem**: 'farther,' *i.e.*, up the coast. The exact localities are unknown.

2. **A quibus . . . administratum**: 'as these carried out their instructions,' lit.? For the impersonal passive see 56. For *tardius,* 'too slowly,' see 98, vi. The result was that Caesar reached Britain *cum primis* (not *cum omnibus*) *navibus.* **expositas copias armatas**: 'the armed forces displayed.'

3. **Cujus**: 'this' (172). **haec**: 'as follows'; more fully explained by *atque . . . continebatur.* **ita anguste,** etc.: 'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), meaning 'steep,' or 'close to the sea.'] **uti**: another form for *ut;* distinguish from *ūtī.* **in**: trans. 'to.' **posset**: for the mood see 29.

4. **dum convenirent**: depending on *exspectavit;* 'till . . . should assemble,' or more freely 'for . . . to assemble' (155, *b*). **ad**: 'until.'

5. **quae fieri vellet**: 'what he wished done' (21). **monuit . . . administrarentur**: 'instructed them to do everything (promptly)

at the signal and at the (proper) moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this (latter) was subject to rapid and uncertain changes.' **ut ratio . . . ut res** : *ut* = 'as,' and is repeated with each subject. **postularent** : for mood see 170, i. and 175. **ut quae** : i.e., *maritimae res ;* 'inasmuch as these' ; *ut* might be omitted, and merely heightens the causal force of *quae* and the subjunctive (171 and fn.). **monuit administrarentur** : with the same force as *monuit ut administrarentur ;* cf. *adeat*, ch. 21, 8 (186, 1, *c*. i.). **ad nutum et ad tempus** : the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem*.

6. **uno** : 'one and the same.' **dato, sublatis** : trans. by principal clauses (47, *c*). **litore** : abl. absolute ; trans. by 'off.'

CHAP. 24.

1. **quo genere** : 'the sort of force that,' lit. 'which kind (*i.e.*, of warriors),' referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis* (173, *c*, ii.). **consuerunt** : cf. on ch. 20, 2, fn. **copiis** : see 103, ii. **egredi** : 'from landing' (22, i.). **prohibebant** : for tense see 180, *d*.

2. **has** : referring to what follows. **nisi . . . non** : 'only,' lit.? **militibus autem . . . desiliendum erat** : 'while the soldiers had to leap down' (120, ii.) ; similarly *consistendum* and *pugnandum*. For the dative see 120, i. **ignotis locis** : 'who were unacquainted with the ground' ; lit. 'the ground (being) unknown' ; abl. absolute (49). So *impeditis manibus*. **oppressis** : dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. **cum illi** : 'whereas the enemy.' **ex arido** : modifying *conjicerent*. **omnibus . . . locis** : in contrast to *ignotis . . . manibus*, section 2 ; 'having all their limbs free and being perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit.? **insuefactos** : 'who were trained (to this).' **conjicerent, incitarent** : see 151, fn.

4. **generis** : see 90. **eadem . . . quo** : for agreement see 11, i.; for *quo* = 'as' see 174. **consuerant** : see ch. 20, 2, fn. **uti, utebantur** : 'display' *or* 'show.'

CHAP. 25.

1. **Quod** : object of *animadvertit* (172, *a*). **naves** : subject of *removeri*, *incitari* and *constitui*. **quarum** : 'whose.' **inusitatior** :

'less familiar,' *i.e.*, than that of the *naves onerariae.* **et motus,** etc.; 'and (whose) movements were quicker for service,' *i.e.*, 'were more easily managed.' **ad**: 'on.' **apertum latus**: *i.e.*, the right side, unprotected by shields. **quae res**: 'a manœuvre which,' lit.? **usui**: as in ch. 20, 2.

2. **remorum motu**: the Britons used only sails with their large vessels. **paulum modo**: 'but only a little.'

3. **atque**; 'and now.' **cunctantibus**: trans. by 'while' (41, *a*; 47, *a*.). **qui aquilam ferebat**: 'the eagle-bearer.' For *qui* = *is qui* see 173, *a*. **ut . . . eveniret**: see 27. **ea res**: 'his (lit. that) undertaking.' **legioni**: see 79. **inquit**: 'cried'; for position and use see 18, vi. **Desilite**: the imperative. **vultis**: from *volo.* **praestitero**: trans. freely by future; for the force of the future perfect see 184, ii.

4. **voce magna**: 'in a loud voice' (103).

5. **inter se**: 'one another,' lit.? (164, ii.). **ne . . . admitteretur**: 'not to incur,' lit.? (27). **dedecus**; *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle. **universi**: 'in a body'; section 6 shows that Caesar is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. **Hos item,** etc.: 'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also,' etc.; lit. 'when also from the nearest ships they saw these.' **hostibus**: see 52. **appropinquarunt**: see ch. 20, 2, fn.

CHAP. 26.

1. **Pugnatum est**: see 56. **alius alia ex navi**: 'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' For this idiom see 168, *a*. **quibuscumque . . . occurrerat**: 'to whatever . . . they fell in with.' For the dat. see 78, v. *c*. For the tense see 183, *b*. So *conspexerant*, section 2, and *conspexerat*, section 4.

2. **vero**: 'while.' **ubi**: 'whenever.' **adoriebantur**: trans. by 'would' (180, *b*). So *circumsistebant* and *conjiciebant.* **plures**: nominative; see Vocabulary.

3. **in universos**: 'at the main body'; opposed to *singulares.*

4. **item**: '(and) also.' **quos . . . his**: freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the clauses; or 'whenever . . . any . . . to them,'

without transposing. **jussit, submittebat**: notice the change of tense; the perfect expresses a single command; for the imperfect see 180, *b*. **his**: see 79.

5. **simul**: = *simul atque*. **suis consecutis**: 'with their comrades following' (50, ii.). **neque**: 'but . . . not.' **longius**: 'any distance' (98, vi.) **ad pristinam**, etc.: 'to complete Caesar's usual good fortune,' lit.? For dat. see 80, *e*.

CHAP. 27.

1. **proelio**: trans. by 'in' (99). **de**: trans. 'to treat for.' **daturos**: sc. *se* (18, x.). **quaeque**: as in ch. 21, 9. **imperasset**: cf. ch. 22, 1.

2. **quem supra**, etc.: 'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc.; lit.? (18, vi.). **demonstraveram a Caesare**: notice that Caesar the *writer* (first person) is always distinguished from Caesar the *commander* (third person). For the tense see 183, *a*, i.

3. **Hunc, illi**: object and subject respectively of *comprehenderant*. **egressum**: modifying *hunc*; trans. 'on his landing' or 'when he landed.' **cum deferret**: 'although he was bearing' (65, *a*). **modo**: 'in the capacity of'; or freely, 'as' (103). **tum**: trans. by 'now.'

4. **rei**: 'act.' **imprudentiam**: *i.e.*, their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. **ut ignosceretur**: 'that pardon be granted (them),' or 'to be pardoned' (27 and 57; see also 203, *d*).

5. **quod . . . intulissent**: see 147 and 198, *b*. **cum . . . missis . . . petissent**: 'although they had sent . . . and sought,' lit.? (65, *a*). **petissent**: see ch. 20, 2, fn. **ignoscere**: sc. *se*: notice the tense (15, *a*). **imprudentiae**: for dat. see 52.

6. **illi**: see 160, i. **arcessitam . . . daturos**: sc. *esse*; 'that they would send for . . . and give up,' lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *daturos*, not to *dixerunt* (41, *b*). **diebus**: see 131.

7. **suos**: subject of *remigrare*. **agros**: 'their lands.'

CHAP. 28.

1. **His rebus**: 'by this means,' lit.? **post diem . . . ventum**: 'three days after he came' = *die quarto postquam*, etc.; *post* (the

adverb) coming before *die quarto* was felt to have the force of a preposition, and made to govern the acc. **quartum :** the Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. **est ventum** : see 56. **naves** : subject of *solverunt*, a rare use. **demonstratum est** : 'mention has been made.' (203, *d.*) **superiore** : in ch. 23, 1, called *ulteriorem.* **vento** : see 103.

2. **viderentur** : 'were in sight.' **posset** : see 29. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur.* **inferiorem** : *i.e.*, towards the S.W. **propius occasum** : see 70, i. **sui** : 'to themselves' (85, ii.); another reading is *suo*, with the same trans. (85, iv.).

3. **quae tamen**, etc.: 'and as (*cum*) these had nevertheless (*i.e.*, in spite of the danger) cast anchor, and were filling,' etc.; or *tamen* may apply to the whole sentence, and be opposed to the words just preceding, 'however as these.' **necessario . . . profectae . . petierunt** : 'they were compelled to put out . . . and make for,' lit.? **adversa nocte** : 'in spite of the darkness,' lit. 'the night facing them' (46).

CHAP. 29.

1. **nocte** : that of August 30-31, 55 B.C., according to astronomical calculations. **esset** : 'there was' (31). **qui dies** : 'a time which.' (173, *c*, ii.). **maritimos aestus maximos** : 'very high tides'; our spring-tides. **consuevit** : 'is wont,' or trans. by 'usually.' **incognitum** : the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 25 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. **uno** : as in ch. 23, 6. **naves . . . complebat** : keep the Latin order and trans. by the passive voice. So *onerarias . . . afflictabat.* **quibus** : 'in (lit. with) which.' **transportandum . . . curaverat** : 'had had . . . brought over' (121). **ad** : 'at.' **neque ulla** : 'and no,' lit.? **administrandi, auxiliandi** : the former referring to those on board, the latter to those on shore. **administrandi** : sc. *naves.*

3. **fractis** : trans. both abl. absol. and *cum* by 'as.' **amissis** : trans. 'having lost' or 'through the loss of.' **magna**, etc.; 'great alarm inevitably (*or* as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.;

lit.? **id quod**: 'a thing which' (173, *d*); *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*, and *quod* is subject of *accidere* (141, *b*). **exercitus**: for case see 85.

4. **neque aliae**: trans. by 'no other.' **possent**: see 32. **omnibus constabat**: 'it was generally agreed'; more lit. 'agreed among all'; for dat. see 80, *b*, ii. **hiemari oportere**: 'that they must winter' (56 and 140, *b*). **in hiemem**: 'for the winter.'

CHAP. 30.

1. This sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz., after *collocuti*, *transportaverat* and *producere* (204); trans. as if the Latin read *collocuti sunt; intellegebant et cognoscebant; itaque duxerunt; nam confidebant.* **principes**: subject of *duxerunt*, section 2. **inter se**: see 164, ii. **Romanis deesse**: freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? **quae**: referring to *castrorum.* **hoc angustiora**: 'all the smaller' or 'more contracted for this reason' (101, ii. *c* and fn.).

2. **optimum factu**: 'the best thing to do'; for the supine see 117. **duxerunt**: 'concluded.' **rebellione facta**: 'to renew the war and.' **prohibere, producere**: subjects of *esse.* **frumento**: see 93; so *reditu.* **rem**: 'the campaign.' **superatis**: trans. by 'if' (47, *a;* 48). So *interclusis.* **confidebant**: see 146.

3. **rursus**: not 'a second time,' but referring to the return to their former attitude. **agris**: as in ch. 27, 7. **deducere**: 'to bring down,' *i.e.*, to the coast.

CHAP. 31.

1. **ex eventu navium**: 'from what had happened to his ships,' (85, ii.). **ex eo, quod**: 'from the fact that' (198). **fore**, etc.: 'suspected that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' **accidit**: for the mood see 175, i.

2. **ad**: 'for *or* to meet.' **subsidia comparabat**: 'he set about making provision' (180, *d*). **quae . . . naves, earum**: = *earum navium quae*, 'of the ships which' (173, *c*, i.). **quae**: 'whatever'; sc. *ea* as subject of *comportari.* **res**: 'purpose.' **erant**: for the mood see 175, i. **continenti**: see on V. ch. 8, i.

3. **cum . . . administraretur** : 'as the soldiers worked,' cf. ch. 23, 2. **studio** : see 103. **amissis** : trans. by 'although.' **reliquis . . . effecit** : 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' lit. 'he brought it about (*or* managed) that the voyage could be made,' etc. **navigari** : see 56. **posset** : see 33, v. **effecit** : notice the tense as compared with that used in section 2 (180, *c*, iii.).

CHAP. 32.

1. **geruntur** : see 153. **ex consuetudine** : 'as usual'; to be taken with *una*, not *missa*. **frumentatum** : the supine (116). **ad** : 'up to.' **interposita** : 'having arisen' *i.e.*, between the time of the surrender and the present. **cum** : 'as' *or* 'for,' explaining the preceding words. **hominum** : 'of the people *or* natives.' **ventitaret** : 'kept coming'; a frequentative verb.* **quam consuetudo ferret** : 'than usual,' 'than was customary,' lit. 'than custom brought' (175). **in ea . . . partem** : 'was visible in the direction in which'; for *partem* see 173, *b*.

2. **id, quod erat** : 'what was actually the case.' *Id* is explained by the appositive clause *aliquid . . . consilii*. **aliquid consilii** : 'some plan' (86, i.). **initum** : sc. *esse*. **in stationibus** : 'on guard'; the plural because of the four gates of a Roman camp. **ex** : 'of' (86, iii.). **in stationem succedere** : 'to take their place on guard'; the singular of the general idea of guarding. **reliquas** : *i.e.*, four of the ten cohorts in the legion. **armari** : 'to arm themselves' (164, iv.).

3. **paulo longius** : 'some little distance' (98, vi.). **conferta** : trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus*.

4. **una erat reliqua** : 'only one remained.'

5. **dispersos** : sc. *nostros*; trans. by a 'when' clause; so *occupatos*. **incertis ordinibus**; giving the reason for *perturbaverant*;

---

* FREQUENTATIVES, INTENSIVES, or ITERATIVES are verbs of the first conjugation, ending in **-tō** or **-sō**, which denote *repeated* or *vigorous* action; as, **jactō**, *brandish*, from **jaciō**, *hurl*. They are formed generally from the supine stem of verbs, but when formed from the first conjugation end in **-itō** (not **-ātō**). Double frequentatives in **-titō** occur, based on other iteratives in **-tō**; as **ventitō**, *keep coming*.

it was difficult to find their proper places in the cohorts. The pluperfects in sections 4 and 5 tell what had happened prior to Caesar's arrival in section 3.

CHAP. 33.

1. **hoc**: 'as follows.' **ex essedis pugnae**: 'of chariot fighting'; see 85, iv. fn. **per omnes partes**: 'in all directions.' **ipso terrore equitum**: 'by the very (*or* mere) terror caused by their horses'; for the gen. see 84. **ordines**: *i.e.*, of their opponents. **equitum**: *i.e.*, their own. Caesar had no cavalry with him. **insinuaverunt**: see 182, *c*.

2. **ita**: 'in such a way.' **illi**: *i.e.*, those who had dismounted to fight on foot. **premantur, habeant**: trans. by the pres. indic., and for the mood see 177, i. and 29 respectively, and also 60; or trans. by 'should' and 'would' respectively, and for the mood see 63 (and 29).

3. **tantum efficiunt**: 'become so expert,' lit.? **loco**: 'ground.' **per**: 'along.' **consuerint**; see ch. 20, 2, fn., and for the mood 29.

CHAP 34.

quibus rebus: abl. of means. **perturbatis nostris**: may be dative with *auxilium tulit* (79), or abl. absolute. **novitate**: trans. by 'because of' (96). **adventu**: see 130.

2. **quo facto**: 'in spite of this,' more lit., 'although this was done' (48). **ad**: 'for,' depending on *alienum*. **suo loco**: 'on his own ground' (127, ii.). **brevi . . . intermisso**: 'after a short interval,' lit.?

3. **haec**: referring to the whole incident. **occupatis**: trans. by 'while.' **qui erant reliqui**: 'those who remained,' *i.e.*, the Britons spoken of in ch. 32, 1, *pars . . . remaneret* (173, *a*). **discesserunt**: *i.e.*, from their homes to join their countrymen (see ch. 30, 3).

4. **secutae sunt**: 'there followed' (12, *a*, iv.). **continerent, prohiberent**: for the mood see 32.

5. **quanta** 'what' *or* 'how favorable.' **faciendae**: 'for obtaining' (119). **sui liberandi**: see 119, iv. **expulissent**: for the mood and tense see 187, *b*, i.

CHAP. 35.

1. **idem . . . fore**: 'that the same thing would happen.' **ut . . . effugerent**: 'namely, that . . . would escape,' in apposition with *idem* (197). **si**: 'even if.' **essent pulsi**: for the mood and tense cf. on *expulissent*, ch. 34, 5. **dictum est**: cf. on *demonstratum est*, ch. 28, 1.

2. **diutius**: 'any longer,' *i.e.*, than the beginning of the battle. (98, vi.).

3. **secuti . . . occiderunt**: sc. *nostri.* **tanto spatio**: freely, 'as far,' lit. 'by way of (*i.e.*, over) as great a space' (99, ii. *a*). **quantum . . . efficere**: 'as their speed and strength allowed,' *or* 'as their running powers held out' (a case of hendiadys), lit.? *Cursus* = rate of running, *vires* = powers of endurance.

CHAP. 36.

2. **His numerum duplicavit**: 'from these he required double the number,' lit., 'for these he doubled,' etc. **die**: 'the time,' *or* 'the season'; *dies* is sometimes fem. in the sing., chiefly in the sense of a fixed time. **propinqua . . . navibus**: trans. by 'as' (49).

3. **mediam noctem**: 'midnight' (86. iv. *b*).

4. **quae**: 'the ships.' **ex . . . duae**: we should say 'two of the transports,' lit.? **quos reliqui**: 'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (crews reached)'; *reliqui*, masc., by sense construction (13, N.B.). **infra**: *i.e.*, towards the S.W.

CHAP. 37.

1. **Quibus navibus**: the two just mentioned. **castra**: that of Sulpicius Rufus, ch. 22, 6. **proficiscens**: 'on setting out' (41). **primo**: adverb. **non ita magno**: 'with a not very large,' lit.? **si . . . nollent**: 'if they did not wish to be killed' (175); for *sese*, see 22, v.

2. **ad clamorem**: 'in answer to the shouting.' **hominum**: as in ch. 32, 1; with *milia* (86). **suis auxilio**: 'to aid his men' (81).

3. **amplius horis**: 'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of

comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (98), or the abl. of time within which (131, i.), uninfluenced by *amplius* (98, iv.). **paucis**: 'but a few.'

4. **Postea quam**: answering to *primo*, section 1; generally written as one word.

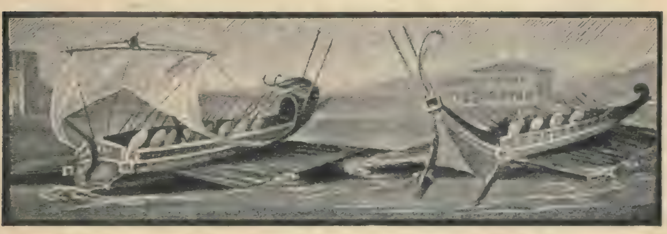
CHAP. 38.

2. **siccitates**: trans. by the singular; in Latin the plural of an abstract noun (here due to the plural *paludum*) is used to denote various instances of a quality or its existence in different objects. **quo . . . haberent**: 'had no place to which to retreat,' or 'had no place of retreat,' more lit. 'had not whither they could retreat' (32). **quo . . . usi**: trans. immediately after *paludum*, to which *quo* refers. For the agreement of *quo* see 13, i. **perfugio**: 'as a place of refuge' (55, v.). **fuerant usi**: see 182, i. **in potestatem pervenerunt**: 'fell into the hands,' lit. ?

3. **omnes**: nom. **in silvas**: see 127, iii.

4. **in**: 'among' or 'in the country of' (205, *j*). **neglexerunt**: add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. **His rebus**: referring to the whole of the summer's campaign. **ex litteris Caesaris**: 'in consequence of despatches from Caesar.' **dierum**: see 87. **supplicatio**: 'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples at Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Caesar had written, "for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."



Roman War Galleys.

NOTES ON CAESAR, BOOK V.

CHAP. 1.

1. **consulibus**: see 49. **discedens ab**: 'on leaving.' **Italiam**: the province of Cisalpine Gaul (*Gallia Citerior*), in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. **ut**: 'as,' in which sense it takes the indic. **legionibus**: see 78, v. *c.* **quam plurimas possent**: sc. *aedificare;* 'as many as they could' (174, i.). For the mood of *possent* see 175. **uti aedificandas curarent**: 'to have built' (121). For the tense of *curarent* see 28, iv.

2. **Ad**: 'for.' **onerandi**: trans. by 'in.' **subductiones**: cf. on *siccitates*, IV., ch. 38, 2. **facit humiliores**: sc. *eas.* **quam quibus**: 'than those which'; sc. *eas* (98, iii.). **nostro mari**: the name Mediterranean was not then in use. **id eo magis**: 'all the more so'; with *id* sc. *facit* ('he does'), and cf. on *hoc*, IV., ch. 30, 1. **minus magnos**: 'smaller.' **fieri**: 'are caused.' **transportandam**: for the agreement see 11, i. **reliquis maribus**: the various parts of the Mediterranean were given separate names by the Romans.

3. **actuarias**: pred. adj.; *naves actuariae* were swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails. **fieri**: for the infin. pass. with *impero* see 22, vii. **quam ad rem**: 'to which end.'

4. **Ea quae sunt**: 'what is.' **Hispania**: Spain was rich in iron and material for ropes.

5. **Ipse**: in contrast with the *legati* of section 1, who were left to carry out his orders. **conventibus**: the governor of a province was also its supreme judge. **Illyricum**: another of Caesar's three provinces. **finitimam**: *i.e.*, to the *Pirustae.* **audiebat**: 'he heard'; the tense implies that the news came more than once.

6. **imperat**: cf. on IV., ch. 22, 2.

7. **nihil**: 'none,' lit. ? **publico consilio**: 'with the sanction of the community (*or* state)'; as opposed to the work of irresponsible individuals. **demonstrant**: coordinate with *mittunt*, not with *doceant*. **omnibus rationibus**: 'in every way.' **de**: 'for.'

8. **ad**: 'by.' **diem**: for the gender see on IV., ch. 36, 2. **fecerint**: 'they do.' For the mood and tense see 187, *b*.

9. **ad diem**: 'at the (appointed) day.' **dat**: 'he appoints.' **aestiment**: 'assess.'

CHAP. 2.

2. **circuitis . . . invenit**: 'he visits . . . and finds.' **studio**: with *instructas*. **in summa inopia**: '(although) amidst,' or freely 'in spite of,' or 'although there was,' etc. **cujus**: sc. *generis naves*; trans. freely 'which,' as though it were *quod*, the object of *demonstravimus*. **longas**: sc. *naves*. **neque multum**, etc.: 'and that they are almost ready to be launched'; lit. 'and that it is not far from this but that,' etc. (139, *c*). **diebus**: see 131.

3. **Collaudatis**: more emphatic than *laudatis*. **negotio**: see 78, v. *c*. **quid fieri velit**: cf. on IV., ch. 23, 5. **omnes**: sc. *naves*. **portum Itium**: the exact locality is unknown. **milium**: see 87; modifying *trajectum*. **huic rei**: 'for this purpose,' *i.e.*, for bringing the fleet safely to its appointed place. **satis militum**: 'a sufficient force,' lit. ? (86, i.).

4. **concilia**: Caesar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. **veniebant, parebant**: see 180, *b*.

CHAP. 3.

1. **plurimum**: adverb. **equitatu**: see 102. **supra**: Book III. speaks of 'the Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.' The last words of chap. 2 show why he here dwells on their position.

2. **inter se**: 'with each other' (164, ii.).

3. **alter**: here 'the latter,' lit. 'the one.' **cognitum est**: see 56. **se . . . futuros**: with *confirmarit*. **in officio**: 'true to their allegiance,' lit. ? **populi**: objective gen. (85, ii.); trans. by 'with,' not 'of.'

4. **cogere** : depending on *instituit*, and connected by (*iis*)*que* with *parare*. **per** : 'by reason of.' **in armis esse** : 'be under arms,' or 'bear arms.' **ingenti magnitudine** : see 105 ; modifying *quae* with the force of an appositive adj. ; freely 'which is of vast extent and,' etc. **medios** : see 86, iv. *b*.

5. **Cingetorigis** : cf. on *populi*, section 3. **de suis privatim rebus petere** : 'to seek their own private advantage,' lit. ? **privatim** : the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. **civitati** : see 79 ; in contrast with *suis privatim rebus*. **possent** : for mood see 147. **ne** : 'lest' or 'that' ; for the subjunctive see 138.

6. **sese noluisse** : sc. 'saying' or 'who say,' implied in *legatos mittit* (191) ; *sese* refers to the subject of *mittit*. **idcirco** : explained by *quo . . . laberetur*. **quo . . . contineret** : see 28, iii. **ne . . laberetur** : 'lest . . should' (24). **discessu** : abl. of time, suggesting also the cause.

7. **permitteret** : see 192. **in castra** : see 127, iv. **suas, civitatis** : both modifying *fortunas*.

CHAP. 4.

1. **qua de causa** : 'why.' **instituto** : 'original,' lit. ? **omnibus . . . comparatis** : modifying the preceding words.

2. **in** : 'among.' **filio** : in apposition with *his*. **evocaverat** : sc. *Caesar*. **consolatus** : sc. *est ;* because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen.

3. **nihilo** : see 101. **principibus, hos** : the same persons ; see 50, iii. fn. **quod** : conjunction. **cum . . . tum** : 'not only . . . but also.' (151, v.). **merito . . . fieri** : 'that he was treating him according to his desert,' for *a se fieri = se facere*, see 56. **merito** : see 103, iii. **magni interesse** : see 53, *b*, ii. ; the subject is the clause *auctoritatem . . . valere*. **cujus . . . perspexisset** : 'seeing that he had observed his,' etc. ; for subj. see 171. **suos** : referring to *ejus* (165, ii.). **tam** : omit in trans.

4. **factum** : noun. **suam . . . minui** : in apposition with *id factum ;* 'that . . . should be lessened.' **qui fuisset** : 'whereas (*or*

while) he had been' (171). **animo**: see 105. **hoc dolore**: 'at this grievance' (96); more lit. 'through indignation at this' (205, *c*).

CHAP. 5.

2. **factae erant, erant profectae**: for the mood see 175, i. **eodem**: adverb. **omnibus rebus**: 'in all respects,' lit. 'with all things.'

3. **numero**: modifying *milium*: for the abl. see 102. **milium**: modifying *equitatus* (87); trans. 'the cavalry, four thousand in number.'

4. **obsidum loco**: 'as hostages,' lit. ? (127, ii.). **cum abesset**: 'while he was absent,' or 'in his absence,' for the fut. ind. of the actual thought (187, *b*; 178, ii.).

CHAP. 6.

1. **ante . . . dictum est**: 'we have spoken before.' Book I. tells how four years before Dumnorix had stirred up hostility to Caesar among the Aedui. Caesar had pardoned him, but had ever since carefully watched his conduct. **eum**: sc. *esse*. **animi**: 'pride' or 'ambition'; for the case see 87.

2. **Accedebat huc quod**: 'besides this'; more lit. 'to this was added the fact that' (198). **deferri**: notice the tense (15, *a*). **quod dictum**: 'a statement which.' **neque**: 'but yet . . . not.'

3. **factum**: sc. *esse*, or as in ch. 4, 4. **Ille**: 'Dumnorix.' **omnibus**: 'all manner of.' **petere contendit**: 'sought earnestly,' lit. ? **quod . . . timeret**: 'on the ground that he was unaccustomed . . . and dreaded'; for the mood see 177. **navigandi**: see 90. **diceret**: for the mood see 177, ii.

4. **id**: the request to be left behind. **sibi**: 'him'; indirect object.

5. **territare**: 'he kept alarming'; historical infin. (112); for the form see IV., ch. 32, 1, fn. **fieri, esse**: in trans. supply 'saying' from *territare* (191). **ut . . . spoliaretur, ut . . . necaret**: see 197, *a*, and 196, *c*. **nobilitate**: see 93. **quos**: trans. after its antecedent *hos* (5, i.). **vereretur**: see 175. **ut . . . traductos necaret**: 'to carry over . . . and kill' (43, *c*; 50, iii.).

6. **reliquis** : *i.e.*, the other *principes* than himself. **interponere, poscere** : cf. on *territare*, section 5. **quod** : 'whatever.' **intellexissent** : for the mood and tense see 187, *b*, i. **ut . . administrarent** : giving the contents of the oath (196). **communi consilio** : 'by concerted action.' **deferebantur** : not once only, hence imperf.

CHAP. 7.

1. **tantum dignitatis tribuebat** : 'had such respect,' lit ? (86, i.). **coercendum** : sc. *esse*. **quibuscumque . . . posset** : 'by whatever means he could'; for the mood see 175.

2. **longius** : 'still farther,' *i.e.*, than at present. **prospiciendum** : sc. *esse statuebat* (56 and 200, *a*). **quid nocere** : 'to do any harm'; for the acc. see 72. **sibi** : *i.e.*, Caesar. **ne . . . posset** : see 28, i.

3. **commoratus** : 'while waiting,' or 'as he was waiting'; for the tense see 44, ii. **omnis** : omit in trans. **ut . . . contineret** : see 27 : so *cognosceret*.

4. **milites** : the infantry, belonging to the Roman legions, as opposed to the cavalry, who were native auxiliaries.

5. **impeditis** : 'while . . . were occupied.' **insciente Caesare** : 'without Caesar's knowledge' (49). **domum** : 'for home' (125).

6. **omnibus rebus** : 'everything (else).' **retrahi** : cf. on *fieri*, ch. 1, 3.

7. **vim faciat** : 'offers violence *or* makes resistance'; for fut. indic. of direct discourse (187, *b*). **se absente** : 'in his (*i.e.*, Caesar's) absence.' **qui . . . neglexisset** : 'seeing that he,' etc.; for the mood cf. on *perspexisset*, ch. 4, 3. **praesentis** : 'in his presence'; lit. '(of him) while present.' **imperium** : 'authority.'

8. **enim** : 'in fact.' Another reading is *autem*. **clamitans** : see IV., ch. 32, 1, fn. **liberum, liberae civitatis** : both predicates of *se esse* ; trans. 'a free man and a citizen of a free state' (86).

9. **erat imperatum** : see 57.

CHAP. 8.

1. **continente** : elsewhere in Caesar, *continenti*, with the regular abl. ending of an I-stem. **pro tempore et pro re** : 'as time and circumstances suggested,' lit. 'in accordance with,' etc.

2. **pari quem**: 'the same as' (174). **ad**: 'about.' **provectus, etc.**: 'was carried forward . . . but as the wind fell . . . could not keep,' etc. **longius**: 'too far' (98, vi.). **orta luce**: 'at sunrise,' lit. ? (50, ii.). **sub sinistra**: 'on the left'; the current had carried the vessels out of the Channel into the North Sea. **relictam**: 'behind him.'

3. **qua**: 'where'; adv. See IV., ch. 23, 6. **egressum**: a noun.

4. **admodum laudanda**: 'deserving of great praise' (118). **vectoriis . . . navigiis**: 'with transport ships, and those, too, heavily laden.' **non intermisso**: 'without relaxing,' or trans. by principal clause coordinate with *adaequarunt*, for which cf. IV., ch. 25, 6.

5. **Accessum est navibus**: 'the ships reached,' lit. ? (56). *Navibus* is abl. of means. **neque hostis**: 'but no enemy.'

6. **cum**: 'although' (65, *a*). **quae cum annotinis**, etc.: 'of which, including those of the previous year . . . eight hundred were in sight'; for the nom. *quae* see 86, iv., *a*. **quisque**: probably confined to rich officers and Gallic nobles. **sui commodi**: 'for his own convenience'; a predicate possessive gen. (83, i.), here expressing purpose. Some editions read *sui commodi causa*. **amplius octingentae**: for the case see 98, iv.

CHAP. 9.

1. **castris**: for the dat. see 78, ii., or 81. **qui . . . essent**: 'to protect the ships,' lit. ? (81). **de tertia vigilia**: 'early in the third watch'; *de* suggests that a portion of the watch had passed. The third of the four night watches would begin at midnight. **eo minus**: cf. on *eo magis*, ch. 1, 2. **navibus**: see 79. **relinquebat**: notice the tense. **et**: omit in trans.; another reading is *Ei*.

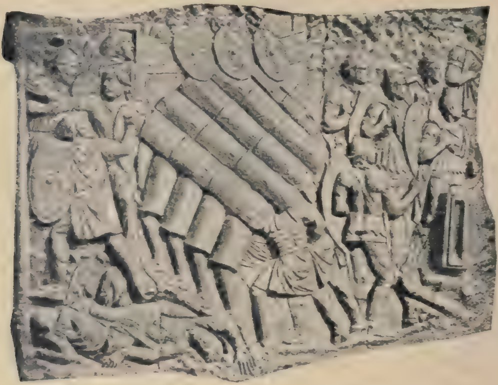
3. **equitatu**: see 103, ii. **ex loco superiore**: belonging to the whole clause, not to *prohibere*; the north bank was higher than the south. **nostros prohibere**: 'to check the advance of our men.'

4. **egregie munitum**: 'well protected.' **opere**: 'by art,' lit. 'by fortification'; explained by section 5. **ut videbantur**: 'as it seemed, *or* apparently,' lit. ? (18, vii.).

6. **ingredi prohibebant**: cf. on IV., ch. 24, 1.

7. **testudine** : a *testudo* was formed by the soldiers holding their shields over their heads so that they overlapped and formed a continuous cover, which received its name from its resemblance to a 'tortoise shell.' **aggere** : this was to put them on a level with those defending the walls. **ad** : 'against *or* close to.' **paucis** : as in IV., ch. 37, 3.

8. **eos** : i.e., *milites*, subject of *prosequi.* **fugientes** : object of *prosequi* ; see 44, i. *a.* **longius** : cf. on ch. 8, 2, or on IV., ch. 26, 5. **munitioni** : see 81.



Testudo *(From Trajan's Column).*

CHAP. 10.

1. **postridie ejus diei** : 'on the very next day,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day' (83, iv.). **in** : 'on,' lit. 'with a view to.' **expeditionem** : strictly, a rapid march of a flying column of *expediti* (ch. 2, 4).

2. **aliquantum itineris** : 'some distance,' lit ? (86, i.). **extremi** : 'only the last (*or* rearguard),' *i.e.*, of the troops sent out. **in litore** :

another reading is *in litus* (127, iii.). **neque subsisterent**: 'would (lit. did) not hold'; for the mood see 175; for the tense see 180, *b.*

3. **eo concursu**: 'the colliding thus resulting'; *eo* refers to what is implied in the preceding lines.

CHAP. 11.

1. **revocari**: *i.e.*, from pursuing the enemy. **resistere**: here meaning 'to halt.' Another reading is *itinere desistere* (93).

2. **eadem quae**: 'the same state of affairs as' (174). **sic**: 'to this extent,' *or* 'with this qualification,' here in a limiting sense, restricting the force of the previous words *eadem . . . perspicit*, and explained by the following *ut* clause (33, vi.). **amissis**, etc.: with concessive force. **reliquae posse viderentur**: 'the rest, it seemed, could,' lit. ? (18, vii.)

4. **scribit ut instituat**: see 28, v. **quam plurimas posset**: cf. on ch. 1, i. **iis legionibus**: 'with the aid of,' etc. (99, i.). **posset, sunt**: for the mood see 175, i. For the change of tense see 190, vi.

5. **multae**: for the agreement see 11, i. **operae ac laboris**: see 87, iii. **commodissimum**: 'the best plan.' **naves subduci**: see 110, fn., or trans. by changing the voice.

6. **ne nocturnis**, etc.: freely 'not allowing the soldiers' work to cease even at night,' lit. ? **ad**: 'with respect to.'

7. **quas ante**: sc. *reliquerat.*

8. **summa imperii**, etc.: 'the chief command and direction of the war,' lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the directing of the war.' **summa**: a noun, abl. absol. **communi consilio**: 'by common consent.' **dividit**: trans. by changing the voice. **a mari**: *i.e.*, from the south shore where Caesar had landed.

9. **Huic cum**, etc.: 'between this man and the other states . . . had arisen'; for the dat. see 78, v. *c.*, as also for *bello imperioque.*

CHAP. 12.

1. **quos . . . dicunt**: *quos* is subject of *natos* (*esse*): *proditum* (*esse*) depends on *dicunt*, and has for its subject *quos natos* (*esse*). Trans. 'of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' or more freely 'who, according to their own

tradition, were born.' Another reading is *ipsa*, with *insula*. **memoria** : abl. of means.

2. **pars** : sc. *incolitur*. **qui omnes** : 'all of whom' (86, iv., *a*). **iis** : 'the.' **quibus . . . pervenerunt** : freely 'from which they have sprung and have come there.' **civitatibus** : see 173, *b*.

3. **aedificia** : sc. *sunt*. **consimilia** : appositive, not predicative. **Gallicis** : sc. *aedificiis* ; 'those of the Gauls.'

4. **aut . . . aut** : 'partly . . . partly.' **ad . . . examinatis** : 'of a fixed weight,' lit. ? **pro** : 'as.'

5. **mediterraneis** : the tin mines of Cornwall are referred to, Caesar mistaking the distant west, of which he had heard, for an inland district. **maritimis** : iron was once mined in the south of England, now chiefly in the north. **ejus** : *i.e.*, iron, which, being a hard metal to work, has generally been neglected by native tribes, even where it is abundant. **importato** : in emphatic position, 'the bronze they use is imported' (3, *a*). **cujusque** : 'every' (169, *a*). **praeter,** etc. : an error on Caesar's part.

6. **fas** : sc. *esse*. **haec** : neut. plur. referring to the animals just mentioned (13, ii.). **animi** : 'amusement,' lit. 'the feelings.' **Loca** : 'the climate,' lit. 'the country.' **remissioribus** : 'less severe' (44, i., *b*) ; for the case see 49.

CHAP. 13.

1. **natura** : 'in shape' (102). **triquetra** : sc. *est*. **cujus** : 'of it.' **alter** : 'one,' corresponding to *inferior*. **ad** : 'at.' **quo** : adverb. **appelluntur** : 'put in.'

2. **alterum** : sc. *latus* ; 'the second side.' **ad Hispaniam** : as the ancients had no compasses, and seldom sailed out of sight of land, they easily fell into error as to the relative position of distant places. **qua ex parte** : see 127, v. **dimidio minor** : 'half as large,' lit. ? (101). **pari spatio,** etc. : freely 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Britain' ; lit. 'of the same length of passage across as is (the passage across) from Gaul to Britain.' For the abl. *spatio* see 105 ; with *est* sc. *transmissus* ; for *atque* see 174.

3. **hoc medio cursu** : 'the middle of this passage,' *i.e.*, to Ireland (86, iv. *b*). **Mona** : this name was afterwards given to Anglesea,

but probably the Isle of Man is here meant. **subjectae**: sc. *esse.* **insulae**: the Hebrides or Orkney islands probably. **nonnulli**: though Caesar was the first Roman to land in Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. **sub**: 'at the time of.' **bruma**: for *brevima*=*brevissima*, sc. *dies.* **esse**: the subject is *noctem.*

4. **Nos**: contrasted with *nonnulli.* For the plural see 157, ii.; cf. the use of *demonstravimus* in ch. 2, 2 and ch. 3, 1. **reperiebamus**: trans. by 'could'; the tense implies frequent attempts during Caesar's stay. **nisi**: 'except that.' **certis mensuris**: 'by exact measurements.' **ex aqua**: 'by water,' *i.e.*, with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, which worked on the principle of the hour-glass.

5. **ut . . . opinio**: 'as their belief goes'; freely 'as they believe.' **illorum**: referring to *nonnulli* of section 3. **milium**: sc. *passuum*; for the case see 87, iii.

6. **Tertium**: sc. *latus.* **angulus**: the same as *alter angulus*, section 1. **milia**: see 128; another reading is *milium*, as in section 5. **in**: 'in'; the acc. because of the notion of extending over space.

7. **vicies centum**: 'two thousand.' **milium**: for the case cf. on section 5.

CHAP. 14.

1. **qui**: see 173, *a.* **quae regio**: see 173, *c.* ii. **omnis**: 'entirely.'

2. **Interiores plerique**: 'most of those in the interior'; *plerique*, an adj. modifying *interiores*, which is used as a substantive. **lacte, pellibus**: see 99. **sunt vestiti**: see 164, iv., and 182, *e.* **hoc**: 'thus,' lit. ? (101, ii. *c*). **aspectu**: see 102.

3. **sunt**: freely 'they have.' **capillo, parte**; see 105, ii. **rasa**: trans. freely by the active voice.

4. **Uxores communes**: acc. Caesar is probably in error on this point. **deni duodenique**: 'in groups of ten or twelve.' For *-que*, lit. 'and (in other cases),' cf. in English 'three and four times a day.' **inter se**: omit in trans.

5. **si qui**: sc. *liberi*; 'if any' (166, *a*). **habentur**: 'they are regarded,' with pred. nom. *liberi* (12, *c*). **quo**: adv. = *ad quos*; 'to whom.'

CHAP. 15.

1. **tamen ut**: 'yet so that.' **omnibus partibus**: 'everywhere.' **fuerint, compulerint**: for the tense see 33, iii.

2. **compluribus**: *i.e.*, of the Britons. **cupidius**: see 98, vi.

3. **illi**: see 160, i. **spatio**: *i.e.*, of time; cf. section 4. **castrorum**: a camp was made at the end of each day's march.

4. **missis**: trans. by 'when.' **subsidio**: 'to their aid' (81). **atque his**: 'and these too.' **primis**: apparently the first cohort of a legion was its best. **cum**: 'although.' **intermisso loci spatio**: 'leaving an interval.' **inter se**: with *intermisso.* **perterritis**: trans. by 'as.' **per medios**: 'between them,' *i.e.*, through the *perexiguum spatium.* **seque . . . receperunt**: not meaning 'they got away,' as the last words of section 5 show, but that they charged back again through the open space to their original position.

CHAP. 16.

1. **dimicaretur**: see 56. **nostros**: the legionary soldiers, as contrasted with *equites*, section 2; subject of *esse.* **cedentes**: acc.; 'the retreating enemy' (44, i., *a*). **possent**: see 175. **ab signis discedere**: they had been trained to fight in solid ranks only. **minus**: 'not well.' **ad**: 'to face.'

2. **autem**: 'while.' **proelio**: see 99. **illi**: 'the enemy.' **cederent**: see 175. **cum**: 'whenever.' **removissent**: for the mood and tense see 149 and 187, *b*. **nostros**: here = *equites.*

3. **Equestris**: with *proelii.* **autem**: 'moreover.' **ratio**: 'regular method,' *or* 'ordinary style'; in opposition to the unfamiliar tactics described in the last line of section 2. **cedentibus, insequentibus**: either dat. of the participle, referring to the Romans, or perhaps abl. absolute with *Britannis* understood. In either case Caesar is thinking of the danger to his own native cavalry, due to the superiority of the British horsemen. **inferebat**: 'brought' (180, *b*).

4. **Accedebat huc ut . . . proeliarentur**: cf. on ch. 6, 2; see 197 and 200, *c*. **intervallis**: see 103. **stationes**: 'reserves *or* supports.' **alios alii**: 'one another' (168, *a*. ii.). **exciperent**: 'relieved.' **-que**: 'and thus.'

CHAP. 17.

1. **rari**: 'here and there' (205, *h*). **lenius**: 'with less vigor.'

2. **tres**: an unusually large force; cf. IV., ch. 32, 1. **cum**: 'under.' **ad . . . advolaverunt**: see 78, v. *b*. **sic uti . . . absisterent**: 'so as to attack even the standards,' etc.; lit.? They were not afraid to attack even the main body escorting the actual foragers.

3. **subsidio**: for abl. (= 'in') with *confisi* see 107, ii. **praecipites**: predicate acc. **egerunt**: see 155, *a*.

4. **sui colligendi**: see 119, iv.

5. **Ex**: 'after.' **quae . . . auxilia**: the *majores copiae* of ch. 11, 8. **discesserunt**: 'disbanded.' **summis copiis**: 'with their full force,' or 'in full force' (103, ii.).

CHAP. 18.

1. **consilio**: that, apparently, which is described in ch. 19. **Tamesim**: certain I-stems with nom. in *-is* (including names of rivers and towns) have the acc. in *-im*, and abl. in *-i*. **in fines**: see 127, iv. **hoc**: 'here,' 'at this'; sc. *loco*.

2. **animum advertit**: also written *animadvertit*, and with the same force. **ad**: 'on.'

3. **praefixis**: driven into the face of the bank. **defixae**: driven into the bed of the river.

5. **ea, eo**: 'such' (159, i.) **cum . . . exstarent**: 'although only their heads were above the water,' lit.? (101). **-que**: 'but.'

CHAP. 19.

1. **ut demonstravimus**: with *deposita spe*. **supra**: ch. 17, 5. **amplioribus copiis**: 'the greater part of his forces,' lit.? **relictis**: trans. freely by 'kept.' **servabat**: for the force of this and the succeeding imperfects see 180, *b*. **quibus**: 'where,' or 'through which.'

2. **cum**: 'whenever.' **ejecerat**: for the mood and tense see 149. **liberius**: with *ejecerat*; for the meaning see 98, vi.; so *latius* and *longius*, section 3. **viis**: see 99, ii. *a*. **periculo equitum**: 'danger to cavalry'; for the gen. see 85, ii. **hoc metu**: 'through fear of this,' lit.? (205, *c*). Cf. *hoc dolore*, ch. 4, 4.

3. **Relinquebatur ut . . . pateretur**: 'the only course left was for Caesar not to allow his men to leave,' etc. For *ut pateretur* as subject clause see 197, fn.; for *discedi* see 56. **tantum noceretur**: freely 'to do as much harm' (72; 57). **in**: 'in the way of.' **labore atque itinere**: 'by laborious marching' (hendiadys), contrasted with the dashing cavalry raids.

CHAP. 20.

1. **Trinobantes**: with *mittunt*, section 2. **ex qua . . . vitaverat**: this parenthesis may be translated after *legatos . . . mittunt*, section 2, and broken at *cujus pater*, thus: 'The Trinobantes send, etc.; from this state, etc.; his father, etc.; they promise, etc.' **fidem secutus**: 'attaching himself to,' lit.? **continentem Galliam**: 'the mainland of Gaul' (89, i.). **obtinuerat**: *obtineo* does not mean 'obtain' (203, *f*, iii.). **ipse**: 'while he himself,' or 'but who himself' (170, iv.).

2. **sese dedituros**: sc. *se* as subject, *sese* being object.

3. **Cassivellauni**: 'on the part of C.' *or* 'at the hands of C.' (84). **mittat qui praesit**: 'to send (some one) to govern' (173, *a*).

4. **exercitui**: see 79. **ad numerum**: 'to the required number.' Note the asyndeton in the last sentence (as also with *ipse* in section 1). Note, too, *his*, *eos* and *illi* used of the same persons.

CHAP. 21.

1. **defensis**: *i.e.*, against Cassivellaunus. **militum**: cf. on *Cassivellauni*, ch. 20, 3.

2. **his**: sc. *legatis*, from *legationibus*. **quo**: adverb. **satis magnus**: 'a considerable.' **convenerit**: for the mood and tense see 186, 2; 187, *b*.

3. **oppidum vocant**: 'call it a town'; the object of *vocant* is found in the clause *cum . . . munierunt*. The Gauls, on the other hand, had regular towns in which they dwelt. **silvas impeditas**: 'a piece of woods difficult of access.' **munierunt**: see 149.

4. **opere**: cf. on ch. 9, 4. **ex**: 'on' (205, *b*). **hunc**: 'it'; lit. 'this (place).'

5. **morati** : ‘after holding out.’ **non tulerunt** : ‘could not withstand.’

6. **repertus** : sc. *est.* **multi** : ‘many (of the enemy).’

CHAP. 22.

1. **quibus regionibus praeerant** : ‘over which . . . ruled’ (78, v. *c*). **his** : *i.e.*, the kings. **navalia castra** : see ch. 11, 5.

2. **incolumes** : acc. with *suos ; sui* is here identical with *nostri.*

3. **per** : ‘through the mediation of’ (99, i.).

4. **neque multum** : ‘and little.’ **id** : = *non multum aestatis*, ‘that little.’ **in annos singulos** : ‘yearly,’ lit. ‘for the years one by one.’ **vectigalis** : see 86, i. **penderet** : ‘should pay’; for the mood see 186, 1, *b*, i., and 200, *a*.

5. **interdicit atque imperat** : emphatic repetition ; ‘he absolutely forbids . . . to harm,’ *or* ‘he expressly orders . . . not to harm.’ **neu** : ‘or,’ lit. ? (28, ii.).

CHAP. 23.

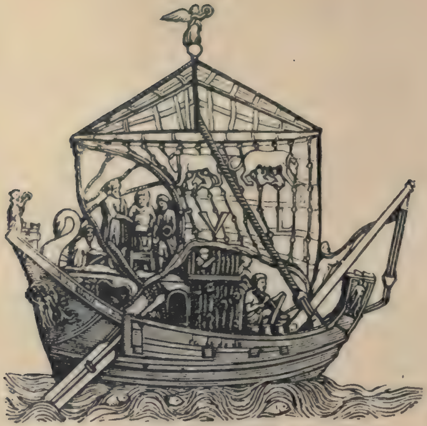
2. **commeatibus** : for the abl. see 103.

3. **tanto numero** : see IV., ch. 22, 3 and 4, and V., ch. 2, 2, and ch. 8, 6. **tot navigationibus** : ‘although there were so many passages’ (49). **portaret** : ‘had on board’; the subj. may be by attraction (177, i.) (so *remitterentur*, section 4, but not *curaverat*, which is not so essential a part of the sentence) or may perhaps be characteristic (32).

4. **et . . . et** : dividing these empty vessels into two classes, to the latter of which *mitterentur*, not *remitterentur*, would more strictly apply ; trans. ‘both those which had made the first trip . . . and those which,’ etc. **prioris commeatus** : sc. *ex navibus* (87). **postea** : *i.e.*, after Caesar had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. **faciendas curaverat** : cf. on ch. 1, 1. **numero** : for the abl. see 102. **sexaginta** : acc. agreeing with *quas.* **locum caperent** : ‘reached their destination,’ *i.e.*, Britain. **caperent, rejicerentur** : with *sic accidit uti.*

5. **quod** : ‘for.’ **necessario collocavit** : cf. on IV., ch. 28, 3.

6. **consecuta** : see 50, ii. **cum solvisset** : freely ‘he set sail . . . and.’ **inita vigilia** : ‘at the beginning of the watch,’ abl. absol.



Transport Ship.

INDEX OF POINTS OF SYNTAX AND ACCIDENCE IN CAESAR, B. G. IV. 20—V. 23.

A. Case Constructions.

Nominative: in apposition, iv. 22, 1.—in predicate, iv. 32, 1; v. 9, 6; 11, 8; 13, 3; 14, 5; 16, 4; 17, 1.—of personal pronoun, iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4; and **ille** or **illī** often.

Genitive: (a) *possessive*: in predicate, v. 8, 6.—with **postrīdiē**, v. 10, 1; with **causā**, v. 9, 4; 12, 6, and often with gerund or gerundive.

(b) *subjective*; iv. 27, 3; 33, 1; 34, 1; 35, 2; v. 2, 2; 3, 6; 8, 2; 8, 3; 10, 3; 11, 6; 22, 3.

(c) *objective*; iv. 20, 4; 22, 2; 28, 2; 29, 3; 31, 1; 32, 1; 37, 1; v. 3, 3; 3, 5; 6, 4; 9, 8; 19, 1; 19, 2.—with adjectives; iv. 22, 1; 24, 4; v. 6, 1; 6, 3.

(d) *partitive*: with neuters, iv. 21, 9; 22, 3; 32, 2; v. 1, 7; 2, 3; 7, 1; 10, 2; 22, 4 (twice).—with **mīlia**, iv. 37, 2 and often **passuum**, as v. 2, 3; 13, 7.—with superlatives; v. 3, 1; 15, 4; 20, 1.—in predicate; v. 7, 8.

(e) *quality;* iv. 22, 1; 38, 5; v. 2, 2; 2, 3; 5, 3; 12, 5; 16, 1; 18, 3; 23, 4.—in predicate; v. 6, 1; 11, 5; 13, 5; 13, 7.

(f) *price;* iv. 21, 7; v. 4, 3.

Dative: (a) *indirect object;* iv. 22, 1; v. 6, 4; 18, 5; and often.—with adjectives; iv. 20, 2; 21, 7; 29, 1; v. 9, 1 (?); 12, 3.—with special intransitive verbs, iv. 21, 2; 21, 5; 21, 8; 27, 5; v. 1, 1; 2, 4; 7, 2; 19, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (twice). [**Imperō** with dat. and acc., iv. 22, 2; v. 1, 6; 20, 4].—with compound verbs; iv. 25, 6; 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 2, 3; 11, 9; 16, 4; 22, 1; and combined with acc., v. 1, 1; 9, 1; 11, 9.

(b) *interest;* iv. 25, 3; 26, 4; 36, 2; v. 3, 5; 9, 1; 20, 4.

(c) *purpose;* iv. 29, 4; 31, 2; v. 1, 4; 2, 3; 9, 1 (?); 9, 8; 15, 4.

(d) *interest and purpose* (*double dative*)*;* iv. 20, 2; 25, 1; 37, 2; v. 9, 1; 11, 7.

(e) *possession* (with **dēsum**), iv. 26, 5; 30, 1.

(f) *apparent agent;* iv. 24, 2.

Accusative: (a) *predicate acc.;* iv. 21, 7; 23, 2; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 2; 1, 3; 16, 4; 17, 3; 21, 3; 22, 2; 23, 1; 23, 6.

(b) *limit of motion;* iv. 21, 6; v. 7, 5.

(c) *extent of space;* iv. 23, 6; v. 9, 2; 10, 2; 11, 8; 13, 1; 13, 6.

(d) *duration of time;* iv. 34, 4; v. 7, 3 (twice); 13, 3.

(e) *adverbial;* v. 1, 3; 2, 2; 3, 1; 7, 2; 14, 1; 19, 3.

(f) with **propius**; iv. 28, 2.

Ablative: (a) *separation;* iv. 21, 9; 24, 1; 30, 2 (twice); 34, 5; v. 6, 5; 11, 1 (?).

(b) *cause;* iv. 34, 1; v. 4, 4.

(c) *comparison;* iv. 37, 3 (?).

(d) *means or instrument;* iv. 22, 4; 24, 2; 25, 1; 25, 2; 26, 4; 27, 1; 28, 3; 29, 2; 29, 4; 31, 3; 32, 5; 33, 3; 35, 1; 35, 3; 37, 1; v. 1, 5; 1, 8; 5, 2; 6, 3; 6, 5; 7, 1; 8, 4; 8, 5; 9, 4; 11, 4; 12, 1; 13, 4; 14, 2; 15, 1; 16, 2; 17, 1; 18, 5; 19, 1; 19, 2 (twice); and often.—with **ūtor** often; in iv. 38, 2, with double abl.

(e) *measure of difference :* iv. 22, 4 ; v. 13, 2 ; so **multō**, v. 4, 4 ; **nihilō**, v. 4, 3 ; 7, 3 ; and **paulō**, iv. 23, 2, and often. **Hōc** or **eō** with comparatives, iv. 30, 1 ; v. 1, 2 ; 9, 1 ; 14, 2.

(f) *specification ;* v. 3, 1 ; 5, 3 ; 13, 1 ; 14, 2 ; 23, 4.

(g) *manner and attendant circumstances ;* iv. 25, 4 ; 27, 3 ; 28, 1 ; 31, 3 ; 33, 1 ; v. 1, 7 ; 2, 2 ; 11, 2 ; 16, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 18, 1 ; 18, 5 ; 23, 2 ; of accordance ; v. 1, 7 ; 4, 3 ; 6, 6 ; 11, 8.

(h) *accompaniment ;* iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 3 ; 17, 5.

(i) *quality ;* v. 3, 4 ; 4, 4 ; 13, 2 ; 14, 3.

(j) *place where ;* iv. 34, 2 ; v. 5, 4 ; 15, 1 ; 18, 1 ; 19, 1 ; with **cōnfīdō**, v. 17, 3.

(k) *time when ;* iv. 20, 1 ; 34, 1 ; v. 3, 6 ; 23, 6 ; and often with words expressing time ; (but not **cōnsulibus**, v. 1, 1 ; **lūce**, v. 8, 2 ; **vigiliā**, v. 23, 6).

(l) *time within which ;* iv. 27, 6 ; 37, 3 (?) ; v. 2, 2.

(m) *absolute ;* concessive (=*although*) ; iv. 20, 4 ; 31, 3 ; 34, 2 ; v. 11, 2 ; 23, 3.—conditional (=*if*) ; iv. 30, 2.—with pres. partic. ; iv. 25, 3 ; v. 7, 7 ; 16, 3 (?).—with deponent perf. partic. ; iv. 26, 5 ; v. 8, 2 ; 10, 2 (twice) ; 23, 6.—with noun or adj. as predicate ; iv. 20, 1 ; 23, 6 ; 24, 2 ; 24, 3 ; 28, 3 ; 32, 5 ; 36, 2 (twice) ; v. 1, 1 ; 7, 5 ; 12, 6 ; 15, 3 ; 23, 3.—with negative ; v. 8, 4 ; 11, 6.—referring to object in acc. ; iv. 21, 6 ; v. 4, 3.—with subject omitted ; v. 16, 3 (?).

B. MODAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

(a) **Final or purpose clauses** : *adverbial :* with **ut** or **nē** ; v. 3, 6 ; 4, 1 ; 8, 1 ; 10, 1 ; 23, 5 ; with **quō** ; v. 3, 6.—*relative ;* iv. 21, 5 ; 22, 1 ; v. 1, 7 ; 1, 9 ; 9, 1 ; 10, 2 ; 20, 3.—*substantival ;* iv. 21, 2 ; 21, 6 ; 21, 8 ; 25, 3 ; 25, 5 ; 27, 4 ; v. 1, 1 ; 4, 2 ; 6, 3 ; 6, 4 ; 6, 5 ; 6, 6 ; 7, 2 ; 7, 3 ; 8, 3 ; 11, 4 ; 20, 3 ; 22, 1 ; 22, 5 (with **neu**) ; with **ut** omitted ; iv. 21, 8 ; 23, 5.—with **vereor** ; v. 3, 5.—with **quōminus**, iv. 22, 4.—with **quīn**, v. 2, 2.

(b) **Consecutive or result clauses** : *adverbial ;* iv. 23, 3 ; 28, 2 ; 33, 2 ; 33, 3 ; v. 11, 2 (restrictive) ; 15, 1 ; 17, 2 ; 18, 5.—*substantival ;* iv. 29, 1 ; 31, 3 ; 35, 1 ; v. 6, 5 ; 16, 4 ; 19, 3 ; 23, 3 and 4.

(c) **Relative clauses of characteristic**; iv. 21, 9; 29, 4; 34, 4; 38, 2; v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).

(d) **Indirect questions**; iv. 20, 4; 21, 9; 23, 5; 34, 5; v. 2, 3; 3, 3; 4, 1; 8, 1; 9, 1.—**deliberative**; v. 22, 4.

(e) **Relative clauses** [see also under a, c, g, i.].—often with **quī** or **ut** (= *as*) and the indic.—in indirect discourse in subj.; iv. 21, 8; 22, 1; 23, 5; 27, 1; 32, 1 (twice); v. 1, 1; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 1; 11, 4; 21, 2.—in subj. by attraction, v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).—in indic., though with indirect discourse; iv. 30, 1; 31, 1; 31, 2; 32, 2 (twice); 35, 1; v. 5, 2 (twice); 11, 4.—with **quīcumque**, iv. 26, 1 (indic.); v. 7, 1 (subj. in indirect discourse).

(f) **Temporal clauses**: **ubi** and indic.; iv. 25, 1; 26, 2 (frequentative); v. 9, 1.—**simul (atque)** and indic.; iv. 26, 5; 27, 1; v. 3, 3.—**posteāquam** and indic.; iv. 37, 4; v. 3, 5; 6, 4.—**postquam** and indic.; iv. 28, 1.—**dum** (= *while*) and indic.; iv. 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3; v. 22, 1.—**dum** (= *until*) and subj.; iv. 23, 4.—**quoad** and indic.; v. 17, 3.—**priusquam** and subj.; iv. 21, 1.—**cum**, frequentative and indic.; iv. 33, 1; v. 19, 2; 21, 3; with subj. in indirect discourse; v. 16, 2.—**cum** and subj.; iv. 25, 4; 25, 6; 26, 4; 28, 2; 32, 3; 37, 1; 37, 2; v. 1, 6; 2, 2; 10, 2; 16, 1; 17, 2; 18, 2; 22, 2; 23, 5; 23, 6; in v. 5, 4, in indirect discourse for the fut. indic.

(g) **Causal clauses**: often with **quod** and indic.—with **quod** and subj. in indirect discourse; iv. 22, 1; 27, 5; v. 6, 3 (twice, *dīceret* exceptional); 10, 2; 16, 1; 16, 2.—with **quoniam** and subj., in virtual indirect discourse; v. 3, 5.—with **cum** and subj.; iv. 23, 2; 28, 3; 29, 3; 30, 1; 31, 3; 32, 1; 38, 2; v. 17, 3; 22, 4.—with **quī** and subj.; iv. 23, 5; v. 4, 3; 7, 7.—with **quod** = *the fact that*; v. 6, 2.

(h) **Conditional clauses**: in direct discourse; iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4.—in indirect discourse; iv. 20, 2 (twice); 33, 2 (perhaps attraction); 34, 5; 35, 1; 37, 1; v. 1, 8; 3, 7; 7, 7.

(i) **Concessive or adversative clauses**: with **etsī** and indic.; iv. 20, 1; 31, 1; 35, 1; v. 4, 1; 11, 5.—with **cum** and subj.; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 5; v. 8, 6; 15, 4; 18, 5.—with **quī** and subj.; v. 4, 4.

(j) **Infinitive**: *complementary*; with **polliceor**, iv. 21, 5; with **imperō**, v. 1, 3; 7, 6.—with **prohibeō**, iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 6; 19, 2.—with **vereor**, v. 6, 5.

in indirect discourse ; introduced informally, v. 3, 6 ; 6, 5.—with subj. acc. omitted, iv. 27, 1 ; 27, 5 ; v. 20, 2.—with **statuō**, v. 7, 1 ; 11, 5.—*substantival ;* iv. 30, 2 ; v. 4, 3 ; 4, 4 ; 11, 5 ; 12, 6.—*historical ;* v. 6, 5 ; 6, 6.

(k) **Gerund** : *genitive ;* with **causā**, v. 6, 2 ; 17, 2 ; 19, 2 ; with other nouns, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 1, 2 ; 6, 4 ; 8, 4 ; 17, 3 ; 17, 4 ; with adjective, v. 6, 3.—*accusative ;* with **ad**, iv. 23, 1 ; 23, 4 ; 29, 3 ; v. 5, 2.—*ablative ;* with **in**, iv. 32, 5.

(l) **Gerundive** : as mere predicate adj., v. 8, 4.—passive periphrastic ; iv. 22, 2 ; 24, 2 ; 36, 2 ; v. 7, 1 ; 7, 2.—gerundive construction ; *genitive*, with **causā**, iv. 22, 1 ; 30, 2 ; v. 12, 2 ; 21, 3,—with other nouns, iv. 22, 2 ; 34, 5 ; v. 11, 8.—with **suī**, iv. 34, 5 ; v. 17, 4.—*accusative*, with **ad**, iv. 20, 2 ; 21, 1 ; 22, 3 ; 29, 4 ; 31, 2 ; 34, 2 ; v. 1, 2 ; 1, 4 ; 7, 6.—*ablative*, with **in**, iv. 27, 4 ; v. 19, 3.—*predicatively*, with **cūrō**, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 1, 1 ; 23, 4 ; with **dō**, iv. 22, 5.

(m) **Supine** : in **-um**, iv. 32, 1 ; in **-ū**, iv. 30, 2.

(n) **Participles** : used as substantives, iv. 27, 3 ; v. 4, 3 ; 4, 4 ; 6, 3 (?) ; 9, 8 ; 16, 1 ; 16, 3 (?) ; 16, 4 ; 20, 2 ; 20, 4.—used as adj. and compared, v. 12, 6.—as predicative complement, iv. 23, 2 ; 26, 2 ; 26, 4 ; 37, 1 ; v. 2, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 23, 1.—present part., iv. 25, 3 ; 26, 2 ; 26, 4 ; 37, 1 ; v. 1, 1 ; 7, 7 (twice).—perfect partic. with future reference, iv. 27, 6 ; 30, 2 ; v. 6, 5 ; 22, 1.—perfect partic. with force of present, v. 7, 3 ; and often with verbs of *thinking*.

C. USE OF TENSES.

Present : historical present : with primary sequence, iv. 21, 2 ; 21, 5 ; 21, 8 ; and often with secondary sequence, iv. 21, 9 ; v. 1, 1 ; 11, 2 ; 22, 4 ; with shift of sequence, v. 7, 7 ; 11, 4.—present subj., in indirect discourse for fut. indic. ; v. 7, 7.—with **dum** (= *while*) ; iv. 22, 1 ; 32, 1 ; 34, 3 ; v. 22, 1.

Imperfect : as past progressive, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 3, 2.—of repeated or habitual action (or repeated failure), iv. 20, 4 ; 25, 3 ; 26, 1-4 ; 31, 2 ; v. 1, 5 ; 2, 4 ; 6, 6 ; 10, 2 ; 13, 4 ; 16, 2 ; 16, 3 ; 19, 1 ; 19, 2.—inceptive, iv. 31, 2 (*comparābat*).—conative ; iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 6.—with peculiar force, **accēdēbat** and **relinquēbātur**,[1] iv. 22, 4 ; v. 6, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 19, 3.—imperf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. indic. ; iv. 20, 2 ; v. 5, 4.

---

[1] In view of the literal meaning of these verbs, we should expect the pluperfect.

Perfect: rendered by present **(cōnsuēvī)**, iv. 24, 1; 29, 1; 33, 3; v. 1, 2; 7, 3; 21, 3.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 33, 1; v. 14, 5; 21, 3.—perf. subj., in clause of result; v. 15, 1.—perf. subj., in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic.; v. 1, 8.

Pluperfect: rendered by past **(cōnsuēveram)**, iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 1.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 26, 1; 26, 4; v. 16, 2; 19, 2.—plupf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic., iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 27, 1; 34, 5; 35, 1; v. 6, 6.—**ūsī fuerant**, iv. 38, 2.—**dispositās habērent**, v. 16, 4.

Future perfect: iv. 25, 3.

D. MISCELLANEOUS.

(a) impersonal passive; iv. 23, 2; 24, 2; 26, 1; 27, 4; 28, 1 (twice); 29, 4; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 3, 3; 4, 3; 6, 1; 7, 2; 7, 9; 8, 5; 16, 1 (twice); 19, 3 (thrice).

(b) passive with reflexive force; iv. 32, 2; v. 14, 2.

(c) **videor** and **dīcor** used personally; v. 2, 4; 9, 4; 11, 2.

(d) **necesse est**, iv. 29, 3; **oportet**, iv. 29, 4; **interest**, v. 4, 3.

(e) **quam** with superlative; iv. 21, 2; v. 4, 3; with **possum** added, v. 1, 1; 11, 4.

(f) comparative with standard of comparison unexpressed; iv. 20, 4; 23, 2; 25, 1; 26, 5; 30, 1; 32, 3; 35, 2; v. 7, 2; 8, 2; 9, 8; 15, 2; 16, 1; 19, 2 (twice); 19, 3; 23, 5.

(g) **amplius** with **quam** omitted; iv. 37, 3; v. 8, 6.

(h) distributive numerals; v. 6, 4; 14, 4; 22, 4.—numeral adverb; v. 13, 7.

(i) relative pronoun and pronominal adjective [see also under Modal Constructions, a, c, e, g, i].

with coordinating force; iv. 23, 3; 24, 4; and often; in adverbial dependent clause; iv. 23, 2; 25, 1; 28, 2; and often.—with antecedent omitted (= *is quī*); iv. 22, 3; 25, 3; 27, 1; 31, 2; 34, 3; v. 1, 2 (twice); 2, 3; 6, 6; 14, 1; 20, 3.—with antecedent repeated; iv. 32, 1; v. 2, 3; 12, 2; 13, 3.—with antecedent following; iv. 26, 4; 31, 2; v. 6, 5; 17, 5.—with antecedent incorporated into relative clause; iv. 21, 4; 21, 8; 24, 1; 29, 1; 31, 2; v. 6, 2; 14, 1; 22, 1.—**quīcumque**, iv. 26, 1; v. 7, 1.—**īdem quī**, iv. 24, 4; 35, 1; 36, 4; v. 11, 2; 11, 7.—**pār quī**, v. 8, 2 [**pār atque**, v. 13, 2].—**tantus quantus**, iv. 35, 3; v. 19, 3; with **tantus** omitted, iv. 21, 9.

(j) **is** (=*such*): v. 18, 5.—**hōc mētū** = **hūjus reī metū**; v. 19, 2; similarly 4, 4.

(k) **ille**, marking change of subject; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 6; 33, 2; 37, 2; v. 6, 3; 7, 8; 7, 9; 9, 3; 15, 3; 15, 5; 16, 2; 20, 4.

(l) indefinite pronouns and pronominal adjectives: **quis (quī)**; v. 7, 2; 14, 5.—**quisquam**; iv. 20, 3 (twice).—**ūllus**; iv. 29, 2; 32, 1; v. 23, 3.—**nūllus**; iv. 28, 2; v. 13, 6.—**aliquis**; iv. 26, 2; 32, 2.—**nōnnūllī**; v. 3, 5; 13, 3; 15, 2; 23, 2.—**alius**; iv. 26, 3; 29, 4; v. 11, 3; 21, 5; repeated, iv. 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 16, 4.—**alter**; v. 3, 3; 13, 1; 18, 2; (=*the second*) 13, 2.—**cēterī**; v. 6, 1.—**quisque**; v. 8, 6; 12, 5; 14, 5.—**uterque**; iv. 26, 1.

(m) **inter sē**: (=*one another*); iv. 25, 5; 30, 1; v. 3, 2; 14, 4.

(n) **post diem quartum quam**; iv. 28, 1.

(o) **cum . . tum**; v. 4, 3.

(p) **nē . . . quidem**; v. 11, 6.

(q) **inquit**; iv. 25, 3.

(r) **medius**; iv. 36, 3; v. 3, 4; 8, 2; 13, 3.

(s) adjective with adverbial force; v. 9, 6; 16, 4; 17, 1.

(t) plural of abstract nouns; iv. 38, 2; v. 1, 2.

(u) first plural = *I*; **nōs**, v. 6, 1; 13, 4; cf. also, v. 2, 2; 3, 1; 19, 1; 22, 1.

(v) concords: apposition; v. 3, 4; 4, 2; 20, 1 (twice).—agreement with nearer noun; iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 2; 11, 5.—sense construction; iv. 36, 4.

E. ACCIDENCE.

(a) third declension, I-stems; accus. in **-im**, v. 18, 1; abl. in **-ī**, **nāvī**; iv. 21, 9, and often; **continentī**, iv. 31, 2, and often, but **continente**, v. 8, 1.

(b) **jūsjūrandum**; v. 6, 6; **rēs pūblica**, iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 2; **vīs**, **vīrēs**, iv. 35, 3; v. 7, 7; 10, 2; **fās**, v. 12, 6; **locus**, **loca**, v. 8, 6, and often.

(c) **fīrmiter**; iv. 26, 1.

(d) **nōbīscum**; v. 17, 5; **sēcum**, iv. 32, 2; 35, 1; v. 5, 4; 6, 1.

(e) frequentative verbs; iv. 32, 1; v. 6, 4; 7, 8.

(f) contracted verbal forms; iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 24, 1; 24, 4; 25, 6; 27, 1; 27, 5; 33, 3; v. 1, 1; 8, 4; 21, 3; 23, 5.

VOCABULARY

TO

CAESAR DE BELLO GALLICO

A.

A., an abbreviation for **Aulus.**

ā, ab, (abs), prep. with abl., (**ā** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants; **abs** once before **te**), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in.*

ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide, conceal;* part. **abditus, a, um,** as adj., *hidden, secluded.*

ab-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, carry off.*

ab-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go away, depart.*

abi-ēs, -etis, f., *fir.*

ab-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw away; throw.*

ab-iungō, ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *detach, separate, part.*

ab-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *carry off, snatch.*

abs, see **ā.**

abs-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut off, cut, cut away; cut down.*

absēns, -entis, *absent*

absimilis, e, *unlike.*

ab-sistō, ere, -stitī, *withdraw, keep away from.*

abs-tineō, ere, -tinuī, -tentum, *refrain, abstain, spare.*

abs-trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag away, carry off.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, *be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; take no part in, keep aloof; lack, be lacking.*

abundō, āre, āvī, ātum, *abound, be strong in.*

ac (shorter form for **atque,** used only before vowels), *and, and further;* in comparisons, *than, as.*

ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *approach, draw near, come up; be added.*

accelerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten.*

acceptus, a, um, from **accipio.**

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, *fall; befall, happen, occur; turn out.*

ac-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut into, cut.*

ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; find; hear;* part. **acceptus, a, um,** as adj., *acceptable, popular.*

acclīvis, e, *rising, sloping.*

acclīvitās, -tātis, f., *ascent, slope, steepness.*

Accō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Senones.

accommodō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fit, adjust; adapt, suit.*

accūrātē, adv., *carefully, elaborately.*

accurrō, ere, -currī or **-cucurrī, -cursum,** *run up, rush up, hasten.*

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *accuse, find fault, censure.*

ācer, cris, cre, *sharp, keen, violent, severe.*

acerbē, adv., *bitterly, keenly;* **acerbe ferre,** *be distressed by.*

acerbitās, -tātis, f., *bitterness; suffering, distress.*

acerbus, a, um, *bitter, painful.*

acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*

aciēs, ēī, f., *keenness, fierce glance; line of battle; battle.*

ac-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *gain, gain advantage.*

ācriter, adv., (**ācrius, ācerrimē**), *fiercely, hotly, desperately.*

āctuārius, a, um, *light, swift.*

āctus, a, um, from **ago.**

acūtus, a, um, *sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards; with a view to, for; according to; near, by, in, among;* (with numerals), *about.*

adāctus, a, um, from **adigo.**

adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, *equal; make equal.*

adamō, āre, āvī, ātum, *love greatly, become enamored of, take a fancy to.*

ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *add, join; make an addition.*

ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead, bring; bring in, conduct; draw towards, draw taut; induce, influence, force.*

adēmptus, a, um, from **adimo.**

adeō, adv., *so, so much.*

ad-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī,), -itum, *go to, advance; attack; visit; reach, get at; approach.*

adeptus, a, um, from **adipiscor.**

adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ride up.*

ad-haerēscō, ere, -haesī, -haesum, *adhere, cling to, catch fast to.*

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *call in, admit; bring along; use, show.*

adhortor, ārī, ātus sum, *urge, exhort, encourage.*

adhūc, adv., *till now, up to the present, as yet.*

Adiatunnus, ī, m., a chief of the Sontiates.

ad-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *drive up; drive in; hurl, cast; move up; force, bind.*

ad-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *take away, destroy; cut off.*

ad-ipīscor, ī, -eptus sum, *obtain, win.*

aditus, ūs, m., *approach, access, means of approach; right of approaching, admittance; intercourse.*

adjaceō, ēre, uī, *be adjacent, border upon.*

ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *cast; add; throw up.*

adjūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *adjudge.*

ad-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *join, unite, ally; annex.*

adjūtor, ōris, m., *assistant, ally.*

ad-juvō, āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *assist, help; aid; be of assistance, further.*

Admagetobriga, ae, f., a town in Gaul, of uncertain position.

admātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mature; hasten.*

administer, trī, m., *assistant, priest.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry out, execute, attend to; manage; issue.*

admīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire, be surprised.*

ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *allow, incur; commit; let go;* part. **admissus,** *at full speed.*

admodum, adv., *very, very much, exceedingly;* with numerals, *fully, quite.*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise.*

adolēscēns, see **adulescens.**

adolēscentia, see **adulescentia.**

adolēscentulus, see **adulescentulus.**

ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, *grow up.*

ad-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*

ad-scīscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *join, unite, take.*

adsistō, see **assisto.**

ad-sum, esse, -fuī, *be present, be at hand, be near ; aid, assist.*

Aduātuca, ae, f., a stronghold in the north-east of Gaul.

Aduātucī, ōrum, m., *the Aduatuci,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *young man ; the younger.*

adulēscentia, ae, f., *youth.*

adulēscentulus, ī, m., *a mere youth.*

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, approach, coming.*

adversārius, ī, m., *opponent, enemy.*

adversus, a, um, *opposite, facing, in front ; adverse, unsuccessful.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, *turn towards ;* w. **animum,** *observe, notice.*

advocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, summon.*

advolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fly to, rush upon* or *to.*

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, *build.*

Aeduus, ī, m., *an Aeduan ;* in plur., *the Aedui,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul.

aeger, gra, grum, *sick.*

aegrē, adv., (**aegrius, aegerrimē**), *scarcely, with difficulty.*

Aemilius, ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius,* a cavalry officer with Caesar.

aequāliter, adv., *uniformly.*

aequinoctium, ī, n., *equinox.*

aequĭtās, -tātis, f., *fairness, justice ;* w. **animi,** *contentment.*

aequō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make equal, equalize.*

aequus, a, um, *level ; fair, just ; even, equal ; favorable ; contented, calm, resigned.*

aerārius, a, um, *of copper, copper.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze ; copper ; money ;* **aes alienum,** *debt.*

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., *valuation, estimate.*

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *estimate, value, regard.*

aestīvus, a, um, *of summer.*

aestuārium, ī, n., *estuary, inlet.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat ; tide.*

aetās, -tātis, f., *age, years.*

aeternus, a, um, *perpetual, unending.*

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *bring ; bring forward, announce ; cause, bring about, produce.*

af-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *affect, visit, treat ;* translate freely in act. by *cause, produce, inflict ;* in pass. by *suffer, experience, enjoy, be afflicted with, be subjected to, be in.*

af-fīgō, ere, -fīxi, -fīxum, *fasten, attach.*

af-fingō, ere, -fīnxi, -fictum, *invent further,* or *in addition.*

affīnitās, -tātis, f., *relationship, marriage.*

affīrmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion.*

affīxus, a, um, from **affigo.**

afflīctō, āre, āvī, ātum, *buffet, toss about ; damage, wreck.*

afflīctus, a, um, from **affligo.**

af-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *shatter, damage, wreck ; throw down, bear down.*

affore, from **adsum.**

Āfricus, ī, m., *south-west wind.*

Agedincum, ī, n., a town in the north central part of Gaul.

ager, agrī, m., *field, land, country, territory.*

agger, eris, m., *mound ; heap of earth ; dam, rampart.*

ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *attack.*

aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attach, join.*

agitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss.*

agmen, -minis, n., *army on the march, line of march, column;* w. **primum,** *the van;* w. **novissimum,** *the rear.*

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive, carry off; bring up, advance; take; drive down; run; do, carry on, work, act; treat, plead, discuss, confer; hold; express.*

agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture, tilling the land, farming.*

alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*

alacritās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, ardor.*

ālāriī, ōrum, m. plur., *auxiliaries* (usually placed on the wings).

albus, a, um, *white.*

alcēs, is, f., *elk.*

Alesia, ae, f., a town in the central part of Gaul.

aliās, adv., *at another time;* **alias....alias,** *at one time....at another, now....now.*

aliēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *alienate, estrange; deprive of reason, frenzy, distract.*

aliēnus, a, um, *of another, of others, another's; unfavorable; strange, foreign; out of place.*

aliō, adv., *elsewhere.*

aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time.*

aliquandō, adv., *at some time; at last, at length.*

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat.*

aliquantus, a, um, *some;* neut. as subst., *some portion, a considerable part.*

aliquī, qua, quod, *some, any.*

aliquis, quid, *someone, something.*

aliquot, indeclinable, *several, some.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise, in a different manner, else.*

alius, a, ud, *other, another; different;* **alius....alius,** *one....another;* **alii....alii,** *some....others.*

allātus, a, um, from **affero.**

al-liciō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, *entice, allure, attract.*

Allobroges, um, m., *the Allobroges,* a tribe in the northern part of the Province.

alō, ere, aluī, altum, *nourish, support, feed; maintain, keep; strengthen, increase, foster.*

Alpēs, ium, f. plur., *the Alps.*

alter, era, erum, *the other; the second; another;* **alter....alter,** *the one....the other.*

alternus, a, um, *alternate.*

altitūd-ō, -inis, f., *height; depth; thickness.*

altus, a, um, *high, lofty; deep;* neut. as subst., **altum, ī,** n., *the deep, deep water, the sea.*

alūta, ae, f., *leather.*

ambactus, ī, m., *vassal, retainer.*

Ambarrī, ōrum, m., *the Ambarri,* a tribe north of the Province, on the Rhone.

Ambiānī, ōrum, m., *the Ambiani,* a tribe in the north of Gaul, on the Channel.

Ambibariī, ōrum, m., *the Ambibarii,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Ambiliātī, ōrum, m., *the Ambiliati,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Ambiorīx, īgis, m., a chief of the Eburones.

Ambivaretī, ōrum, m., *the Ambivareti,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul.

Ambivaritī, ōrum, m., *the Ambivariti,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

ambō, ae, ō, in plur. only, *both.*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*

āmentum, ī, n., *thong* (for throwing a javelin).

amfrāctus, see **anfractus.**

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship, alliance.*

amīcus, a, um, *friendly, devoted.*

amīcus, ī, m., *friend; ally.*

ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *lose; let slip.*

amor, ōris, m., *love, affection.*

amplē, adv., *largely, generously:* compar. **amplius,** *more, further, besides.*

amplificō, āre, āvī, ātum, *increase, heighten.*

amplitū-dō, -dinis, f., *size, extent; greatness.*

amplus, a, um, *large, great; magnificent, noble, high.*

an, conj., *or.*

Anartēs, ium, m., *the Anartes,* a tribe in Dacia, north of the Danube.

Ancalites, um, m., *the Ancalites,* a tribe in Britain.

an-ceps, -cipitis, *double, twofold.*

ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*

Andecumborius, ī, m., one of the Remi.

Andēs, ium, m., *the Andes,* a tribe near the mouth of the Loire.

ānfrāctus, ūs, m., *bend, circuit, winding.*

angulus, ī, m., *corner, angle.*

angustē, adv., *closely; sparingly.*

angustiae, ārum, f. plur., *narrow pass, defile; strait, trouble, difficulty.*

angustus, a, um, *narrow, small, contracted; steep;* neut. as subst., *critical position.*

anima, ae, f., *soul.*

animadver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *notice, observe; attend to, punish.*

anim-al, -ālis, n., *animal, living being.*

animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, heart, spirit, will; feelings; courage; character, disposition; consciousness; pride, ambition; pleasure, amusement.*

annōtinus, a, um, *of the year before.*

annus, ī, m., *year.*

annuus, a, um, *yearly, for a year.*

ānser, eris, m., *goose.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before;* adv., *before, formerly, previously; above.*

anteā, adv., *before, formerly, previously; hitherto.*

ante-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go before, go in advance, precede; outstrip, anticipate; surpass, excel.*

antecursor, ōris, m., *scout, vanguard, advance guard.*

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *prefer, consider superior.*

antenna, ae, f., *sail-yard.*

ante-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place before, regard of more importance than.*

antever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *prefer.*

antīquitus, adv., *from early times, in olden times, of old, long ago.*

antīquus, a, um, *ancient, old, remote.*

Antistius, ī, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Antonius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Ap., a contraction for **Appius.**

aper-iō, īre, uī, -tum, *open;* perf. part. pass. **apertus** as adj., *open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear; unchecked.*

apertē, adv., *openly.*

Apoll-ō, -inis, m., *Apollo,* a Roman god.

apparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare, make ready.*

appellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, name; address, call upon, accost.*

ap-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *bring in to shore, land, bring to land.*

ap-petō, ere, -petīvī, -petītum, *seek, aim at; approach.*

Appius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

applicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *apply;* with reflexive, *lean against.*

apportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring.*

approbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approve of, commend.*

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approach, draw near.*

appulsus, a, um, from **appello, ere.**

Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April.*

aptus, a, um, *suited, suitable, apt.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *at, with, among, near, in the presence of; in one's opinion.*

aqua, ae, f., *water.*

aquātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting water.*

aquila, ae, f., *eagle,* the ensign of a Roman legion.

Aquilēia, ae, f., a Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic.

aquilifer, erī, m., *eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.*

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania,* the southwestern part of Gaul, between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.

Aquītānus, ī, m., *an Aquitanian;* in plur., *the Aquitani,* a people akin to the Spaniards rather than to the Gauls, dwelling in the southwestern part of Gaul.

Ar-ar, -aris, m., *the Arar,* a river flowing south into the Rhone.

arbiter, trī, m., *arbitrator.*

arbitrium, ī, n., *pleasure, will, judgment.*

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *think, consider, judge.*

arbor, oris, f., *tree.*

arcess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *summon, send for; invite, call in,*

ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum, *burn, be on fire, be inflamed.*

Arduenna, ae, f., a forest in the north-east of Gaul.

arduus, a, um, *difficult; steep.*

Arecomicī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Arecomici,* a tribe in the Province near the Pyrenees.

Aremoricus, a, um, *Armorican;* Aremorica was a collective name given to many tribes in the northwest of Gaul.

argentum, ī, n., *silver.*

argilla, ae, f., *clay.*

āridus, a, um, *dry;* neut. as subst., *dry land.*

ari-ēs, -etis, m., *ram, battering-ram; buttress.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., a chief of the Germans.

Aristius, ī, m., *Marcus Aristius,* a military tribune with Caesar.

arma, ōrum, n. plur., *arms; tackling.*

armāmenta, ōrum, n. plur., *tackling, rigging.*

armātūra, ae, f., *armor, equipment.*

armō, āre, āvī, ātum, *arm, equip;* perf. part. in plur. as subst., *armed men.*

Armoricus, a, um, see **Aremoricus.**

Arpinēius, ī, m., *Caius Arpineius,* a Roman knight with Caesar.

ar-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *seize, lay hold of, secure.*

arroganter, adv., *with presumption, insolently.*

arrogantia, ae, f., *presumption, arrogance, insolence.*

ars, artis, f., *art.*

artē, adv., *closely, tightly, compactly.*

articulus, ī, m., *joint.*

artificium, ī, n., *handicraft; accomplishment, skill; artifice, craft.*

artus, a, um, *dense, thick.*

Arvernus, ī, m., *an Arvernian;* in plur., *the Arverni,* a tribe south of the centre of Gaul.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold.*

a-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *climb, ascend, mount.*

ascēnsus, ūs, m., *ascent, ascending; means of ascent.*

aspectus, ūs, m., *appearance, sight.*

asper, era, erum, *severe, fierce, violent.*

assiduus, a, um, *constant, continued, incessant.*

assistō, ere, astitī, *stand near, appear.*

assuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *accustom, train.*

assuē-scō, ere, -vī, -tum, *become accustomed.*

at, conj., *but ; yet, at least.*

atque, conj., *and, and further ;* in comparisons, *than, as.*

Atre-bas, -batis, m., *an Atrebatian ;* in plur., *the Atrebates,* a tribe in the northern part of Gaul, near the straits of Dover.

Atrius, ī, m., *Quintus Atrius,* an officer of Caesar's.

at-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, *weave on, weave.*

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *touch, border on ; reach.*

attrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *assign, give.*

attulī, from **affero.**

auctor, ōris, m., *adviser, approver, advocate, instigator.*

auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., *influence, weight, prestige ; power.*

auctus, a, um, part. of **augeo,** *increased, advanced, strengthened.*

audācia, ae, f., *boldness.*

audācter, adv., *boldly, confidently, fearlessly.*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture, attempt.*

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear, listen to, hear of ;* pres. part., **audiēns, -entis,** *obedient.*

audītiō, -ōnis, f., *hearsay, rumor.*

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, *increase, strengthen, promote.*

Aulercī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Aulerci,* a race in the north-west of Gaul, divided into four tribes, the *Eburovices, Brannovices, Diablintes* and *Cenomani.*

Aulus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

aureus, a, um, *of gold, golden.*

aurīga, ae, m., *charioteer.*

auris, is, f., *ear.*

Aurunculēius, ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Auscī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ausci,* a tribe near the Pyrenees.

ausus, a, um, from **audeo.**

aut, conj., *or, or else ;* repeated, *either....or.*

autem, conj., *but, whereas, while ; moreover, now.*

autumnus, ī, m., *autumn.*

auxī, from **augeo.**

auxiliāris, e, *auxiliary ;* plur. as subst., *the auxiliaries.*

auxilior, ārī, ātus sum, *give aid, help, assist.*

auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help, assistance ; resource, support ;* in plur., *auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

Avaricēnsis, e, *of Avaricum.*

Avaricum, ī, n., a town in central Gaul, near the Loire.

avāritia, ae, f., *greed, covetousness.*

ā-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry off.*

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn away, turn* or *put aside ; alienate.*

avis, is, f., *bird.*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, ae, f., a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.

B.

Bacēnis, is, f., a forest in Germany.

Baculus, ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, is, m., *Balearic, from the Balearic islands.*

balteus, ī, m., *belt, sword-belt.*

Balventius, ī, m., *Titus Balventius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

barbarus, a, um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian ;* m. as subst., **barbarus, ī,** m., *a barbarian.*

Basilus, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* an officer with Caesar.

Batavī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Batavians,* a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.

Belgae, ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians,* a people occupying the north-east of Gaul, and largely of German origin.

Belgium, ī, n., *Belgium,* the country of the *Belgae.*

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*

bellicus, a, um, *of war, in war.*

bellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make war, fight.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bellovaci,* a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.

bellum, ī, n., *war.*

bene, adv., (**melius, optimē**), *well, successfully.*

beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, service, favor.*

benevolentia, ae, f., *good will; kindness.*

Bibracte, is, n., the chief town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

Bibrax, -actis, f., a town of the Remi, in the northern part of Gaul.

Bibrocī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bibroci,* a tribe of Britain.

biduum, ī, n., *two days, space of two days.*

biennium, ī, n., *two years.*

Bigerriōnes, um, m. plur., *the Bigerriones,* a tribe near the Pyrenees.

bīnī, ae, a, *two each; two by two, two.*

bipartītō, adv., *in two divisions.*

bipedālis, e, *two feet (thick).*

bipertītō, see **bipartito.**

bis, adv., *twice.*

Biturīges, um, m. plur., *the Bituriges,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul, on the Loire.

Boduōgnātus, ī, m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Boii, the Boians,* a nation originally living in Germany on the Danube.

bonitās, -tātis, f., *goodness, excellence, fertility.*

bonus, a, um (melior, optimus), *good;* n. as subst., **bonum, ī,** *advantage;* in plur., *goods, property*

bōs, bovis, m., *ox.*

bracchium, ī, n., *arm.*

Brannovīces, um, m. plur., *the Brannovices,* a branch of the *Aulerci,* in the north-west of Gaul.

Brannoviī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Brannovii,* a tribe in Gaul.

Bratuspantium, ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci, in the north of Gaul.

brevis, e, *short;* as adv., **brevī,** *in a short time.*

brevitās, -tātis, f., *shortness; short, stature.*

breviter, adv., *briefly.*

Britannī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons.*

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

Britannicus, a, um, *of Britain, of* or *with the Britons.*

brūma, ae, f., *the winter solstice.*

Brūtus, ī, m., *Decimus Brutus,* a lieutenant with Caesar.

C.

C., an abbreviation of **Gaius** (or **Caius**).

Cabillōnum, ī, n., a town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

Cabūrus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Caburus,* a Romanized Gaul.

cacūmen, -minis, n., *top, point.*

cadāver, -eris, n., *dead body, corpse.*

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, be slain.*

Cadurcus, ī, m., *one of the Cadurci;* in plur., *the Cadurci,* a tribe in Aquitania.

caedēs, is, m., *slaughter, massacre. murder.*

caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesum, *cut down, fell.*

caelestis, e, *heavenly;* m. plur. as subst., *the gods.*

caerimōnia, ae, f., *ceremony, sacred rite.*

Caeroesī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Caeroesi*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

caeruleus, a, um. *blue, dark blue.*

Caesar, aris. m., *Caius Julius Caesar*, a Roman general; also *Lucius Caesar*, a lieutenant with Caesar.

Caius, ī, m., see **Gaius.**

calamitās, -tātis, f., *disaster, defeat, loss.*

Calendae, ārum, f. plur., *the Calends*, the first day of each month.

Caletēs, um, and **Caletī, ōrum,** m. plur., *the Caletes* or *Caleti*, a tribe at the mouth of the Seine.

callidus, a, um, *shrewd, cunning.*

cālō, ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp-follower.*

campester, tris, tre. *of* or *on the plain; level.*

campus, ī, m., *field, plain.*

Camulogenus, ī, m., a chief of the Aulerci.

Canīnius, ī, m., *Caius Caninius Rebilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

canō, ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing, sound.*

Cantabrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cantabrians*, a tribe in the north of Spain.

Cantium, ī, n., *Kent*, in the south-east of England.

caper, prī, m., *goat.*

capillus, ī, m., *hair.*

capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, *take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach; captivate, overcome; take up, choose, adopt.*

capra, ae, f., *she-goat.*

captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*

captus, ūs, m., *capacity, nature.*

cap-ut, -itis, n., *head; person; life; mouth* (of a river).

careō, ēre, uī, *be without, go without.*

carina, ae, f., *keel.*

Carnutēs, um, m. plur., *the Carnutes*, a tribe in central Gaul on the Loire.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.*

car-pō, ere, -psī, -ptum, *criticise, blame.*

carrus, ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

cārus, a, um, *dear, valuable.*

Carvilius, ī, m , a king ruling in Kent.

casa, ae, f., *hut.*

cāseus, ī, m., *cheese.*

Cassī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cassi*, a tribe in Britain.

Cassiānus, a, um, *of* or *with Cassius.*

cassis, -idis, m., *helmet.*

Cassius, ī, m., *Lucius Cassius*, a Roman general, consul in B.C. 107.

Cassivellaunus, ī, m., a British chief.

castellum, ī, n., *fort, stronghold.*

Casticus, ī, m.. a chief of the Sequani.

castra, ōrum, n. plur., *camp, encampment.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *happening, occurrence; accident, chance; fate, disaster; emergency.*

Catamantaloedes, is, m., a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Caturīges, um, m. plur., *the Caturiges*, a tribe in the Province, near the Alps.

Catuvolcus, ī, m., a chief of the Eburones.

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason; case; pretext, excuse: condition;* in abl. sing., *for the sake of, for the purpose of.*

cautē, adv., *cautiously, with caution.*

cautēs, is, m., *sharp rock, reef.*

Cavarillus, ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.

Cavarīnus, ī, m., king of the Senones.

caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard; give security.*

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *retreat, give way, retire; yield; withdraw.*

celer, eris, ere, *swift, speedy, sudden.*

celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness, speed, rapidity.*

celeriter, adv., (**celerius, celerrimē**), *swiftly, quickly, rapidly.*

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conceal, hide.*

Celtae, ārum, m. plur., *the Celts*, or Gauls; one of the three great nations inhabiting Gaul.

Celtillus, ī, m., a chief of the Arverni.

Cēnabēnsis, is, m., *a man of Cenabum*; in plur., *the people of Cenabum.*

Cēnabum, ī, n., a town of central Gaul, on the Loire.

Cēnimāgnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cenimagni*, a tribe of Britain.

Cenomānī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cenomani*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

cēns-eō, ēre, -uī, -um, *be of opinion, think; hold, decree; advise.*

cēnsus, ūs, m., *census, enumeration.*

centum, *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion* (an officer in the Roman army).

cēpī, from **capio.**

cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *perceive, see, make out.*

certāmen, -minis, n., *contest; engagement.*

certē, adv., *certainly, with certainty; at least.*

certus, a, um, *certain, fixed, specified, sure, definite; trustworthy;* **certiorem facere,** *to inform.*

cervus, ī, m., *stag; fork-shaped branch.*

cēs-pes, -pitis, m., *sod, turf.*

cēterī, ae, a, *the others, the rest.*

Ceutrones, um, m. plur., *the Ceutrones*, 1. a tribe in the Alps; 2. a tribe of the Belgae.

Cevenna, ae, f., *the Cevennes*, a mountain range in the south-east of Gaul, west of the Rhone.

Chēruscī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cherusci*, a German tribe.

cibārius, a, um, *of food;* n. plur. as subst., *food, provisions.*

cibus, ī, m. *food.*

Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, and a brother of the orator.

Cimberius, ī, m., a chief of the Suebi.

Cimbrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cimbri*, a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.

Cingetorix, -īgis, m., 1. a chief of the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.

cin-gō, ere, -xī, -ctum, *surround, encircle: man.*

cippus, ī, m., *post, stake, palisade.*

circinus, ī, m., *pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *about.*

circuitus, a, um, perf. part. of **circumeo.**

circuitus, ūs, m., *circumference, circuit; detour, circuitous route.*

circum, prep. w. acc., *around, about, near.*

circum-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut around, cut;* perf. part. pass., *isolated, steep.*

circumclū-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, *encircle, line, put a rim around.*

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *put around; surround, encircle.*

circum-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead around; draw around.*

circum-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum or **circuitum,** *go around, surround; make the rounds of, visit.*

circum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour around*, hence, in pass., *rush in from all sides, crowd around; surround.*

circum-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *place around.*

circum-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send around.*

circummūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fortify all round, protect.*

circum-plector, ī, -plexus sum, *surround ; embrace, include.*

circum-sistō, ere, -stetī, *surround, hem in, crowd around ; rally around.*

circum-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look about for, look carefully at ; consider, examine carefully.*

circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, *surround.*

circumvāllō, āre, āvī, ātum, *surround with walls, invest, blockade.*

circum-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry around ;* in pass., *ride around.*

circum-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround, get round, outflank ; outwit, betray, deceive, defraud.*

cis, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

Cisalpīnus, a, um, *Cisalpine, on this* (i.e. *the Italian*) *side of the Alps.*

Cisrhēnānus, a, um, *on this* (i.e. *the western*) *side of the Rhine.*

Cita, ae, m., *Caius Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight.

citerior, ius, (comparative) *hither, nearer.*

citō, adv., (**citius, citissimē**), *quickly.*

citō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten ;* perf. part., **citātus,** as adj., *swift.*

citrā, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

citrō, adv., *hither.*

cīvis, is, m., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state ; citizenship.*

clam, adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out, keep shouting.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, shouting, cry.*

clandestīnus, a, um, *secret.*

clārus, a, um, *loud, distinct.*

classis, is, f., *fleet.*

Claudius, ī, m., *Appius Claudius*, consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, *close ;* w. **agmen,** *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, ī, m., *nail.*

clēmentia, ae, f., *mercifulness, moderation, forbearance.*

cliēns, -entis, m., *dependant, retainer, vassal.*

clientēla, ae, f., *dependency, vassalage ; protection ;* in plur., *dependants.*

clīvus, ī, m., *slope, ascent.*

Clōdius, ī, m., *Publius Clodius*, a bitter partisan of Caesar.

Cn., an abbrevation for **Gnaeus.**

coacervō, āre, āvī, ātum, *heap up, crowd together.*

coāctus, a, um, from **cogo.**

coāctus, ūs, m., *compulsion.*

coagmentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten together.*

Cocosātes, um, m. plur., *the Cocosates*, a tribe of Aquitania.

coēgī, from **cogo.**

co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *buy up.*

co-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *unite, join.*

coepī, isse, coeptus sum, *began, have begun.*

coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain, check.*

cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consider, think, reflect, have thoughts ; take thought, plan.*

cōgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *kinship ; kinsmen, clan, family connections.*

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *perceive, learn, find out, ascertain, become acquainted with ; inquire into ;* in perf. tenses, *know, be aware.*

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect, gather, get together ; compel, force, be urgent.*

co-hors, -hortis, f., *a cohort,* one tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., *encouraging, address.*

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, address, urge.*

coīre, from **coeo.**

collātus, a, um, from **confero.**

collaudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, extol, highly commend.*

colligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, pin together.*

col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *gather, collect ; acquire :* with **se,** *collect one's self, recover, rally.*

collis, is, m., *hill.*

collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *place, station ; arrange, stow ; settle ; give in marriage.*

colloquium, ī, n., *conversation, interview, conference.*

col-loquor, ī, -locūtus sum, *converse, confer, have an interview.*

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, *till, cultivate ; worship.*

colōnia, ae, f., *colony, settlement.*

color, ōris, m., *color.*

com-būrō, ere, -bussī, -būstum, *burn up.*

com-es, -itis, m., *companion, attendant.*

comitia, -ōrum, n. plur., *comitia, election.*

comitor, ārī, ātus sum, *accompany.*

commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies, provisions ; passage, trip.*

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mention, speak of, relate.*

commendō, āre, āvī, ātum, *commend.*

commeō, āre, āvī, ātum, *visit, resort, go to and fro.*

comminus, adv., *hand to hand, in close combat.*

commissūra, ae, f., *juncture, joining.*

com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *join ;* w. **proelium,** *begin ; entrust, put trust in ; allow, commit, do ; leave it possible, allow to come about.*

Commius, ī, m., a king of the Atrebates.

commodē, adv., *easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.*

commodus, a, um, *fitting, suitable, advantageous, favorable ;* neut. as subst., **commodum, ī,** *advantage, interest, convenience, blessing.*

commone-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *remind.*

commoror, ārī, ātus sum, *stay, delay, linger.*

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move ; alarm, disturb ; influence, impress.*

commūnicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *communicate, share, consult, impart ; join, add.*

commūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *strongly fortify, secure ; build.*

commūnis, e, *common, general, joint, concerted.*

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change ; turn.*

commūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, *change, exchange.*

comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *compare ; prepare, provide, procure raise, get.*

com-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive, drive in, gather.*

compendium, ī, n., *gain, profit.*

com-periō, īre, -perī, -pertum, *learn, find out, discover ;* perf. part. as adj., *certain.*

com-plector, ī, -plexus sum, *embrace ; include, enclose.*

compl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill, fill up ; man.*

complūrēs, a, *several, many, a great many.*

comportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring in, collect.*

compre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hensum, *seize, grasp, catch, capture ; take.*

comprobō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approve, justify, confirm.*

compulsus, a, um, from **compello.**

cōnātum, ī, n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt.*

con-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *grant, allow, permit; yield, give in.*

concertō, āre, āvī, ātum, *contend, fight.*

concessus, ūs, m., *permission.*

con-cidō, ere, -cidī, *fall, fall down.*

con-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down, slay;* perf. part. as adj., *cut up, broken.*

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *win over; gain, obtain.*

concilium, ī, n., *meeting, assembly, council.*

concīsus, a, um, from **concīdo.**

concitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *arouse, stir up, call out.*

conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out, call out, shout.*

con-clūdō, ēre, -clūsī, -clūsum, *shut up, enclose.*

Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

concrep-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *clash, make a clashing noise.*

con-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *run together, rally, rush up, hasten, flock.*

concursō, āre, āvī, ātum, *run to and fro.*

concursus, ūs, m., *running together, rally, crowd; rush, onset, charge; collision.*

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare guilty.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *terms, agreement, condition; state.*

condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *give up, forgive for the sake of.*

Condrūsī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Condrusi,* a tribe in the northeast of Gaul.

con-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *gather, assemble: hire.*

cōn-ferciō, īre, -fersī, -fertum, *pack closely;* perf. part. **cōnfertus, a, um,** *crowded, in close array, in close order.*

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, *gather, collect, bring in, convey;* with **se,** *betake one's self; compare; put off, postpone; lay the blame on, ascribe.*

cōnfertus, a, um, from **confercio.**

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; make out, work up; exhaust, wear out.*

cōn-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *trust, rely on, have confidence.*

cōn-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fasten.*

cōnfīnis, e, *adjacent, neighboring.*

cōnfīnium, ī, n., *neighborhood, borders.*

cōn-fīō, -fierī, irregular pass. of **conficio.**

cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion.*

cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strengthen; establish, fix; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure, confirm, rouse.*

cōnfīsus, a, um, from **confido.**

cōn-fiteor, ērī, -fessus sum, *confess, acknowledge.*

cōnfīxus, a, um, from **configo.**

cōnflagrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *be on fire, be in flames.*

cōnflīctō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass.*

cōnflīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *contend, engage, fight.*

cōnfluēns, entis, m., *confluence, juncture.*

cōn-fluō, ere, -flūxī, *gather, flock.*

cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, *flee for refuge, flee.*

cōn-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *mix, gather together.*

con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum. *meet; engage, contend, fight.*

congressus, ūs, m., *engagement, conflict.*

conjectūra, ae, f., *conjecture, guess.*

con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *hurl, cast, throw; drive; put, place;* w. **se,** *rush.*

conjūnctim, adv., *jointly, together.*

con-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *join, connect, unite.*

con-jūnx, -jugis, m. and f., *husband; wife.*

conjūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy, combination, league.*

conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.*

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.*

conqui-ēscō, ere, -ēvī, -ētum, *rest.*

con-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *search for, hunt up, collect.*

cōnsanguineus, ī, m., *kinsman.*

cōn-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *ascend, mount; embark on, go on board.*

cōnscientia, ae, f., *consciousness.*

cōn-scīscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *resolve on;* w. **sibi mortem,** *commit suicide.*

cōnscius, a, um, *conscious.*

cōn-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *write; enlist, enroll, levy.*

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consecrate.*

cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

cōnsecūtus, a, um, from **consequor.**

cōnsēdī, from **consido.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *unanimity.*

cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., *agreement, consent.*

cōn-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *agree, combine, conspire.*

cōn-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.*

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum, *preserve, save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.*

Cōnsidius, ī, m., *Publius Considius,* one of Caesar's soldiers.

cōn-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *encamp, take up a position; settle; hold a session.*

cōnsilium, ī, n., *deliberation, consultation; plan, design, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice; council.*

cōnsimilis, e, *very similar, like.*

cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī, *take up position, stand, get a footing; halt, stop, make a stand; ground; settle; consist of, depend on.*

cōnsobrīnus, ī, m., *cousin.*

cōnsōlor, ārī, ātus sum, *console.*

cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view, presence.*

cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, spectum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

cōnspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

cōnspīrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *combine, conspire.*

cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly; firmly, steadily.*

cōnstantia, ae, f., *firmness, steadfastness, constancy.*

cōnsternō, āre, āvī, ātum, *dismay, impress.*

cōn-sternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, *cover, floor.*

cōnstīpō, āre, āvī, ātum, *crowd, press.*

cōnstitī, from **consisto.**

cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.*

cōn-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, *cost; depend on; remain, be unchanged;* impersonal use, *it is certain, agreed, established, evident.*

cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed ;* in perf. tenses, *be accustomed.*

cōnsuētū-dō, -dinis, f., *custom, habit.*

cōn-sul, -sulis, m., *consul,* the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.

cōnsulātus, ūs, m., *consulship.*

cōnsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *consult, discuss, deliberate ; provide for, take thought for, have regard for.*

cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deliberate, take counsel.*

cōnsultō, adv., *designedly, on purpose.*

cōnsultum, ī, n., *decree.*

cōn-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *spend ; consume, exhaust.*

cōn-surgō, ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *rise up.*

contabulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *build up (by stories).*

contāgiō, -ōnis, f., *contact, contagion.*

contāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *contaminate, stain.*

con-tegō, ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover up.*

con-temnō, ere, -tempsī, temptum, *despise.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, f., *contempt.*

contemptus, ūs, m., *scorn ; object of contempt.*

conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *hasten, make one's way, push on ; strive, exert one's self ; struggle, fight, contend ; maintain, insist.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *struggle, contest.*

contentus, a, um, *content, satisfied.*

contestor, ārī, ātus sum, *call upon, invoke.*

contex-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *weave, join, construct.*

contigī, from **contingo.**

continēns, entis, f., *the continent, mainland.*

continenter, adv., *continually, uninterruptedly, without stopping.*

continentia, ae, f., *self-control, self-restraint.*

con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold together ; contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold ; bound, surround, occupy ;* pres. part. as adj., **continēns, -entis,** *continual, incessant, uninterrupted, unbroken, continuous.*

con-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *touch, reach, extend to ; happen, fall to the lot of.*

continuātiō, -ōnis, f., *continuance, succession.*

continuō, adv., *at once, immediately.*

continuus, a, um, *successive, unbroken, continuous.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, f., *assembly, meeting.*

cōntiōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *address.*

contrā, 1. adv., *against ; otherwise ;* **contra atque,** *contrary to what ;* 2. prep. w. acc., *opposite, over against ; against.*

con-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *make smaller, reduce ; collect, gather together.*

contrārius, a, um, *opposite ;* **ex contrario,** *on the contrary.*

contrōversia, ae, f., *quarrel, dispute, feud.*

contumēlia, ae, f., *disgrace, insult, affront ; buffetting, violence.*

conval-ēscō, ere, -uī, *recover, regain health.*

convallis, is, f., *(enclosed) valley.*

con-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *gather, bring in.*

con-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come together, meet, assemble, gather ; come, arrive ; be agreed upon ; be fitting.*

conventus, ūs, m., *meeting, assembly ; assizes.*

conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn; turn about ; change, alter ;* w. **signa,** *wheel about.*

Convictolitāvis, is, m., an Aeduan of high rank.

con-vincō, ere, -vīcī, -victum, *prove, bring home.*

convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call together, call, summon.*

co-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, *arise, spring up, break out.*

cōpia, ae, f., *supply, abundance, quantity; resources, wealth;* in plur., *forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, a, um, *well-supplied, rich.*

cōpula, ae, f., *grappling hook.*

cor, cordis, n., *heart;* **cordi esse,** *be dear, be cherished.*

cōram, adv., *in person, face to face.*

corium, ī, n., *skin, hide.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).

corōna, ae, f., *garland; circle;* **sub corona,** *at auction.*

corp-us, -oris, n., *body, person; dead body, corpse; system.*

cor-rumpō. ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *destroy.*

cort-ex, -icis, m., *bark.*

Cōrus, ī, m., *the north-west wind.*

cotīdiānus, a, um, *daily; regular, usual.*

cotīdiē, adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, ae, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Cotus, ī, m., an Aeduan of high rank.

crassitū-dō, -dinis, f., *thickness.*

Crassus, ī, m., 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* a Roman general, consul 55 B.C.; 2. his son, *Marcus Crassus,* quaestor in Caesar's army; 3. a younger son, *Publius Crassus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

crātēs, is, f., *hurdle, wickerwork.*

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, numerous, crowded.*

crēbrō, adv., *frequently, at short intervals.*

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *believe; trust.*

cremō, āre, āvī, ātum, *burn.*

creō, āre, āvī, ātum, *appoint, elect.*

Crēs, Crētis, m., *a Cretan.*

crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow, become powerful, rise.*

Critōgnātus, ī, m., a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, ūs, m., *torture, cruelty.*

crūdēlitās, -tātis, f., *cruelty.*

crudēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*

cubīle, is, n., *bed, resting place.*

culmen, -minis, n., *height, summit.*

culpa, ae, f., *blame, fault.*

cultus, ūs, m., *refinement, civilization, style of life; care, habit.*

cum, prep. w. abl., *with, together with.*

cum, conj., *when, whenever, while; as, since; although;* **cum primum,** *as soon as;* **cum....tum,** *both....and, not only....but also.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, f., *hesitation, delay.*

cunctor, ārī, ātus sum, *hesitate, delay.*

cūnctus, a, um, *all, all together.*

cuneātim, adv., *in the form of a wedge, in a compact mass.*

cuneus, ī, m., *wedge.*

cunīculus, ī, m., *burrow; mine.*

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, eager desire.*

cupidus, a, um, *eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.*

cup-iō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *be eager; be well disposed.*

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūrā, ae, f., *care;* **curae esse,** *be one's care, be carefully attended to.*

Curiosolites, um, m., *the Curiosolites,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, take care;* with gerundive, *cause to be (done), have (done).*

currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage.*

custōdia, ae, f., *guard, garrison.*

custōdiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *guard.*

cus-tōs, -tōdis, m., *guard; watch, spy.*

D.

D., an abbreviation for **Decimus.**

Dācī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Dacians,* a tribe of central Europe, living north of the Danube.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn, find guilty;* perf. part. as subst., **damnātus, ī,** m., *criminal, outlaw.*

damnum, ī, n., *loss.*

Dānuvius, ī, m., *the Danube.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of.*

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, *owe; ought, should, cannot help;* in pass., *be due.*

dē-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *withdraw, depart; keep aloof, shun; die.*

decem, *ten.*

dēceptus, a, um, from **decipio.**

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decide, determine; decree, order.*

dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, fight a decisive battle, decide the issue.*

dēcessī, from **decedo.**

dēcessus, ūs, m., *departure; ebb.*

Decetia, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, on the Loire.

dē-cidō, ere, -cidī, *fall.*

decimus, a, um, *tenth.*

Decimus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

dē-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *deceive.*

dēclārō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare, proclaim.*

dēclīvis, e, *sloping;* neut. as subst., *slope.*

dēclīvitās, -tātis, f., *downward slope.*

dēcrētum, ī, n., *decree, decision.*

dēcrētus, a, um, from **decerno.**

dēcrēvī, from **decerno.**

decumānus, a, um, w. **porta,** *the rear gate.*

decuriō, -ōnis, m., *decurion,* a cavalry officer.

dē-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *run down.*

dēdec-us, -oris, n., *disgrace.*

dedī, from **do.**

dēdidī, from **dedo.**

dēditicius, a, um, *surrendered;* m. as subst., *one who has surrendered, prisoner, subject.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender, submission, capitulation.*

dē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *surrender, give up; devote.*

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring; influence; launch; lead (home), marry.*

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, f., *exhaustion.*

dēfatīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weary, exhaust, wear out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f., *revolt.*

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *repel; defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defence, protection.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry, bring, convey;* in pass., *drift, fall, be turned aside; report; give, confer.*

dēfessus, a, um, *worn out, weary, exhausted.*

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, give out, be wanting; revolt, forsake.*

dē-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fix, set, fasten, plant firmly.*

dēfīniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fix, assign.*

dē-fluō, ere, -flūxī, -fluxum, *flow off, divide.*

dēfore, fut. infin. of **desum.**

dēfōrmis, e, *ill-shaped, unsightly, unattractive.*

dē-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *avoid, shun.*

deinceps, adv., *in turn, after that.*

deinde, adv., *then, thereupon, next.*

dējectus, ūs, m., *slope, abrupt side.*

dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down, cast down; carry down, overthrow; drive off, dislodge; disappoint.*

dēlātus, a, um, from **defero.**

dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *delight;* in pass., *take pleasure in.*

dēlēctus, ūs, m., *levy.*

dēlēctus, a, um, and **dēlēgī** from **deligo, ere.**

dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy, overthrow; wipe out.*

dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, consider, deliberate.*

dēlibrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip of bark, peel.*

dēlīctum, ī, n., *offence, fault.*

dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, tie, moor.*

dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick out, choose, select.*

dēlit-ēscō, ere, -uī, *hide, lurk, lie concealed.*

dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*

dē-metō, ere, -messuī, -messum, *cut, reap.*

dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *depart, move away, abandon.*

dēmin-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *diminish, lessen, take away, detract, abate.*

dē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let down, lower;* w. **se,** *descend, be disheartened;* perf. part., **dēmissus,** *bowed, drooping, low-lying.*

dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, *take down.*

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, explain, state, mention.*

dēmoror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, retard.*

dēmum, adv., *at last, at length.*

dēnegō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, deny.*

dēnī, ae, a, *ten each, in groups of ten.*

dēnique, adv., *at length, finally; at least.*

dēnsus, a, um, *dense, close, thick.*

dēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, give notice, warn, threaten.*

dē-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive off,* or *away, dislodge.*

dēper-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *lose, forfeit.*

dēper-eō, -īre, -iī, *perish, be lost.*

dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside, give up; deposit, store, place.*

dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum, *lay waste, ravage.*

dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*

dē-poscō, ere, -poposcī, *demand, call for.*

dēpositus, a, um, from **depono.**

dēprecātor, -tōris, m., *intercessor, advocate.*

dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, *beg off, avert by prayer, petition against, request (not); pray for mercy.*

dēpre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *catch, seize, surprise, come upon.*

dēpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight desperately.*

dēpulsus, a, um, from **depello.**

dērīvō, āre, āvī, ātum, *divert, draw.*

dērogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *withdraw, take away.*

dē-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *descend, go down; resort, have recourse, yield.*

dēsec-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, *cut off.*

dēser-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *desert, abandon, forsake;* perf. part. as adj., *solitary, lonely.*

dēsertor, -tōris, m., *deserter.*

dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātum, *desire, wish for; lose, miss.*

dēsidia, ae, f., *idleness, indolence.*

dēsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *indicate, point at, aim at.*

dē-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap down.*

dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stop, cease; abandon, give up, desist from.*

dēspectus, a, um, from **despicio.**

dēspectus, ūs, m., *view down, prospect* (from a height); *height.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f., *despair.*

dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *give up hope, despair;* perf. part. as adj., *desperate.*

dē-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look down; look down upon, despise.*

dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip, deprive.*

dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, make fast; appoint, set.*

dēstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *abandon, desert.*

dē-stringō, ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *draw.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, *be lacking, be missing, be wanting, fail; neglect.*

dēsuper, adv., *from above.*

dēterior, ius, (comparative), *inferior, less valuable.*

dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *deter, discourage, prevent.*

dētestor, ārī, ātus sum, *curse, denounce.*

dē-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hinder; delay.*

dētrāctō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid, escape.*

dē-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *take from, withdraw, remove; snatch from.*

dētrectō, āre, see **detracto.**

dētrīmentōsus, a, um, *detrimental, disadvantageous, hurtful.*

dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, injury, damage; defeat.*

dē-trūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *strip off, remove.*

dētulī, from **defero.**

dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off, dislodge.*

de-ūrō, ere, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn down.*

deus, ī, m., *god.*

dē-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *bring, convey.*

dē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come (down).*

dēvexus, a, um, *sloping, descending;* neut. as subst., *descent, incline.*

dē-vincō, ere, -vīcī, -victum, *subdue, conquer (completely).*

dēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call; bring.*

dē-voveō, ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *vow, consecrate, devote;* perf. part. as subst., *devoted follower.*

dexter, tra, trum, *right, on the right;* fem. **dextra,** as subst., (sc. **manus**), *the right hand.*

dī, or **diī,** from **deus.**

Diablintes, um, m., *the Diablintes,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

diciō, -ōnis, f., *sway, rule, power.*

dicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consecrate, adjudge; give over.*

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, state, mention; appoint, name; plead: adjudge, administer.*

dictiō, -ōnis, f., *pleading.*

dictum, ī, n., *word, order, command.*

dī-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *divide, separate.*

diēs, ēī, m. (rarely f.), *day; time;* **in dies,** *daily.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *differ, be different; spread, scatter; put off, postpone.*

difficilis, e, *difficult.*

difficultās, -tātis, f., *difficulty.*

dif-fīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *distrust, lack confidence, despair.*

dif-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *spread out ; extend.*

digitus, ī, m., *finger.*

dīgnitās, -tātis, f., *worth, esteem ; reputation, rank, standing ; dignity, honor.*

dīgnus, a, um, *worthy, worth.*

dījūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *decide.*

dīlēctus, a, um, from **diligo.**

dīligenter, adv., *carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously.*

dīligentia, ae, f., *carefulness, care, pains, zeal, attention.*

dī-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *love.*

dī-mētior, īrī, -mēnsus sum, *measure out, proportion.*

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, f., *struggle, contest.*

dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, struggle, contend, engage.*

dīmidius, a, um, *half ;* neut. as subst., *half.*

dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send out, despatch ; dismiss, send away ; lose, let slip ; abandon, give up.*

dīrēctē, adv., *straight, exactly.*

dī-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *form* (in straight line), *arrange ;* perf. part. as adj., **dīrēctus, a, um,** *straight.*

dīr-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *break up.*

dī-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *plunder, pillage, seize.*

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Pluto,* the god of the lower world.

dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go away, withdraw, depart ;* with **ab,** *leave ; forsake, abandon ; swerve from.*

disceptātor, -tōris, m., *judge, umpire.*

dis-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *distinguish.*

discessus, ūs, m., *departure, withdrawal.*

disciplīna, ae, f., *training, instruction, learning, system.*

dis-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *keep apart, separate.*

discō, ere, didicī, *learn, be instructed.*

discrīmen, -minis, n., *crisis, danger, critical condition.*

dis-cutiō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, *disperse, remove.*

dis-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *break up, scatter ; tear off.*

dis-pār, -paris, *unequal ; inferior.*

disparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *separate.*

di-spergō, ere, -spersī, -spersum, *scatter, disperse.*

dis-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array.*

disputātiō, -ōnis, f., *discussion, debate.*

disputō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, engage in discussion.*

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *dissension, disagreement, dispute, strife.*

dis-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *dissent, differ, disagree.*

dis-serō, ere, -sēvī, -situm, *plant here and there, scatter about.*

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conceal.*

dissipō, āre, āvī, ātum, *scatter, disperse, rout.*

dis-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *dissuade, oppose.*

dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *keep apart, separate ; keep at a distance.*

di-stō, -stāre, *be apart, stand apart, be distant.*

dis-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *tear apart, wrench asunder.*

distrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *assign, allot, distribute, divide.*

distulī, from **differo.**

dītissimus, superlative of **dives.**

diū, adv., (**diūtius, diūtissimē**), *long, for a long time;* **quam diu,** *as long as.*

diurnus, a, um, *by day, during the day.*

diūtinus, a, um, *long, long-continued.*

diūturnitās, -tātis, f., *length, long duration.*

diūturnus, a, um, *long, prolonged.*

dīver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *separate;* perf. part. as adj., **dīversus, a, um,** *distant, at a distance, remote; facing in a different direction; different; separate, apart.*

dīv-es, -itis, *rich.*

Divicō, -ōnis, m., a leader of the Helvetii.

dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate, distribute.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine, sacred.*

Dīvitiācus, ī, m., 1. a leader of the Aedui; 2. a king of the Suessiones.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, grant, allow, afford; cause;* **inter se dare,** *exchange;* w. **in fugam,** *put;* **operam dare,** *take pains, see to it.*

doc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum, *teach, inform, show, state.*

documentum, ī, n., *evidence, lesson, example, warning.*

doleō, ēre, uī, *grieve, be pained, suffer.*

dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, pain, distress; annoyance, vexation, chagrin, resentment.*

dolus, ī, m., *deceit, guile, artifice.*

domesticus, a, um, *at home;* w. **bellum,** *intestine, civil.*

domicilium, ī, n., *home, house, dwelling-place.*

dominor, ārī, ātus sum, *rule, be master.*

dominus, ī, m., *master, lord.*

Domitius, ī, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus,* consul 54 B.C.

domus, ūs, f., *home, house;* **domī,** locative, *at home.*

Donnotaurus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Donnotaurus,* a Romanized Gaul.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *grant, give; present.*

dōnum, ī, n., *gift, present.*

dorsum, ī, n. or **dorsus, ī,** m., *ridge.*

dōs, dōtis, f., *dowry.*

druides, um, m., *the druids,* the priests of the Gauls.

Dūbis, is, m., a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Arar.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hesitate; doubt, have doubts.*

dubius, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain.*

ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead, draw, bring; make, construct, run; marry; put off, prolong; reckon, regard, consider.*

ductus, ūs, m., *leadership.*

dum, conj., *while; until.*

Dumnorīx, īgis, m., a leader of the Aedui.

duo, ae, o, *two.*

duodecim, *twelve.*

duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth.*

duodēnī, ae, a, *twelve each, twelve.*

duodēvīgintī, indecl., *eighteen.*

dupl-ex, -icis, *twofold, double.*

duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *double.*

dūritia, ae, f., *hardship; hardiness, endurance.*

dūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harden.*

Durocortorum, ī, n., a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul.

dūrus, a, um, *hard, difficult, severe; inclement.*

Dūrus, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus,* a military tribune with Caesar.

dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide*

E.

ē, see **ex.**

Eburōnes, um, m. plur., *the Eburones*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

Eburovīces, um, m. plur., *the Eburovices*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

ē-discō, ere, -didicī, *learn by heart.*

ēditus, a, um, from **edo.**

ē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *put forth, exhibit, exercise;* perf. part. as adj., **ēditus, a, um,** *elevated, raised, rising, high.*

ēdoc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum, *explain (fully), inform, show.*

ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, lead forth; draw.*

ef-farciō, īre, -farsī, -fertum, *fill up, stop up.*

effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *soften, weaken, enervate, make effeminate.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *take away, take; disclose, divulge, publish; lift up; elate.*

ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *make, render, cause, produce; bring about, accomplish, bring to pass; complete, finish, cover; get together, furnish.*

ef-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *dig out, tear out.*

ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *escape.*

egeō, ēre, uī, *be in need, lack;* pres. part. as adj., **egēns, -entis,** *needy.*

egestās, -tātis, f., *need, poverty, destitution.*

ego, meī, *I.*

ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go out, depart, leave, quit; sally out; land, disembark.*

ēgregiē, adv., *excellently, well, admirably.*

ēgregius, a, um, *eminent, marked, admirable, remarkable.*

ēgressus, a, um, from **egredior.**

ēgressus, ūs, m., *landing.*

ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *fling out, drive out, cast up;* w. **se,** *rush.*

ējusmodī, *such, of such a nature, of that sort.*

ē-lābor, ī, -lāpsus sum, *slip away, escape.*

ēlātus, a, um, from **effero.**

Elaver, -eris, n., *the Elaver*, a river of Central Gaul, a tributary of the Loire.

ēlēctus, a, um, from **eligo.**

elephantus, ī, m., *elephant.*

Eleutetī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Eleuteti*, a tribe of southern Gaul.

ē-liciō, ere, -licuī, *entice, draw.*

ē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, pick.*

Elusātes, um, m. plur., *the Elusates*, a tribe of Aquitania.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remove, emigrate.*

ēmineō, ēre, uī, *project, stand out.*

ēminus, adv., *from* or *at a distance.*

ē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send out; hurl, cast; throw aside, drop.*

emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy.*

ē-nāscor, ī, -nātus sum, *grow out.*

enim, conj., *for, now.*

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *disclose, divulge, tell, reveal.*

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *go, march, pass, proceed.*

eō, adv., *thither, there, to that place, to them (it,* etc.); *thereon, on* or *in them;* w. comparatives, *the, all the.*

eōdem, adv., *to the same place, in the same direction.*

ephippiātus, a, um, *equipped with saddle-cloths, using saddle-cloths.*

ephippium, ī, n., *saddle-cloth.*

epistola, ae, f., *letter.*

Eporedorīx, -īgis, m., the name of two chiefs of the Aedui.

epulum, ī, n., in plur., **epulae ārum,** f., *banquet.*

equ-es, -itis, m., *horseman, horse-soldier;* in plur., *cavalry; knight,* a Roman of rank next to a senator.

equester, tris, tre, *of cavalry, cavalry.*

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

equus, ī, m., *horse.*

Eratosthenēs, is, m., a Greek writer and scholar of Alexandria, who lived from 276 to 196 B.C.

ērēctus, a, um, from **erigo.**

ēreptus, a, um, from **eripio.**

ergā, prep. w. acc., *towards.*

ergō, adv., *then, therefore.*

ē-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *raise;* perf. part. as adj., **ērēctus, a, um,** *upright, high.*

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *take away, destroy; save, rescue.*

errō, āre, āvī, ātum, *be mistaken.*

ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *sally out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., *sally.*

essedārius, ī, m., *charioteer, chariot-fighter.*

essedum, ī, n., *chariot, war-chariot.*

Esubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Esubii,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

et, conj., *and;* **et....et,** *both.... and.*

etiam, conj., *also, further; even, still.*

etsī, conj., *even if, although.*

ē-vādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *escape.*

ē-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, *pull out.*

ē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *turn out, result.*

ēventus, ūs, m., *outcome, result; chance; experience.*

ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call out, summon; challenge; call, invite;* perf. part. as subst., **ēvocātī, ōrum,** m., *veterans* (*who had re-entered service*).

ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush out, burst out.*

ex, (sometimes **ē** before consonants), prep. w. abl., *from, out of; of; after, upon; in accordance with; in consequence of;* of direction, *on; above.*

exāctus, a, um, from **exigo.**

exagitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass.*

exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weigh, test.*

exanimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *kill; weaken, exhaust;* perf. part. as adj., **exanimātus, a, um,** *out of breath, breathless.*

ex-ārdēscō, ere, -ārsī, -ārsum, *blaze forth; become enraged, become incensed.*

exaudiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear clearly, hear.*

ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go out, withdraw, leave, quit.*

ex-cellō, ere, -celluī, -celsum, *excel, be eminent;* perf. part. as adj., **excelsus, a, um,** *lofty, high.*

exceptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *catch up, take hold of.*

ex-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down.*

ex-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive, meet; catch, come upon; take up, catch up, follow, succeed.*

excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rouse, incite, stimulate; raise; kindle.*

ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *cut off, shut out, prevent.*

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think of.*

excruciō, āre, āvī, ātum, *torture, torment.*

excubitor, -tōris, m., *picket, sentinel.*

excub-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *watch by night, keep watch, be on the watch.*

exculcō, āre, āvī, ātum, *tread* or *trample down.*

excursiō, -ōnis, f., *sally.*

excūsātiō, -ōnis, f., *apology.*

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *excuse;* w. **se,** *apologize.*

exemplum, ī, n., *example, precedent; warning, punishment.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go out, go forth, leave, remove, proceed.*

exerceō, ēre, uī, itum, *train, exercise, practise, drill, busy.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., *training, exercise, practice.*

exercitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *train, practise.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

ex-hauriō, īre, -hausī, -haustum, *remove, carry off.*

exigō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *spend, end;* pass., *be over.*

exiguē, adv., *scantily; barely, scarcely.*

exiguitās, -tātis, f., *scantiness, smallness, small extent, shortness, meagreness.*

exiguus, a, um, *small, scanty.*

eximius, a, um, *remarkable, high.*

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, f., *opinion.*

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, believe, consider; estimate.*

exitus, ūs, m., *outlet, passage; departure; outcome, result; end.*

expediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *free; get ready, arrange;* perf. part. as adj., **expedītus, a, um,** *unincumbered, free; rapid, active; in light marching order, light-armed; easy.*

expedītiō, -ōnis, f., *expedition.*

ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out, banish; remove, dispel.*

exper-ior, īrī, -tus sum, *try, make an attempt, test, experience; await.*

expiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *atone for, retrieve, repair.*

expl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill up; make up, make good; reach, attain.*

explōrātor, -tōris, m., *scout.*

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *examine, inquire, investigate, reconnoitre, try to find out;* perf. part as adj., **explōrātus, a, um,** *certain, assured.*

ex-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *display; disembark, land; set forth, state.*

exportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*

ex-poscō, ere, -poposcī, *demand.*

ex-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *extort, elicit; raise.*

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *storming, taking by storm.*

expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *storm, take by storm, capture; subdue, conquer.*

expulsus, a, um, from **expello.**

ex-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *seek out; ask for.*

ex-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow out, maintain, enforce.*

ex-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *put out; bare, uncover.*

ex-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, *stand out, project; spring up, arise.*

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look for, await, wait for, wait to see, wait; expect.*

exspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deprive.*

ex-stinguō, ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *extinguish, destroy.*

exstitī, from **exsisto.**

exstō, āre, *stand out, project.*

ex-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *pile up, raise, build.*

exsul, -sulis, m., *exile.*

exter, or **exterus, era, erum,** *outward, foreign;* compar., **exterior,** *outer;* superl., **extrēmus,** *farthest, most distant, last, extreme.*

exterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten, terrify.*

ex-timēscō, ere, -timuī, *fear, dread.*

ex-torqueō, ēre, -torsī, -tortum, *force, extort.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside of*, *beyond*.

ex-trahō, ere, -trāxī, trāctum, *drag out*, *waste by delay*, *fritter away*.

extrēmus, superl. of **exter.**

extrūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *thrust out*, *force back*, *shut out*.

ex-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *deprive*, *strip*, *despoil*.

ex-ūrō, ere, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn up*, *burn*.

F.

faber, brī, m., *workman*, *engineer*.

Fabius, ī, m., 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121; 2. *Caius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 3. *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

facile, adv., *easily*, *readily*.

facilis, e, *easy*.

facinus, -oris, n., *deed*, *crime*.

faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, pass., **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, *make; do*, *act; form*, *build*, *construct; render; bring about;* in passive, *take place*, *come to pass*, *happen*, *result*.

factiō, -ōnis, f., *party*, *faction*.

factum, ī, n., *deed*, *act*, *action*.

facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity*, *chance*, *power; supply;* in plur., *resources*, *means*.

fāgus, ī, m., *beech*.

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive; disappoint*.

falsus, a, um, *false*, *empty*.

falx, falcis, f., *sickle*, *hook*.

fāma, ae, f., *rumor*, *report*.

famēs, is, f., *hunger*, *starvation*, *famine*.

familia, ae, f., *household*, *house*, *family*.

familiāris, e, *of a household;* masc. as subst., *intimate friend*.

familiāritās, -tātis, f., *intimacy*, *friendship*.

fās, n. indecl., *right* (by divine law).

fastīgātē, adv., *obliquely*, *sloping*.

fastīgium, ī, n., *slope*, *elevation*, *inclination*.

fastīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring to a point;* perf. part. as adj., *sloping*, *inclined*.

fātum, ī, n., *fate*, *lot*.

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum, *favor*, *be favorable to*.

fax, facis, f., *torch*, *brand*.

fēlīcitās, -tātis, f., *good fortune*, *success*.

fēlīciter, adv., *happily*, *prosperously*, *successfully*.

fēmina, ae, f., *woman; female*.

fem-ur, -inis, n., *thigh*.

fera, ae, f., *wild beast*.

ferāx, ācis, *fertile*, *fruitful*.

ferē, adv., *almost; about; generally*, *usually*, *for the most part;* w. negatives, *scarcely*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear*, *bring*, *carry; endure*, *take*, *stand; experience*, *suffer*, *feel; receive*, *win; run*, *go; regard; call;* in pass., *rush;* **signa ferre**, *advance;* w. **auxilium**, *lend;* w. **condicionem**, *offer;* w. **injurias**, *commit*.

ferrāmentum, ī, n., *(iron) tool*.

ferrāria, ae, f., *iron mine*.

ferreus, a, um, *of iron*, *iron*.

ferrum, ī, n., *iron*, *iron point*, *sword*.

fertilis, e, *fertile*, *fruitful*, *rich*.

fertilitās, -tātis, f., *fertility*, *richness*.

ferus, a, um, *wild*, *fierce*, *ferocious*.

ferve-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *heat*, *make red hot*.

fer-veō, ēre, -buī, *be glowing*, *be red hot*.

fībula, ae, f., *brace*.

fictus, a, um, from **fingo.**

fidēlis, e, *faithful*.

fidēs, eī, f., *pledge, word; trustworthiness, honor; trust, faith, confidence; devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, allegiance, alliance:* **fidem facere,** *give a pledge, gain belief.*

fīdūcia, ae, f., *reliance, confidence.*

figūra, ae, f., *shape.*

fīlia, ae, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, ī, m., *son.*

fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictum, *make up, invent.*

fīniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *limit, bound; determine, measure, describe.*

fīnis, is, m., *end, limit;* in plur., *borders, territory, land, district.*

fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjacent, bordering;* masc. plur. as subst., *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, pass of **facio,** *be made, be done; take place, come to pass, happen, result.*

fīrmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily.*

fīrmitū-dō, -dinis, f., *strength.*

fīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strengthen, secure.*

fīrmus, a, um, *strong, powerful.*

fistūca, ae, f., *pile-driver, rammer.*

Flaccus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus,* governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.

flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *demand.*

flamma, ae, f., *flame, fire.*

flectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *bend, turn.*

fleō, ere, flēvī, flētum, *weep, be in tears.*

flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*

flō, āre, āvī, ātum, *blow.*

flōreō, ēre, uī, *bloom;* pres. part. as adj., *flourishing, prosperous, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*

fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*

flūmen, -minis, n., *river.*

fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxum, *flow.*

fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossum, *dig.*

foedus, -eris, n., *treaty.*

fore, fut. infin. of **sum.**

forīs, adv., *outdoor; without, outside.*

fōrma, ae, f., *shape, form; structure.*

fors, forte, f., (other cases wanting), *chance;* in abl., *perchance, perhaps.*

fortis, e, *brave, courageous*

fortiter, adv., *bravely, gallantly, stoutly.*

fortitū-dō, -dinis, f., *bravery, courage.*

fortuītō, adv., *by chance, accidentally.*

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, chance; lot, situation; good fortune, success;* in plur., *possessions, fortunes.*

fortūnātus, a, um, *fortunate.*

forum, ī, n., *market place.*

fossa, ae, f., *trench, ditch.*

fovea, ae, f., *pit, pitfall.*

frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break, shatter, wreck; crush.*

frāter, tris, m., *brother.*

frāternus, a, um, *brotherly, of a brother.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deception, treachery.*

fremitus, ūs, m., *din, noise.*

frequēns. entis, *numerous, in large numbers.*

frētus, a, um, *relying on,* w. abl.

frīgidus, a, um, *cold.*

frīg-us, -oris, n., *cold, frost, cold weather.*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead; front.*

frūctuōsus, a, um, *fruitful, fertile.*

frūctus, ūs, m., *fruit, crops; advantage; profit, income.*

frūgēs, um, see **frux.**

frūmentārius, a, um, *of grain; fertile, productive;* **res frumentaria,** *supply of corn, grain, provisions.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting grain, foraging.*

frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum, *get grain, forage.*

frūmentum, ī, n., *grain, corn, crops, provisions.*

fruor, ī, frūctus sum, *enjoy,* w. abl.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect.*

frūx, frūgis, (sing. very rare in Latin), *crops.*

Fūfius, ī, m., *Caius Fufius Cita,* a Roman knight.

fuga, ae, f., *flight, rout;* **in fugam convertere, conjicere** or **dare,** *to put to flight.*

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee, escape; avoid, shun.*

fugitīvus, ī, m., *runaway slave.*

fugō, āre, āvī, ātum, *put to flight, rout.*

fūmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *smoke.*

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.*

funda, ae, f., *sling.*

fundi-tor, -tōris, m., *slinger.*

fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour; scatter, rout.*

fungor, ī, fūnctus sum, *discharge, perform,* w. abl.

fūnis, is, m., *rope, cable.*

fūnus, -eris, n., *funeral.*

furor, -ōris, m., *madness, frenzy, rage.*

fūrtum, ī, n., *theft.*

fūsilis, e, *molten, softened.*

fūsus, a, um, from **fundo.**

futūrus, a, um, from **sum.**

G.

Gabalī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Gabali,* a tribe in the south of Gaul.

Gabīnius, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius,* consul 58 B.C.

gaesum, ī, n., *javelin, spear.*

Gāius, ī, or **Cāius, ī,** m., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, ae, m., 1. *Servius Galba,* one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a king of the Suessiones.

galea, ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.* 1. The Roman provinces of Gaul, *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Citerior,* the northern part of Italy; and *Gallia Transalpina* or *Ulterior,* the south-eastern part of France. 2. The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium and part of Holland and Germany. 3. The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided, the *Belgae* and the *Aquitani* holding the other two.

Gallicus, a, um, *of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic.*

gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*

Gallus, ī, m., 1. *a Gaul;* 2. *Marcus Trebius Gallus,* one of Caesar's officers.

Garumna, ae, m., *the Garonne,* a river of south-western Gaul.

Garumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Garumni,* a tribe near the Pyrenees.

Gates, um, m. plur., *the Gates,* a tribe in the south-west of Gaul.

gaudeō, ēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice.*

Geidumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Geidumni,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

Genāva, ae, f., *Geneva,* a town of the Allobroges, at the extreme north-east of the Province.

gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim, adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race. nation, clan.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, family; species; kind, sort, class.*

Gergovia, ae, f., *Gergovia,* a town of the Arverni, in the centre of Gaul.

Germānia, ae, f., *Germany,* the region east of the Rhine.

Germānicus, a, um, *German, of* or *with the Germans.*

Germānus, ī, m., *a German.*

gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *manage; carry on, wage; hold; do;* in pass., *go on.*

gladius, ī, m., *sword.*

glaeba, ae, f., *clod, lump.*

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; ball, bullet.*

glōria, ae, f., *glory, fame, reputation.*

glōrior, ārī, ātus sum, *boast of,* w. abl.

Gnaeus, ī, m., *Gnaeus,* or *Cneius,* a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., a man of rank among the Arverni.

Gorgobina, ae, f., a town in the country of the Aedui, in central Gaul.

Graecus, a, um, *Greek, Grecian;* masc. as subst., *a Greek.*

Grāiocelī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Graioceli,* an Alpine tribe between Gaul and Italy.

grandis, e, *large.*

grātia, ae, f., *favor, good will; influence; gratitude, thanks;* **gratias agere,** *render thanks, thank;* **gratiam referre,** *make a grateful return, requite;* **gratiam habere,** *feel gratitude, be grateful;* **gratiam inire,** *win gratitude.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., *congratulation; joy, rejoicing.*

grātulor, ārī, ātus sum, *congratulate, offer congratulations.*

grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing;* neut. as subst., *a favor.*

gravis, e, *heavy; severe, bitter, serious; solemn;* w. **aetas,** *advanced.*

gravitās, -tātis, f., *weight; strength, importance.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, with effect; severely, bitterly, seriously;* **graviter ferre,** *be annoyed, feel keenly.*

gravor, ārī, ātus sum, *be reluctant, object.*

Grudiī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Grudii,* a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

gubernātor, -tōris, m., *pilot, helmsman.*

gustō, āre, āvī, ātum, *taste, eat.*

Gutruātus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

H.

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, *have, possess, occupy; keep; hold;* w. **orationem,** *deliver, make; treat, regard, consider;* **se habere,** *to be;* w. perf. part. pass., much like Eng. auxiliary verb *have.*

haesitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *stick fast, be caught.*

hāmus, ī, m., *hook.*

harpagō, -ōnis, m., *hook, grappling-iron.*

Harūdes, um, m. plur., *the Harudes,* a German tribe which had crossed into Gaul.

haud, adv., *not.*

Helvēticus, a, um, *Helvetian, of* or *with the Helvetii.*

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii;* masc. plur. as subst., *the Helvetii,* a tribe of Gaul dwelling in modern Switzerland.

Helviī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Helvii,* a tribe in the Province.

Hercynius, a, um, w. **silva,** *the Hercynian forest,* extending through southern and central Germany.

hērēditās, -tātis, f., *inheritance.*

hīberna, ōrum, n. plur., *winter camp, winter-quarters.*

hībernācula, ōrum, n. plur., *winter-quarters.*

Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*

hīc, haec, hōc, *this; he; the following; the present; such;* often loosely, *that;* **hōc,** neut. abl. as adv., *in this way, on this account,* and w. comparatives, *the.*

hīc, adv., *here, herein.*

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, *winter, pass the winter.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*

hinc, adv., *from this point, hence.*

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispānus, a, um, *Spanish.*

hom-ō, -inis, m. and f., *man, person:* in plur., *man, mankind. people.*

honestus, a, um, *honorable, of rank, distinguished.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, dignity, distinction; respect; high position.*

honōrificus, a, um, *honorable, complimentary.*

hōra, ae, f., *hour,* (one-twelfth of the daylight).

horreō, ēre, uī, *shudder at, dread.*

horribilis, e, *dreadful, formidable.*

horridus, a, um, *horrible, frightful.*

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.*

hosp-es, -itis, m., *guest, friend.*

hospitium, ī, n., *friendship, hospitality.*

hostis, is, m., *enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.*

hūjusmodī, *of this sort, to this effect.*

hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *refinement, accomplishments.*

hūmānus, a, um, *civilized, refined.*

humilis, e, *low, inferior, humble, of little importance, obscure.*

humilitās, -tātis, f., *lowness; weakness, insignificance.*

I.

ibi, adv., *there.*

Iccius, ī, m., a leader of the Remi.

ictus, ūs, m., *blow, stroke.*

idcircō, adv., *on that account, for this reason.*

īdem, eadem, idem, *the same; also.*

identidem, adv., *again and again.*

idōneus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*

Īdūs, uum, f. plur., *the Ides* (the 13th of each month, but in March, May, July and October the 15th).

īgnis, īs, m., *fire; camp fire.*

īgnōbilis, e, *unknown, obscure.*

īgnōminia, ae, f., *disgrace.*

īgnōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *not know, be unacquainted with.*

īgnōscō, ere, īgnōvī, īgnōtum, *forgive, pardon,* w. dat.

īgnōtus, a, um, *unknown.*

illātus, a, um, from **infero.**

ille, illa, illud, *that, he.*

illīc, adv., *there, in that place.*

illigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bind, attach, fasten.*

illō, adv., *to that point, thither, there.*

illūstris, e, *distinguished, remarkable.*

Īllyricum, ī, n., a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, f., *weakness, feebleness.*

im-ber, -bris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*

imitor, ārī, ātus sum, *imitate.*

immānis, e, *huge, enormous.*

immineō, ēre, uī, *be near at hand; threaten.*

im-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send against, hurl; let down, sink, let in.*

immolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sacrifice.*

immortālis, e, *immortal.*

immūnis, e, *free from taxation* or *tribute.*

immūnitās, -tātis, f., *freedom, exemption from public service.*

imparātus, a, um, *unprepared.*

impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance,* in plur., *baggage, baggage-train, baggage-horses.*

impediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hinder, obstruct, entangle, embarrass;* perf. part. as adj., **impedītus, a, um,** *hampered, occupied, intricate, difficult, impassable.*

im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *urge, instigate, incite.*

impendeō, ēre, *overhang.*

impēnsus, a, um, *expensive, high.*

imperātor, -tōris, m., *commander (in chief).*

imperātum, ī, n., *order, command.*

imperfectus, a, um, *unfinished, unaccomplished.*

imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced, unacquainted,* w. gen.

imperium, ī, n., *command, order; power, supreme power, control, rule, supremacy.*

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *levy upon, demand, require, order to furnish; order, command, rule.*

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *obtain, obtain one's request, accomplish, prevail on.*

impetus, ūs, m., *attack, charge; fury, rush, violence.*

impius, a, um, *wicked, unholy.*

implic-ō, āre, āvī, ātum, or **-uī, -itum,** *interweave, interlace.*

implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *beg, entreat, beseech.*

im-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place on, put on, mount; levy, impose.*

importō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring in, introduce, import.*

imprīmīs, or **in prīmīs,** *especially, particularly.*

improbus, a, um, *wicked, unprincipled.*

imprōvīsus, a, um, *unforeseen;* abl., **improviso,** as adv., so **de improviso,** *unexpectedly, unawares.*

imprūdēns, -entis, *unsuspecting, off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, ae, f., *thoughtlessness, indiscretion.*

impūb-ēs, -eris, *chaste, unmarried.*

impūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, fight.*

impulsus, a, um, from **impello.**

impulsus, ūs, m., *instigation.*

impūne, adv., *with impunity.*

impūnitās, -tātis, f., *impunity, exemption from punishment.*

īmus, a, um, superlative of **inferus.**

in, prep. (1) w. abl., *in, at, within, on; among, in the country of; over; considering, in view of; in the case of, in regard to;* (2) w. acc., *into, to; towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to, according to; in.*

inānis, e, *empty, idle, mere.*

incautē, adv., *carelessly, incautiously.*

incautus, a, um, *careless, off one's guard.*

incendium, ī, n., *fire, burning.*

in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set on fire, burn; arouse, inflame.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain, untrustworthy, confused.*

in-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *fall in with, come upon; happen, occur.*

in-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut into.*

in-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *begin.*

incīsus, a, um, from **incīdo.**

incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on impel, set in motion; arouse, excite;* w. **se,** *rush on, rush in;* perf. part. w. **equus,** *at full speed.*

incōgnitus, a, um, *unknown.*

incol-ō, ere, -uī, *inhabit, dwell, live.*

incolumis, e, *safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss.*

incommodē, adv., *disastrously unfortunately, badly.*

incommodum, ī, n., *disadvantage, misfortune, disaster, loss, reverses.*

incrēdibilis, e, *incredible, extraordinary.*

increpitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reproach, upbraid, taunt.*

in-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *apply* or *devote one's self.*

incursiō, -ōnis, f., *raid, inroad.*

incursus, ūs, m., *attack, incursion.*

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *blame, attack, censure.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence ; then, next.*

indicium, ī, n., *information.*

in-dīcō, ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *appoint, proclaim, call.*

indictus, a, um, (1) from **indico ;** (2) *unpleaded, unheard.*

indīgnē, adv., *unworthily, undeservedly.*

indīgnitās, -tātis, f., *indignity, disgrace.*

indīgnor, ārī, ātus sum, *be indignant.*

indīgnus, a, um, *unworthy, unbecoming.*

indīligēns, -entis, *careless, indifferent.*

indīligenter, adv., *carelessly.*

indīligentia, ae, f., *indifference, lack of energy.*

in-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead on, influence, induce ; cover.*

indulgentia, ae, f., *indulgence, leniency.*

indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, *favor,* w. dat.

ind-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *put on ;* w. **se,** *fall upon, get entangled.*

industriē, adv., *actively, zealously.*

indūtiae, ārum, f. plur., *truce.*

Indūtiomārus, ī, m., a chief of the Treveri.

in-eō, -īre, -iī(-īvī), -itum, *enter upon, adopt, form, make ; estimate ; begin ; win.*

inermis, e, or **inermus, a, um,** *unarmed.*

in-ers, -ertis, *lazy, unmanly.*

īnfāmia, ae, f., *dishonor, disgrace, disrepute.*

īnfāns, -antis, m., *infant, child.*

īnfectus, a, um, *undone, unaccomplished.*

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, *bring in, put in* or *upon ; introduce, import ; cause, inflict, inspire ;* w. **bellum,** *make, wage* (offensive) ; w. **signa,** *advance ;* w. **causam,** *advance, allege.*

īnferus, a, um, *low ;* compar. **īnferior,** *lower ; inferior ;* superl. **īnfimus,** *lowest, at the foot* or *base ;* neut. as subst., *the bottom, the foot.*

īnfestus, a, um, *hostile.*

īn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *stain.*

īnfidēlis, e, *unfaithful.*

īn-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fasten to, fix on.*

īnfimus, a, um, superl. of **inferus.**

īnfīnītus, a, um, *endless, boundless, vast.*

īnfīrmitās, -tātis, f., *weakness, fickleness, inconstancy.*

īnfīrmus, a, um, *weak.*

īnfīxus, a, um, from **infigo.**

īn-flectō, ere, -flexī, -flexum, *bend.*

īn-fluō, ere, -flūxī, -fluxum, *flow, empty.*

īn-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *bury.*

īnfra, (1) adv., *below, farther down ;* (2) prep. w. acc., *below, less than.*

ingēns, entis, *huge, very large.*

ingrātus, a, um, *displeasing, unacceptable.*

in-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *enter.*

inimīcitia, ae, f., *enmity, feud.*

inimīcus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile ;* masc. as subst., *enemy.*

inīquitās, -tātis, f., *injustice, unfairness ; disadvantage, unfavorable nature* or *position.*

inīquus, a, um, *uneven; unfavorable; unfair, unjust.*

initium, ī, n., *beginning, first; edge, frontier, borders; elements.*

initus, a, um, from **ineo.**

in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *put on, lay on; inspire, infuse, cause.*

in-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *impose.*

injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, violence, outrage.*

injūssū, abl. used as adv., *without one's orders.*

in-nāscor, ī, -nātus sum, *spring up in;* in perf., *be inborn, be innate.*

in-nītor, ī, -nīsus or **-nīxus sum,** *lean on.*

innocēns, entis, *innocent, guiltless.*

innocentia, ae, f., *innocence, integrity.*

inopia, ae, f., *want, scarcity, lack, privation.*

inopīnāns, -antis, *not expecting, unawares, unprepared, off one's guard.*

inquam, inquit, defective verb, *say.*

īnsciēns, entis, *not knowing, being unaware.*

īnscientia, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.*

īnscius, a, um, *ignorant, unaware.*

īn-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

īn-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *insert.*

īnsidiae, ārum, f. plur., *ambush, stratagem, treachery.*

īnsidior, ārī, ātus sum, *lie in wait.*

īnsīgnis, e, *marked, notable, signal;* n. as subst., **īnsīgne, is,** *ensign, badge, token, decoration.*

īn-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap at* or *on.*

īnsimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *charge, accuse.*

īnsinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, *insinuate;* w. **se,** *work one's way in.*

īn-sistō, ere, -stitī, *stand, keep one's footing; enter upon, pursue, adopt, devote one's self.*

īnsolenter, adv., *insolently, haughtily, immoderately.*

īnspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look on.*

īnstābilis, e, *unsteady, changeable.*

īnstar, accus. as adv., *like,* w. gen.

īnstīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on, incite.*

īnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *undertake, begin, set to; adopt, establish, settle; equip, get ready; train, teach; draw up.*

īnstitūtum, ī, n., *custom, practice.*

īn-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, *press forward, press on; be at hand; threaten, impend.*

īnstrūmentum, ī, n., *equipment, furniture.*

īn-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.*

īnsuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *train.*

īnsuētus, a, um, *unaccustomed.*

īnsula, ae, f., *island.*

īnsuper, adv., *above, on top.*

integer, gra, grum, *unimpaired, fresh, untouched, complete.*

in-tegō, ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover over, cover.*

intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn.*

inten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *stretch, strain;* perf. partic., *intent, occupied, engrossed, eager.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, during;* **inter se,** *one another, to* or *with one another.*

inter-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *come between, be between, intervene, elapse, exist between.*

inter-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *intercept, cut off.*

inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *cut off.*

inter-dīcō, ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *forbid, warn; prohibit, exclude.*

interdiū, adv., *by day, in the daytime.*

interdum, adv., *sometimes.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

inter-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *perish.*

interest, from **intersum.**

inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *slay, put to death, kill.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, comparative adj., *inner, interior;* plur., *those living in the interior.*

interitus, ūs, m., *death, destruction.*

inter-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *place between, interpose;* in pass., *be between, intervene, come at intervals.*

inter-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue; cease, neglect; let pass,* in pass., *go by, intervene, elapse; separate; leave free, leave open.*

interneciō, -ōnis, f., *destruction, annihilation, extermination.*

interpellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *interrupt, disturb, interfere with.*

inter-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *interpose; allege; pledge; put forward;* in pass., *intervene.*

inter-pres, -pretis, m., *interpreter.*

interpretor, ārī, ātus sum, *interpret, explain.*

interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *question.*

inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break down, destroy.*

inter-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, *cut down, break down, destroy.*

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be between, be engaged in, take part in;* as impersonal verb, **interest,** *it is of importance, it concerns.*

intervāllum, ī, n., *interval, distance.*

inter-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come up, appear.*

interventus, ūs, m., *intervention, coming on.*

intex-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *weave together, plait.*

intoleranter, adv., *eagerly, recklessly.*

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*

intrītus, a, um, *unexhausted, fresh, not fatigued.*

intrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *enter.*

intrō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead in, bring in.*

intro-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *come in, enter.*

introitus, ūs, m., *entrance, approach.*

intrō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in, let in, admit.*

intrōrsus, adv., *within, into the interior, inside.*

intrō-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break in, burst in.*

intueor, ērī, itus sum, *gaze on, look at.*

intulī, from **infero.**

intus, adv., *within, inside.*

inūsitātus, a, um, *unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.*

inūtilis, e, *useless, unserviceable, unsuitable.*

in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come upon, find; learn.*

inventor, -tōris, m., *inventor, discoverer.*

inveter-āscō, ere, -āvī, -ātum, *become established, settle.*

invicem, adv., *in turn.*

invictus, a, um, *unconquered, invincible.*

in-videō, ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *envy, be jealous of,* w. dat.

invidia, ae, f., *envy, jealousy.*

inviolātus, a, um, *inviolate.*

invītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *invite, induce, allure.*

invītus, a, um, *unwilling, against one's will.*

ipse, a, um, *himself, he himself, itself,* etc.; *very.*

īrācundia, ae, f., *wrath, anger, passion.*

īrācundus, a, um, *passionate.*

ir-rīdeō, ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *ridicule, jeer at.*

irrīdiculē, adv., *without humor.*

ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *burst in, break in, rush, dash.*

irruptiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, assault.*

is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it, they;* w rel., *the; such;* abl. **eō** as adv., *so much, the, on that account.*

iste, a, ud, *that of yours, that.*

ita, adv., *so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.*

Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *therefore, so, accordingly.*

item, adv., *likewise, also, in the same way.*

iter, itineris, n., *route, march, road, journey;* **magnum iter,** *a forced march;* **iter facere,** *to march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius, adj. with **portus,** a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.

J.

jaceō, ēre, uī, itum, *lie, be fallen, be dead.*

jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up.*

jactō, āre, āvī, ātum, *shake, toss, fling; discuss.*

jactūra, ae, f., *loss, sacrifice; offer.*

jaculum, ī, n., *javelin.*

jam, adv., *now, at length, already;* w. negatives, *any more, longer.*

juba, ae, f., *mane.*

jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, *order, bid, command.*

jūdicium, ī, n., *trial; judgment, decision, opinion;* abl. **judicio,** *by design, purposely.*

jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *judge, decide, consider, think, pronounce.*

jugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge, summit, crest.*

jūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden, horse.*

jūnctūra, ae, f., *joining.*

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join, unite.*

jūnior, comparative of **juvenis.**

Jūnius, ī, m., *Quintus Junius,* one of Caesar's officers.

Juppiter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter,* the supreme god of the Romans.

Jūra, ae, m., a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.

jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *swear, take an oath.*

jūs, jūris, n., *right, rights, law, justice.*

jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n., *oath.*

jussū, abl. used as adv., *by order.*

jūstitia, ae, f., *justice, fairness.*

jūstus, a, um, *just, rightful, lawful, fair; proper, regular, due.*

juvenis, e (comparative **jūnior**), *young;* m. as subst., *a young man.*

juven-tūs, -tūtis, f., *youth;* as collective, *youth, young men.*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *aid, help, assist.*

jūxtā, adv., *near, close by.*

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. plur., *the Calends,* the first day of the month.

L.

L., an abbreviation for **Lucius.**

Laberius, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus,* a military tribune with Caesar.

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, hardship, labor, exertion ; endurance, hardiness.*

lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *slip ; err, do wrong, fall away ; fail, be disappointed.*

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *toil, strive, be anxious ; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.*

labrum, ī, n., *lip ; edge, rim.*

lāc, lactis, n., *milk.*

lacess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *provoke, harass, attack, assail.*

lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*

lacrimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weep.*

lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*

laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, *injure ; violate, break.*

laetātiō, -ōnis, f., *joy, rejoicing.*

laetitia, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful, rejoicing.*

languidē, adv., *with little energy.*

languidus, a, um, *weary, faint, listless, not active.*

languor, -ōris, m., *exhaustion, listlessness.*

lap-is, -idis, m., *stone.*

lāpsus, a, um, from **lābor.**

laqueus, ī, m., *noose.*

largior, īrī, ītus sum, *give bountifully ; bribe ; supply, afford.*

largiter, adv., *abundantly, greatly.*

largītiō, -ōnis, f., *lavishness, bounty, liberality.*

lassitū-dō, -dinis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*

lātē, adv., *widely, far.*

latebra, ae, f., *hiding-place.*

lateō, ēre, uī, *lurk, lie concealed ; escape notice.*

lātitū-dō, -dinis, f., *width, breadth, extent.*

Latovīcī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Latovici,* neighbors of the Helvetii.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*

latrōcinium, ī, n., *robbery, raid.*

lat-us, -eris, n., *side, flank.*

lātus, a, um, and **lātūrus, a, um,** from **fero.**

lātus, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive.*

laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, commend.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, merit, glory, fame.*

lavō, āre, āvī, ātum, or **lāvī, lautum** or **lōtum,** *wash ;* in pass., *bathe.*

laxō, āre, āvī, ātum, *loosen, extend, open out.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*

lēgātus, ī, m., *ambassador, envoy ; lieutenant,* an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion,* a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.

legiōnārius, a, um, *of a legion, legionary.*

Lemannus, ī, m., a lake now called *Geneva,* in eastern Gaul.

Lemovīces, um, m. plur., *the Lemovices,* a tribe in south-western Gaul.

lēnis, e, *gentle, light.*

lēnitās, -tātis, f., *gentleness, sluggishness.*

lēniter, adv., *gently, slightly, with little vigor.*

Lepontiī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Lepontii,* an Alpine tribe.

lep-us, -oris, m., *hare.*

Leucī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Leuci,* a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

Levacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Levaci,* a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

levis, e, *light ; slight, trifling ; weak, fickle.*

levitās, -tātis, f,, *lightness ; fickleness, thoughtlessness, inconstancy.*

levō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free, relieve.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*

Lexoviī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Lexovii,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly, with pleasure.*

līber, era, erum, *free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed, untrammelled, unincumbered.*

līberālitās, -tātis, f., *generosity, liberality.*

līberāliter, adv., *generously, graciously, kindly.*

līberē, adv., *freely, without check* or *restraint.*

līberī, ōrum, m. plur., *children.*

līberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free, set free.*

lībertās, -tātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*

lībrīlis, e, *of a pound weight.*

licentia, ae, f., *recklessness, lawlessness.*

liceor, ērī, itus sum, *bid* (at auction).

licet, ēre, licuit, *it is permitted, allowable;* freely, *may, might.*

Liger, -eris, m., the river *Loire,* in the central part of Gaul.

līgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting wood.*

līgnātor, -tōris, m., *wood-cutter, gatherer of wood.*

līlium, ī, n., *lily.*

līnea, ae, f., *line.*

Lingones, um, m. plur., *the Lingones,* a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.

lingua, ae, f., *tongue; language, speech.*

lingula, ae, f., *little tongue; tongue of land, headland.*

linter, -tris, f., *small boat, skiff.*

līnum, ī, n., *flax.*

līs, lītis, f., *lawsuit, dispute; damages.*

Liscus, ī, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

Litaviccus, ī, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

littera, ae, f., *letter, character;* in plur., *letter, despatch; documents, records.*

lit-us, -oris, n., *shore.*

locus, ī, m.; in plur., **loca, ōrum,** n.; *place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country; rank; light, character; opportunity, chance;* in plur., *space, ground, district, region, country, place.*

locūtus, a, um, from **loquor.**

longē, adv., *far; long.*

longinquus, a, um, *distant, remote; long, long-continued, protracted.*

longitū-dō, -dinis, f., *length.*

longurius, ī, m., *long pole.*

longus, a, um, *long; distant; tedious;* **navis longa,** *war-ship, galley.*

loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak, say, converse.*

lōrīca, ae, f., *coat of mail; breastwork.*

Lūcānius, ī, m., *Quintus Lucanius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

Lūcius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Lucterius, ī, m., a leading Gaul, belonging to the Cadurci.

Lugotor-īx, -īgis, m., a Briton of rank.

lūna, ae, f., *moon.*

Lutētia, ae, f., a town of the Parisii, on the Seine.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, dawn;* **prima lux,** *daybreak, dawn.*

lūxuria, ae, f., *luxury, luxurious living.*

M.

M., an abbreviation for **Marcus.**

māceria, ae, f., *wall.*

māchinātiō, -ōnis, f., *machine, engine.*

maestus, a, um, *sad, sorrowful.*

magis, comparative adv., (see **magnopere**), *more, rather.*

magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate; office, magistracy.*

māgnificus, a, um, *splendid, grand.*

māgnitū-dō, -dinis, f., *greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.*

māgnopere, adv. (**magis, māximē**), *greatly, very, strongly, earnestly.*

māgnus, a, um (**mājor, māximus**), *great, large; loud; serious, extensive;* **māgnī,** as adv., *highly, greatly.*

mājestās, -tātis, f., *dignity, majesty.*

mājor, comparative of **māgnus;** in m. plur. as subst., *elders, ancestors, fathers.*

malacia, ae, f., *calm, lull.*

male, adv. (**pējus, pessimē**), *badly, ill, unsuccessfully.*

maleficium, ī, n., *mischief, outrage, harm.*

Mallius, ī, m., *Lucius Mallius,* a Roman proconsul defeated by the Aquitani, B.C. 78.

mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*

mālus, ī, m., *mast, (upright) beam.*

mandātum, ī, n., *order, commission, instruction, message.*

mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, *order, instruct; entrust, give up, commit, betake.*

Mandubiī, ōrum, m., plur., *the Mandubii,* a tribe in central Gaul.

Mandubracius, m., a Briton of high rank among the Trinobantes.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *stay, remain; abide by, stand by.*

manipulāris, is, m., *one belonging to a company* or *maniple, comrade.*

manipulus, ī, m., *maniple, company* (one-third of a cohort).

mānsuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tame.*

mānsuēfīō, passive of **mansue-facio.**

mānsuētū-dō, -dinis, f., *gentleness, clemency.*

manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force;* **manū,** *by art, by force;* **manūs dare,** *yield, give in.*

Marcomanī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Marcomani,* a German tribe.

Mārcus, ī, m., *Marcus,* a Roman praenomen.

mare, maris, n., *sea.*

maritimus, a, um, *on* or *of the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval.*

Marius, ī, m., *Caius Marius,* a famous Roman general and popular leader, who lived from B.C. 157 to 86.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars,* the god of war.

mās, maris, m., *male.*

matara, ae, f., *(Celtic) javelin, pike.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother;* **mater familiae,** *matron.*

māteria, ae, f., *timber, wood, material.*

māteriēs, ēī, f., *timber, wood, material.*

māterior, ārī, ātus sum, *get timber, collect wood.*

Matiscō, -ōnis, f., a town of the Aedui.

mātrimōnium, ī, n., *marriage.*

Matrona, ae, f., the river *Marne,* in northern Gaul.

mātūrē, adv. (**mātūrius, mātūrrimē**), *early, soon.*

mātūr-ēscō, ere, -uī, *ripen.*

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten, make haste.*

mātūrus, a, um, *early; ripe.*

māximē, superlative adv. (see **magnopere**), *very greatly, very much, chiefly, most, especially.*

māximus, a, um, superlative of **magnus.**

Māximus, ī, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus,* a Roman general, B.C. 121.

medeor, ērī, *remedy, relieve.*

mediocris, e, *moderate, ordinary, common.*

mediocriter, adv., *in a slight* or *small degree.*

Mediomatricī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Mediomatrici,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

mediterrāneus, a, um, *inland, central, interior.*

medius, a, um, *middle, central; intermediate;* generally rendered by *middle* or *half-way.*

Meldī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Meldi,* a tribe in northern Gaul.

melior, comparative of **bonus.**

Melodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Senones in northern Gaul.

membrum, ī, n., *limb.*

meminī, isse, in perf. tenses only, *remember, recollect.*

memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition; time.*

Menapiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Menapii,* a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

mendācium, ī, n., *lie, falsehood, false statement.*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, intellect.*

mēnsis, is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, ae, f., *measure.*

mentiō, -ōnis, f., *mention.*

mercātor, -tōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

mercatūra, ae, f., *trading, traffic, commerce.*

mer-cēs, -cēdis, f., *pay, hire.*

Mercurius, ī, m., *Mercury,* one of the Roman gods.

mereō, ēre, uī, itum, and **mereor, ērī, itus sum,** *deserve, win, earn; serve.*

merīdiānus, a, um, *of midday, of noon.*

merīdiēs, ēī, m., *midday, noon; the south.*

meritum, ī, n., *service, merit, desert; fault.*

Messāla, ae, m., *Marcus Valerius Messala,* consul B.C. 61.

mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum, *measure, measure out, distribute.*

Metiosedum, ī, n., a town in northern Gaul.

Mētius, ī, m., an envoy of Cæsar's.

metō, ere, messuī, messum, *reap, cut grain.*

metus, ūs, m., *fear.*

meus, a, um, *my, mine.*

mīl-es, -itis, m., *soldier, man;* as collective, *the soldiers, soldiery.*

mīlitāris, e, *military, of war.*

mīlitia, ae, f., *(military) service.*

mīlle, indeclinable adj.; in plur., **mīlia, ium,** n.; *thousand.*

Minerva, ae, f., *Minerva,* a Roman goddess.

minimē, adv., superlative of **parum,** *by no means, very little, least.*

minimus, superlative of **parvus.**

minor, comparative of **parvus.**

Minucius, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* one of Caesar's officers.

min-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *lessen, diminish, decrease; settle; ebb.*

minus, adv., comparative of **parum,** *less; not; not very, not so well.*

mīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, wonder.*

mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, strange, surprising.*

miser, era, erum, *wretched, poor, miserable.*

misericordia, ae, f., *pity, mercy, clemency.*

miseror, ārī, ātus sum, *bewail, deplore, lament.*

missus, ūs, m., *sending, despatch.*

mītis, e, *gentle;* superl. adv., **mītissimē,** *gently, mildly.*

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send, despatch; hurl, throw.*

mōbilis, e, *fickle, changeable.*

mōbilitās, -tātis, f., *fickleness; quickness, activity.*

mōbiliter, adv., *easily.*

moderor, ārī, ātus sum, *manage, check, control, restrain.*

modestia, ae, f., *self-control, moderation.*

modo, adv., *only, but, merely; just, but now, but recently.*

modus, ī, m., *measure, amount; fashion, style, manner, kind, sort.*

moenia, ium, n. plur., *walls, fortifications.*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass ; dyke, dam.*

molestē, adv., *grievously ;* **moleste ferre,** *to be annoyed, be vexed.*

mōlīmentum, ī, n., *trouble, difficulty.*

molitus, a, um, from **molo.**

molliō, īre, īvī, ītum, *soften, lessen ; make easy.*

mollis, e, *weak, yielding, changeable, not firm ; smooth, level.*

mollitia, ae, f., *weakness, feebleness.*

mollitiēs, ēī, f., *weakness, lack of endurance.*

mol-ō, ere, -uī, -itum, *grind.*

mōmentum, ī, n., *weight, influence, importance.*

Mona, ae, f., an island in the Irish channel.

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise, remind, urge.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain ; mountain range ; hill.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

morbus, ī, m., *disease, sickness.*

Morinī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Morini,* a tribe in the north of Gaul.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

Moritasgus, ī, m., a chief of the Senones.

moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, wait, stay, linger ; hinder, retard.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mortuus, a, um, from **morior.**

mōs, mōris, m., *manner, custom, way ;* in plur., *habits, character.*

Mosa, ae, m., *the Meuse,* a river in north-eastern Gaul.

mōtus, ūs, m., *movement, motion, change ; uprising, disturbance, revolt.*

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move ; influence.*

muli-er, -eris, f., *woman.*

mūliō, -ōnis, m., *muleteer, mule-driver.*

multitū-dō, -dinis, f., *large number, great number, large body, multitude ; number, amount ; the common people.*

multō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fine ; deprive.*

multum, adv. (**plūs, plūrimum**), *much, often, very.*

multus, a, um (**plūs, plūrimus**), *much ;* in plur., *many ;* w. **dies** or **nox,** *far advanced ;* **multo** as adv., *much, far.*

mūlus, ī, m., *mule.*

Mūnātius, ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mundus, ī, m., *world, universe.*

mūnīmentum, ī, n., *fortification, defence.*

mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fortify, protect, defend, secure ;* w. **iter,** *build, make.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification, construction ; fortified works, defences.*

mūn-us, -eris, n., *duty, task, service ; gift, present.*

mūrālis, e, *of a wall, used for* or *from walls, mural.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

mūsculus, ī, m., *shed, penthouse, covered hut.*

mutilus, a, um, *maimed, broken.*

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, *change.*

N.

nactus, a, um, from **nanciscor.**

nam, conj., *for, now.*

Nammēius, ī, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.

Namnetes, um, m. plur., *the Namnetes,* a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

namque, conj., *for.*

nanciscor, ī, nactus or **nanctus sum,** *find, get, come upon, obtain, secure.*

Nantuātes, um, m. plur., *the Nantuates,* a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Narbō, ōnis, f., a town in the southern part of the province.

nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born, be sprung from, arise, be bred;* of metals, *be found.*

Nasua, ae, m., a leader of the Suebi.

nātālis, e, *of birth;* **dies natalis,** *birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *race, people, tribe, nation.*

nātīvus, a, um, *natural.*

nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character.*

nātus, a, um, from **nascor.**

nātus, ūs, m., *birth.*

nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

nauticus, a, um, *naval, nautical.*

nāvālis, e, *naval, of ships.*

nāvicula, ae, f., *small boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *sailing, navigation, voyage.*

nāvigium, ī, n., *ship, vessel.*

nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sail.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat, vessel;* **navis longa,** *warship;* **navis oneraria,** *transport.*

nāvō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do energetically;* **operam navare,** *do one's best* or *utmost.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest;* w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., *not to;* w. verbs of hindering, *from;* w. verbs of fearing, *that, lest;* w. subj. standing for imperative, *not.*

nē, adv., *not;* **ne..quidem,** *not even.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions, *whether;* **necne,** *or not.*

nec, see **neque.**

necessārius, a, um, *necessary, urgent, pressing; critical;* m. as subst., *connection, intimate friend, relative;* **necessāriō,** abl. as adv., *of necessity, unavoidably.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable;* **necesse est,** often to be rendered by *must, can but.*

necessitās, -tātis, f., *necessity, need; urgency, exigency; interest.*

necessitū-dō, -dinis, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*

necne, conj., *or not.*

necō, āre, āvī, ātum, *kill, put to death.*

necubi, conj., *that nowhere.*

nefārius, a, um, *wicked, atrocious, infamous.*

nefās, n. indecl., *wrong, crime.*

neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *neglect, slight, disregard; overlook, be indifferent to.*

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deny, say ..not; refuse.*

negōtior, ārī, ātus sum, *do business, carry on business.*

negōtium, ī, n., *business, enterprise; task, trouble, difficulty;* **dare negotium,** *instruct.*

Nemetes, um, m. plur., *the Nemetes,* a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō (nēminis), m., gen. and abl. not in use, *no one, nobody.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means.*

neque, or sometimes **nec** before consonants. adv. and conj., *and not, nor;* when repeated, *neither ..nor.*

nēquīquam or **nēquidquam,** adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

Nervicus, a, um, *of* or *with the Nervii.*

Nervius, a, um, *Nervian, of the Nervii.*

Nerviī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Nervii,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

nervus, ī, m., *sinew; strength, vigor, power.*

neu, see **neve.**

neuter, tra, trum, *neither;* in plur., *neither side.*

nēve or **neu,** *or not, and that not, and not to, nor.*

nex, necis, f., *death.*

nihil, n. indecl. *nothing;* acc. as adv., *not at all.*

nihilum, ī, n., *nothing;* **nihilo,** abl. as adv., *none, no,* w. comparatives.

nimis, adv., *too.*

nimius, a, um, *excessive, too great.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

Nitiobroges, um, m. plur., *the Nitiobroges,* a tribe on the Garonne.

nītor, ī, nīsus and **nīxus sum,** *rely on,* w. abl.; *strive, endeavor.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

nōbilis, e, *noble, of high birth; well-known;* m. as subst., *a noble.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, f., *high birth; the nobility, the nobles.*

noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *harm, injure, do harm to, molest,* w. dat.; part. **nocēns, -entis,** *guilty.*

noctū, abl. as adv., *by night.*

nocturnus, a, um, *by night, in the night, nightly.*

nōdus, ī, m., *joint.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, not wish;* in imperative, *do not.*

nōmen, -minis, n., *name; reputation, prestige;* in abl., *under the name* or *pretence of, as, on account.*

nōminātim, adv., *by name.*

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *name, call, mention.*

nōn, adv., *not, no.*

nōnāgintā, *ninety.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnnihil, adv., *somewhat.*

nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*

nōnnunquam, adv., *sometimes.*

nōnus, a, um, *ninth.*

Nōrēia, ae, f., chief town of the Norici.

Nōricus, a, um, *Norican, of the Norici,* a tribe living inland north of the Adriatic.

nōs, plur. of **ego.**

nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn, become acquainted with;* in perf., *know;* part. **nōtus, a, um,** *known, well-known, familiar.*

noster, tra, trum, *our;* m. plur. as subst., *our men, troops* or *forces.*

nōtitia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance with.*

novem, *nine.*

Noviodūnum, ī, n., (1) a town of the Suessiones; (2) a town of the Aedui; (3) a town of the Bituriges.

novitās, -tātis, f., *novelty, strangeness.*

novus, a, um, *new, fresh;* in superlative, *latest, last, rear;* **novae res,** *political change, change of government, revolution.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

noxa, ae, f., *crime, offense.*

nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *marry.*

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bare, expose; strip, clear.*

nūdus, a, um, *uncovered, naked, unprotected, bare.*

nūllus, a, um, *no, none;* in gen. dat. and abl. supplies cases of **nemo,** *no one.*

num, interrogative particle expecting negative answer, not translated.

nūmen, -minis, n., *divinity, divine power.*

numerus, ī, m., *number; amount; account;* **in numero,** *in the light, as.*

Numida, ae, m., *Numidian,* from the north coast of Africa.

nummus, ī, m., *coin, money.*

numquam, adv., *never*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nunquam, adv., *never.*

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, report, bring word, tell.*

nūntius, ī, m., *messenger; news, report, message, tidings.*

nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*

nusquam, adv., *nowhere.*

nūtus, ūs, m., *nod, beck; gestures, signs.*

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of, for;* **quam ob rem,** *why.*

obaerātus, a, um, *indebted;* m. as subst., *debtor.*

ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *throw out, carry.*

ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *attend to.*

obitus, ūs, m., *destruction.*

ob-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *place in the way, throw up, set, oppose; expose;* pass., *lie opposite, be in the way.*

oblātus, a, um, from **offero.**

oblīquē, adv., *obliquely.*

oblīquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique.*

ob-līvīscor, ī, -lītus sum, *forget,* w. gen.

obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *entreat, beseech.*

obsequentia, ae, f., *compliance, regard.*

observo, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep, observe, regard, follow; watch, note.*

ob-ses, -sidis, m., *hostage.*

obsessiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade.*

ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege, blockade, beset.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade; pressure.*

obsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seal.*

ob-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, withstand,* w. dat.

obstinātē, adv., *steadily, firmly, persistently.*

ob-stringō, ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *bind, put under obligation.*

ob-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *barricade, close.*

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *submit to, obey,* w. dat.

obtestor, ārī, ātus sum, *implore, call upon.*

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold, possess, occupy, maintain.*

obtulī, from **offero.**

ob-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *fall to, be assigned to; encounter.*

obviam, adv., *in the way, to meet,* w. dat.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, time; surprise.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting;* **solis occasus,** *sunset, the west.*

oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *set; fall, be slain.*

oc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *slay, kill.*

occultātiō, -ōnis, f., *concealment.*

occultē, adv., *secretly.*

occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hide, conceal.*

occultus, a, um, *concealed, hidden, secret;* **in** or **ex occulto,** *in secret.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation.*

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize, get possession of; occupy, engage; cover.*

oc-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *fall in with, meet, come upon, find; resist; provide for; occur.*

occursō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush upon, charge.*

Ōceanus, ī, m., (often with **mare**), *the Ocean.*

Ocelum, ī, n., a town on the eastern side of the Alps.

ōcius, adv., *quickly, swiftly.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred.*

octo, *eight.*

octōdecim, *eighteen.*

Octodūrus, ī, m., a town of the Veragri, in the Alps.

octōgintā, *eighty.*

octōnī, ae, a, *eight at a time, eight each, eight.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ŏdī, īsse, perf. w. pres. meaning, *hate.*

odium, ī, n., *hatred.*

of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *hurt, wound; cause harm* or *mishap.*

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *wounding, hurting.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *present, offer, hold out, give, afford, render; put in one's way* or *power.*

officium, ī, n., *service, duty, allegiance.*

Ollovicō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Nitiobroges.

o-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *neglect, give up, leave; throw away.*

omnīnō, adv., *altogether, in all;* w. negatives, *at all;* w. numerals, *only.*

omnis, e, *all, every, whole.*

onerārius, a, um, *for burdens;* **navis oneraria,** *a transport.*

onerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *load.*

on-us, -eris, n., *burden, weight, bulk; cargo, freight.*

opera, ae, f., *work, exertion; pains, attention; services, aid, agency;* **operam dare,** *take pains, see to it.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, impression, idea; expectation, anticipation; reputation.*

oportet, ēre, oportuit, impersonal verb, *it behoves, it is necessary;* render freely by *ought.*

oppidānus, a, um, *of a town*· m. plur. as subst., *townspeople.*

oppidum, ī, n., *town.*

op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *oppose;* pass., *lie in the way.*

opportūnē, *opportunely, conveniently.*

opportūnitās, -tātis, f., *fitness; convenience, suitable* or *favorable nature, convenient opportunity, advantage.*

opportūnus, a, um, *opportune, convenient, advantageous.*

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *overwhelm, crush, surprise; burden, weigh down.*

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault, attack; mode of attack.*

oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, assault, storm.*

(ops), opis, f., *help, aid;* in plur., *resources, power, strength.*

optimē, adv., superlative of **bene,** *well, excellently.*

optimus, a, um, superlative of **bonus,** *best, very good, most excellent.*

optō, āre, āvī, ātum, *desire;* perf. part. as adj., **optātus, a, um,** *desirable, acceptable.*

op-us, -eris, n., *work, fortification, fortifying, structure; trade, handicraft;* **opere w. munitus,** *by art;* **quanto opere,** *how much, how greatly, as much as;* **tanto opere,** *so much, so earnestly, so vigorously;* **magno opere,** see **magnopere.**

opus, n. indecl., *need, necessity;* **opus est,** *it is necessary, there is need.*

ōra, ae, f., *shore, coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, address, words, statement, appeal.*

ōrātor, -tōris, m., *ambassador.*

orbis, is, f., *circle;* **orbis terrarum,** *the whole world.*

Orcynia, ae, f., a name given by Greek writers to the Hercynian forest.

ōr-dō, -dinis, m., *rank, row, course, tier; grade, class; arrangement, order.*

Orgetor-īx, -īgis, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.

orior, īrī, ortus sum, *rise, arise, spring, be born; spring up, begin, start;* part. **oriēns, -entis,** as adj., *rising;* **oriens sol,** *sunrise, the east.*

ōrnāmentum, ī, n., *ornament, honor.*

ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *adorn, distinguish; supply, equip, furnish.*

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pray, beg, entreat.*

ortus, a, um, from **orior.**

ortus, ūs, m., *rising.*

ōs, ōris, n., *face, mouth.*

Osismī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Osismi,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *show, point out, explain, declare, state; reveal, unmask, display.*

ostentātiō, -ōnis, f., *show, display; boastfulness, pride; pretence, deception.*

ostentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *show, display, exhibit, parade.*

ōtium, ī, n., *rest, leisure, quiet.*

ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*

P.

P., an abbreviation for **Publius.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., *foraging.*

pābulātor, -tōris, m., *forager.*

pābulor, ārī, ātus sum, *forage.*

pābulum, ī, n., *fodder, forage.*

pācō, āre, āvī, ātum, *subdue, reduce;* part. **pācātus, a, um,** as adj., *peaceful, quiet.*

pactum, ī, n., *manner, way;* **quo pacto,** *how.*

Padus, ī, m., *the Po,* a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).

Paemānī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Paemani,* a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

paene, adv., *almost.*

paenit-et, ēre, -uit, impersonal, w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, render by *be sorry, regret.*

pāgus, ī, m., *district, canton.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, ae, f., *palm, hand.*

pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp, fen.*

palūster, tris, tre, *marshy.*

pandō, ere, pandī, passum, *spread out, outstretch;* in pass. w. **capillus,** *be dishevelled.*

pār, paris, *equal, like, the same: a match.*

parcē, adv., *sparingly.*

parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum or **parcitum,** *spare,* w. dat.; *be economical.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*

parentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avenge,* w. dat.

pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, *obey, submit,* w. dat.

pariō, ere, peperī, partum, *get, acquire, secure, win.*

Parīsiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Parisii,* a tribe in northern Gaul on the Seine.

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare, get ready, arrange; procure, get, acquire;* part. **parātus, a, um,** as adj., *ready, prepared.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share; quarter, direction, side; party; way, point, respect.*

partim, adv., *partly;* when repeated, often rendered by *some... others.*

partior, īrī, ītus sum, *divide.*

partus, a, um, from **pario.**

parum, adv., (**minus, mininē**), *little, too little, not much.*

parvulus, a, um, *very small, slight, trifling, insignificant;* **ab parvulis,** *from early childhood.*

parvus, a, um, (**minor, minimus**), *small, trifling.*

passim, adv., *in all directions.*

passus, a, um, from **pando** or from **patior.**

passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet); one thousand paces make one mile.

pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *open, throw open.*

pate-fīō, -fierī, -factus sum, pass. of **patefacio.**

pateō, ēre, uī, *extend, spread out; be open, stand open;* part. **patēns -entis,** as adj., *open, exposed.*

pater, -tris, m., *father;* in plur., *forefathers, ancestors.*

patienter, adv., *patiently.*

patientia, ae, f., *endurance, patience, forbearance.*

patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer, allow, permit; bear, endure, withstand.*

patrius, a, um, *of one's fathers, ancestral.*

patrōnus, ī, m., *patron, lord.*

patruus, ī, m., *uncle (on father's side).*

paucī, ae, a (sing. not in Caesar), *few, but few.*

paucitās, -tātis, f., *small number.*

paulātim, adv., *gradually, by degrees; gently.*

paulisper, adv., *for a short time.*

paulō, adv., *a little, slightly, somewhat.*

paululum, adv., *very slightly, a very little.*

paulum, adv., *a little.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

peccō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do wrong, commit a wrong.*

pect-us, -oris, n., *breast.*

pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*

pec-us, -oris, n., *cattle; flesh, meat.*

pedālis, e, *measuring a foot, a foot thick.*

ped-es, -itis, m., *foot-soldier;* in plur., *infantry.*

pedester, tris, tre, *on foot, on* or *by land; of infantry.*

peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*

Pedius, ī, m., *Quintus Pedius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

pējor, pējus, (comparative of **malus**), *worse.*

pellis, is, f., *skin, hide;* **sub pellibus,** *in tents.*

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, dislodge, repulse, defeat, rout.*

pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum, *weigh; pay.*

penes, prep. w. acc., *in the power* or *hands of.*

penitus, adv., *completely, utterly.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of;* **per se,** *by* or *in one's self, so far as (he was) concerned.*

per-agō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *finish, bring to an end.*

perangustus, a, um, *very narrow.*

per-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *get, acquire; hear, hear of, learn; gain, reap.*

percontātiō, -ōnis, f., *inquiry.*

per-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *run along.*

per-cutiō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, *hit, strike down.*

per-discō, ere, -didicī, *learn thoroughly, master.*

per-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *ruin;* part. **perditus, a, um,** as adj., *abandoned, desperate.*

per-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *carry* or *bring over, bring; prolong; carry, make.*

perendinus, a, um, *after to-morrow.*

per-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī,) -itum *perish, be killed.*

perequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ride through, ride about.*

perexiguus, a, um, *very small.*

perfacilis, e, *very easy.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *endure, bear, submit to; carry, convey, report.*

per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *carry out, finish, accomplish, bring about; build, make.*

perfidia, ae, f., *faithlessness, treachery.*

per-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break through.*

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*

per-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, *flee, escape; desert.*

perfugium, ī, n., *refuge, place of refuge.*

per-gō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *proceed, advance.*

perīclitor, ārī, ātus sum, *run risk, be exposed to danger; try, make a test.*

perīculōsus, a, um, *dangerous.*

perīculum, ī, n., *danger, risk; test, trial, attempt.*

perītus, a, um, *skilled, experienced, familiar,* w. gen.

perlātus, a, um, from **perfero.**

per-legō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *read through.*

per-luō, ere, -luī, -lūtum, *wash;* in pass., *bathe.*

permāgnus, a, um, *very large.*

per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *continue, remain, persist, abide.*

per-misceō, ēre, -miscuī, -mixtum (-mistum), *mix, mingle.*

per-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *give up, yield, entrust, leave; allow, grant permission, permit.*

per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, influence, induce; arouse, alarm, excite.*

per-mulceō, ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *soothe, calm, quiet.*

perniciēs, ēī, f., *destruction.*

perpaucī, ae, a, *very few.*

perpendiculum, ī, n., *plumb-line.*

per-petior, ī, -pessus sum, *endure, suffer.*

perpetuus, a, um, *continuous, unbroken, solid; perpetual, lasting; whole, entire; incessant;* **in perpetuum,** *for ever:* abl. as adv., **perpetuō,** *for ever, constantly, uninterruptedly.*

per-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *inquire into* or *about.*

per-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through, break, force a way* or *passage* or *entrance.*

per-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *write out, report, describe fully.*

per-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *pursue, follow up; avenge; attack.*

persevērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *persist.*

per-solvō, ere, -solvī, -solūtum, *pay.*

per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.*

per-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, *persist, abide, be firm.*

per-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade, induce, prevail on, convince,* w. dat.

perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *terrify, frighten, alarm;* in pass., *be panic-stricken; dismay, demoralize.*

per-timēscō, ere, -timuī, *fear greatly, be much afraid.*

pertinācia, ae, f., *obstinacy.*

per-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *extend, reach, stretch; lead, tend, have a tendency; concern, relate, belong to.*

pertulī, from **perfero.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *alarm, confusion, panic.*

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *throw into confusion, disconcert, disturb, alarm;* in pass., *be at a loss.*

pervagor, ārī, ātus sum, *roam about.*

per-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come, reach, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot:* **pedibus,** *on foot, by land:* **pedem referre,** *to fall back, retire, retreat.*

pet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *ask, request: seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.*

Petrocoriī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Petrocorii,* a tribe in south-western Gaul on the Garonne.

Petrōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Petronius,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

Petrosidius, ī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius,* the standard-bearer of one of Caesar's legions.

phal-anx, -angis, f., *phalanx, column, compact body.*

Pictones, um, m. plur., *the Pictones,* a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

pietās, -tātis, f., *duty* or *devotion (to country), patriotism.*

pīlum, ī, n., *javelin, spear.*

pīlus, ī, m., a *maniple* or *division* of a Roman legion; the senior centurion of the first maniple was *chief centurion* of the legion.

pinna, ae, f., *parapet, battlement.*

Pīrūstae, ārum, m. plur., *the Pirustae,* a tribe in Illyricum.

piscis, is, m., *fish.*

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso,* a Roman *legatus,* slain by the Tigurini, B.C. 107; 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso,* grandson of the above, consul B.C. 58, and Caesar's father-in-law; 3. *Marcus Piso,* consul B.C. 61; 4. an Aquitanian of rank.

pix, picis, f., *pitch.*

placeō, ēre, uī, itum, *please,* w. dat.; **placet,** impersonal, *it is decided, (one) resolves.*

placidē, adv., *calmly, quietly.*

plācō, āre, āvī, ātum, *appease.*

Plancus, ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

plānē, adv., *clearly; quite, altogether.*

plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain, level ground.*

plānus, a, um, *level, flat.*

plēbēs, or **plēbs, plēbis,** f., *the common people.*

plēnē, adv., *entirely, completely.*

plēnus, a, um, *full, complete.*

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, *the most, the majority, the greater number.*

plērumque, adv., *generally, usually, in most cases.*

Pleumoxiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Pleumoxii,* a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

plumbum, ī, n., *lead;* **plumbum album,** *tin.*

plūrimum, adv., *most, very much.*

plūrimus, a, um, superlative of **multus,** *most, very much, very many.*

plūs, plūris, comparative of **multus,** *more;* in plur., *several, many.*

pluteus, ī, m., *screen, moveable breastwork, defence.*

pōculum, ī, n., *drinking-cup.*

poena, ae, f., *penalty, punishment; satisfaction.*

poenitet, see **paenitet.**

poll-ex, -icis, m., *thumb.*

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise, make a promise.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, f., *promise, offer.*

Pompēius, ī, m., *Pompey,* 1. *Cneius Pompeius,* consul B.C. 55, proconsul of Spain B.C. 54–50. 2. *Cneius Pompeius,* an interpreter with the Roman army.

pond-us, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place, set, station;* w. **castra,** *pitch; rest, base, make dependent; lay down;* in pass., *be situated, be dependent.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

poposcī, from **posco.**

populātiō, -ōnis, f., *ravaging, raid.*

populor, ārī, ātus sum, *ravage, lay waste, devastate.*

populus, ī, m., *people, nation.*

por-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *stretch forward;* part. **porrēctus, a, um,** as adj., *extended.*

porrō, adv., *further, moreover.*

porta, ae, f., *gate.*

portō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry, bring, convey.*

portōrium, ī, n., *customs duty, toll, tax.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, ere, poposcī, *ask for, demand.*

positus, a, um, from **pono.**

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession, occupation;* in plur., *lands.*

pos-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *possess, hold.*

pos-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *seize, occupy.*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can, be possible; be powerful* or *strong, have weight* or *influence.*

post, 1. adv., *afterwards, after;* 2. prep. w. acc., *after, behind.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards; hereafter.*

posteāquam, conj., *after, when.*

posterus, a, um, *next, following;* m. plur. as subst., *descendants, posterity.*

post-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *postpone, set aside, disregard.*

postquam, conj., *after, when.*

postrēmō, adv., *finally, lastly, at last.*

postrīdiē, adv., *the next day, on the morrow.*

postulātum, ī, n., *demand.*

postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, demand, require.*

potēns, entis, partic. of **possum,** *powerful, influential.*

potentātus, ūs, m., *supremacy, chief power, leading position.*

potentia, ae, f., *power.*

potestās, -tātis, f., *power, control; opportunity, chance, permission.*

potior, īrī, ītus sum, *get control* or *possession of, gain, obtain,* w. abl. or gen.

potius, comparative adv., *rather, sooner, more.*

potuī, from **possum.**

prae, prep. w. abl., *in comparison with; on account of, for.*

praeacūtus, a, um, *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, ēre, uī, itum, *furnish, afford, give, cause.*

prae-caveō, ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *take precautions, be on one's guard.*

prae-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *excel, surpass.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, *headlong; abrupt, steep.*

praeceptum, ī, n., *order, instructions, injunction.*

prae-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *order, instruct, give instructions; anticipate.*

praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fling, hurl.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praecipuus, a, um, *special, particular.*

prae-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *close, barricade.*

praecō, -ōnis, m., *herald.*

Praecōnīnus, ī, m., *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

prae-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *hasten on before; anticipate.*

praeda, ae, f., *plunder, booty.*

praedicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, declare, assert, boast.*

praedor, ārī, ātus sum, *plunder, get plunder, pillage.*

prae-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *construct in front, carry out.*

praefectus, a, um, from **praeficio.**

praefectus, ī, m., *officer, commander* (especially of cavalry), *prefect.*

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *place before, prefer, esteem more highly;* **se praeferre,** *to surpass, outdo.*

prae-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put* or *set over, place in command of, give charge of,* w. acc. and dat.

prae-figō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fix before, place at the edge.*

praemet-uō, ere, -uī, *be anxious, fear.*

prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in advance, send on before, send forward.*

praemium, ī, n., *reward, prize.*

praeoccupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize beforehand, seize, take possession of.*

praeoptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prefer.*

praeparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare* or *get ready beforehand.*

prae-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place* or *set over, put in command of,* w. acc. and dat.

prae-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break off, snap;* part. **praeruptus, a, um,** as adj., *abrupt, precipitous.*

prae-saepiō, īre, -saepsī, -saeptum, *block up, barricade.*

prae-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *prescribe, direct, dictate.*

praescrīptum, ī, n., *bidding, dictation.*

praesēns, -entis, partic. of **praesum,** *present, instant, in person.*

praesentia, ae, f., *the present; presence;* **in praesentia,** *for the moment, at the time.*

prae-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *learn of* or *find out beforehand, have foresight.*

praesertim, adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, ī, n., *guard, garrison, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.*

praestō, adv., *at hand;* **praesto esse,** *to meet.*

prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitum or **-stātum,** *exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior,* w. dat.; **praestat,** impersonal, *it is better.*

prae-sum, esse, -fuī, *be over, be at head of, have command of; be in charge of, hold;* w. dat.

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, past; except, besides; contrary to.*

praetereā, adv., *besides, moreover.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *pass over, pass by;* part. as adj., **praeteritus, a, um,** *past;* n. plur. as subst., *the past.*

praeter-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let go by, let pass, lose; pass over, neglect.*

praeterquam, adv., *except.*

praetor, -tōris, m., *commander; praetor,* a Roman magistrate.

praetōrius, a, um, *of a commander* or *praetor;* **praetoria cohors,** *body-guard.*

prae-ūrō, ere, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn at the end* or *point.*

prae-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, *anticipate, prevent,* w. dat.

prāvus, a, um, *poor, wretched; wicked, vicious, perverse.*

precēs, um, f. (sing. defective and not found in Caesar), *prayers, entreaties.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press, press hard; crowd; harass, oppress.*

prendō, ere, prendī, prēnsum, *seize, grasp.*

pretium, ī, n., *price.*

(**prex**), **precis,** f., see **preces.**

prīdiē, adv., *the day before, on the previous day.*

prīmipīlus, ī, m., *chief centurion;* see **pilus.**

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

prīmum, adv., *first, in the first place;* **cum** or **ubi primum,** *as soon as;* **quam primum,** *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, superlative of **prior,** *first, foremost, in the van;* **in primis,** *especially.*

prīn-ceps, -cipis, *first, chief, leading;* m. as subst., *leading man, leader, chief.*

prīncipātus, ūs, m., *leadership chief position, first place, lead.*

prior, ius, comparative, *former, earlier; in front; first* (of two).

prīstinus, a, um, *former, previous; of former days, old-time.*

prius, comparative adv., *earlier, sooner;* **prius...quam,** *before,* w. negatives *until.*

priusquam, conj., *before.*

prīvātim, adv., *privately, as individuals, as private persons.*

prīvātus, a, um, *private, individual, personal;* m. as subst., *a private person, individual.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in return for; in accordance with, according to; in proportion to, in comparison with; considering, in view of; as far as concerned.*

probō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prove; test, put to the test: approve of, favor, recognize, think highly of.*

prō-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance.*

Procillus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Procil'us*, a Romanized Gaul of rank.

prōclīnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bend forward;* **res proclinata,** *a falling cause.*

prōcōn-sul, -sulis, m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul in charge of a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance.*

prō-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, *bend* or *slope forward, incline; lie down, fall, sink, lodge.*

prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, have charge of.*

prō-currō, ere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursum, *run* or *rush forward, rush out, charge.*

prōd-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go forth, come out, advance.*

prōdesse, from **prosum.**

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treachery, treason.*

prōditor, -tōris, m., *traitor.*

prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give forth, publish, report; hand down, bequeath, transmit; betray.*

prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth* or *out, bring out; prolong, protract.*

proelior, ārī, ātus sum, *fight.*

proelium, ī, n., *battle, engagement, fighting, fight.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

profectus, a, um, from **proficiscor.**

prōfectus, a, um, from **proficio.**

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring forth, bring out.*

prō-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *gain advantage, gain, effect; advance.*

pro-ficīscor, ī, -fectus sum, *set out, depart, start, go, proceed.*

pro-fiteor, ērī, -fessus sum, *declare, state openly, offer, profess, avow.*

prōflīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rout, put to flight.*

prō-fluō, ere, -flūxī, *flow forth, rise.*

pro-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, a, um, *sprung, descended;* m. as subst., *descendant.*

prō-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go forward, come forth, advance, proceed, go.*

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain, keep, prevent, hold, hinder, cut off; protect.*

proinde, adv., *therefore.*

prō-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down* or *away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.*

prōlātus, a, um, from **profero.**

prōmineō, ere, uī, *lean forward.*

prōmiscuē, adv., *promiscuously, indiscriminately.*

prō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let grow;* part. **prōmissus, a, um,** as adj., *long, flowing.*

prōmontōrium, ī, n., *headland, promontory.*

prō-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move forward, advance.*

prōmptus, a, um, *ready, alert.*

prōnē, adv., *bending forward*

prōnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *state publicly, declare, tell, announce: give notice, give orders, make proclamation.*

prope, adv. (**propius, proximē**) *near; nearly, almost;* also a prep. w. acc., *near.*

prō-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum *drive off, repel, dislodge, defeat.*

properō, āre, āvī, ātum, *haste*

propinquitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood, vicinity, nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.*

propinquus, a, um, *near, close: related;* m. as subst., *relative, kinsman.*

propior, ius, comparative, *nearer;* see **proximus.**

propius, adv., see **prope.**

prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place* or *set before; display; set forth, explain, state, disclose; offer, present; promise, propose.*

proprius, a, um, *one's own, private, particular; belonging to, peculiar to;* n. as subst., *a mark, a sign.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of.*

propterea, adv., *on this account, for this reason;* **propterea quod,** *because.*

prōpūgnātor, -tōris, m., *defender.*

prōpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *defend, rush out to fight.*

prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off, repel.*

prōra, ae, f., *prow, bow.*

prō-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, *pull down, demolish.*

prō-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *pursue, follow: accompany, escort; dismiss, address.*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view, outlook, sight.*

prō-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *provide for, take precautions, take care.*

prō-sternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, *cast down, destroy.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *prove an advantage, be of service.*

prō-tegō, ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover, protect.*

prōterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten away, drive off.*

prōtinus, adv., *at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off (in confusion), dislodge.*

prō-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry forward;* in pass., *be carried, be driven, sail.*

prō-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *grow up, come up, yield.*

prōventus, ūs, m., *outcome, issue, result.*

prō-videō, ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *foresee, have foresight; provide for, secure, procure, make provision; take care, see, arrange.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province;* especially *'the province'* of Gallia Transalpina.

prōvinciālis, e, *of the province.*

prōvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush forth, rush out.*

proximē, adv., superlative of **prope,** *last, most recently, very lately.*

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next; last, recent;* see **propior.**

prūdentia, ae, f., *foresight, prudence, discretion.*

Ptianiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ptianii,* a tribe of Aquitania.

pūb-ēs, -eris, *adult, full-grown;* m. as subst., *adult, full-grown man.*

pūblicē, adv., *publicly, officially, in the name of the state, as a state*

pūblicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *confiscate.*

pūblicus, a, um, *public, official, of the state* or *people;* **in publicum** or **in publico,** *in public;* **res publica,** see **respublica.**

Pūblius, ī, m., *Publius,* a Roman praenomen.

pudet, ēre, puduit, *it shames,* w. acc. of person; render freely, *(one) is ashamed.*

pudor, -ōris, m., *shame, sense of shame.*

puer, erī, m., *boy, child;* **a pueris,** *from childhood.*

puerīlis, e, *of a child, of boyhood.*

pūgna, ae, f., *fight, fighting, battle.*

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight;* in pass., **pugnātur,** impersonally, *the battle goes on,* freely *(they) fight.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful, fine.*

Puliō, -ōnis, m., *Titus Pulio,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, a, um, from **pello.**

pulsus, ūs, m., *stroke, propulsion.*

pulv-is, -eris, m., *dust, cloud of dust.*

puppis, is, f., *stern.*

pūrgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *excuse, clear, free from blame.*

putō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, believe, hold, consider, suppose.*

Pȳrēnaeus, a, um, w. **montes,** *the Pyrenees,* between Gaul and Spain.

Q.

Q., an abbreviation for **Quintus.**

quā, adv., *where, at which point, by which road.*

quadrāgēnī, ae, a, *forty each, forty.*

quadrāgintā, *forty.*

quadringentī, ae, a, *four hundred.*

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask, enquire, make enquiry; seek, look for.*

quaestiō, -ōnis, f., *investigation, enquiry, examination.*

quaestor, -tōris, m., *quaestor,* the officer in charge of the finances of a province or army.

quaestus, ūs, m., *gain, gaining, acquisition.*

quālis, e, *of what sort, what.*

quam, adv., *how;* w. comparatives, *than;* w. superlatives, *as....as possible.*

quamdiū, adv., *as long as.*

quamobrem, adv., *why, wherefore.*

quamvīs, adv., *however.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, at times, ever.*

quantus, a, um, *how great, how much; as great as, as much as, as;* **quanto...tanto,** *by how much...by so much, the...the.*

quan-tusvīs, -tavis, -tumvīs, *however great, no matter how great.*

quārē, adv., *wherefore, why, for which, on account of which.*

quārtus, a, um, *fourth*

quasī, conj., *as if.*

quattuor or **quatuor,** *four.*

quattuordecim, *fourteen.*

-que, enclitic conjunction, *and.*

quemadmodum, adv., *how, as.*

queror, ī, questus sum, *complain, complain of; lament, bewail.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; he who;* as coordinating relative, *this, he;* after **idem,** *as.*

quī, quae, quod, interrogative adj., *what, which.*

quī, qua, quod, indefinite adj. or rarely pron., *some, any; anyone.*

quicquam, from **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever, whichever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam,** *a certain one, a certain, one, a sort of.*

quidem, adv., *certainly, at least;* **ne...quidem,** *not even.*

qui-ēs, -ētis, f., *rest.*

quiētus, a, um, *quiet, at rest, settled, peaceable.*

quīn, conj., *but that, that, so that not, as not;* often best rendered by *from,* w. verbal in *-ing.*

quīn, adv., *nay, in fact.*

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *who, which, what.*

quīnc-ūnx, -ūncis, f., *quincunx;* **in quincuncem,** *in the form of a quincunx.*

quīndecim, *fifteen.*

quīngentī, ae, a, *five hundred.*

quīnī, ae, a, *five each, five at a time, five.*

quīnquāgintā, *fifty.*

quīnque, *five.*

quīntus, a, um, *fifth.*

Quīntus, ī, m., *Quintus,* a Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who, what;* n. **quid** as adv., *why.*

quis, qua, quid, indefinite pron., *any one, anything;* n. **quid** as adv., *in any respect, at all.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam or **quidpiam,** *any one, any.*

quisquam, quidquam or **quicquam,** *any one, anything, any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque,** *each, each one;* w. superlatives freely rendered by *all.*

quisquis (quaeque), quidquid or **quicquid,** *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or **quodvīs,** *any one, any, any whatever.*

quō, abl. of **qui,** as conj., *that, in order that; because.*

quō, abl. of **qui,** as adv., *by how much,* w. comparatives *the;* for **quo minus** see **quominus.**

quō, adv., 1. interrog., *whither, where.* 2. relative, *whither, where, to, at* or *into which.* 3. indefinite, *somewhere, anywhere.*

quoad, conj., *until, as long as.*

quod, conj., *because, that, in that; as for the fact that, as to, as for; the fact that;* **quod si,** *but if, if therefore.*

quōminus or **quō minus,** conj., *so that not;* freely rendered by *from;* w. **recuso,** *to.*

quoniam, conj., *since, as, whereas.*

quoque, conj., *also, too, as well.*

quōqueversus (um), or **quōquōversus (um),** adv., *in every direction.*

quot, indeclin., *how many.*

quotannīs, adv., *yearly, every year.*

quotīdiānus, a, um, see **cotidianus.**

quotīdiē, see **cotidie.**

quotiēs, adv., *how often; as often as.*

quum, conj., see **cum.**

R.

rād-īx, -īcis, m., *root* (of tree); *spur, base, foot* (of mountain).

rā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, *shave.*

rāmus, ī, m., *branch, bough.*

rapiditās, -tātis, f., *swiftness.*

rapīna, ae, f., *plundering.*

rārus, a, um, *scattered, few, in detached groups, in small bodies.*

rāsus, a, um, from **rado.**

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *calculation, account, list; method, system, plan, way; theory, science; regard, consideration, thought; reason.*

ratis, is, f., *raft.*

Rauricī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Raurici,* a tribe on the Rhine near Switzerland.

rebelliō, -ōnis, f., *renewal of war.*

Rebilus, ī, m., *Caius Caninius Rebilus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

re-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *withdraw, retire.*

recēns, -entis, *new, recent, late; fresh.*

re-cēnseō, ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, *muster, review.*

receptāculum, ī, n., *refuge, retreat.*

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat.*

recessus, ūs, m., *retreat, opportunity to retreat.*

re-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *fall back, recoil, befall.*

reciperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recover, regain.*

re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *regain, get back; receive, admit;* **se recipere,** (1) *recover one's self, recover,* (2) *retreat, fall back, betake one's self, return.*

recitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *read out.*

reclīnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make to lean;* **se reclinare,** *to lean;* pass. part., **reclīnātus,** *leaning.*

rēctē, adv., *properly, rightly.*

rēctus, a, um, *straight.*

recuperō. āre, āvī, ātum, *regain, recover.*

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, object to, decline, spurn, repudiate.*

rēda, ae, f., *wagon.*

redāctus, a, um, from **redigo.**

red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, return, restore, render, grant, pay.*

redēmptus, a, um, from **redimo.**

red-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go back, come back, return ; decline ; be reduced ; depend on, be referred to.*

red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *reduce, render, make, bring.*

red-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *buy, purchase, obtain ; lease, farm.*

redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew, restore, revive.*

reditiō, -ōnis, f., *return, returning.*

reditus, ūs, m., *return, returning.*

Redones, um, m. plur., *the Redones,* a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back, move back.*

referō, referre, rettulī (or **retulī**), **relātum,** *bring back, carry back, bring ; report, announce, tell ; refer ;* **pedem referre,** *retreat, fall back ;* **gratiam referre,** *show gratitude, make return.*

re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *repair ; refresh, recruit.*

re-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break in, break open, break.*

re-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *retreat, flee back, escape,*

Rēgīnus, ī, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district, part, country ; direction, line.*

rēgius, a, um, *royal.*

rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rule, reign.*

rēgnum, ī, n., *royal power, sovereignty, kingdom.*

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule ; direct, control, manage.*

re-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *retreat.*

re-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw* or *hurl back, drive back, throw aside ; cast off, reject.*

re-languēscō, ere, -languī, *become weak, lose energy.*

relātus, a, um, from **refero.**

relēgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remove, banish.*

relīctus, a, um, from **relinquo.**

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious rite, observance* or *scruple : religion, religious matter ; superstitious beliefs* or *fancies.*

re-linquō, ere, -līquī, -līctum, *leave, leave behind ; abandon, give up ; give ; allow ;* in pass., *remain.*

reliquus, a, um, *remaining, other, left, else, further, future ;* generally to be rendered by *the rest of.*

re-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *remain, remain behind, stay.*

rēm-ex, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi,* a tribe in northern Gaul.

rēmigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *row.*

remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *move back, return.*

reminīscor, ī, *call to mind, remember.*

re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back, hurl back, give back ; relax, weaken, give up, lose ;* part. **remissus, a, um,** as adj., *mild, not severe.*

remollēscō, ere, *become weak* or *enervated.*

re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, send away ; withdraw, draw away ;* part. as adj., **remōtus, a, um,** *distant, remote.*

remūneror, ārī, ātus sum, *reward.*

Rēmus, ī, m., *a Reman, one of the Remi.*

rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew.*

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *report, bring back word; declare elected.*

re-pellō, ere, reppulī (or **re-pulī**), **-pulsum,** *drive back, defeat;* **ab spe repelli,** *to be disappointed in a hope.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, a, um, *sudden, hasty;* abl. **repentīnō** as adv., *suddenly.*

re-periō, ere, repperī, -pertum, *find, find out, discover; originate.*

re-petō, ere, -petīvī, -petītum, *demand, demand back.*

repl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *amply supply.*

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry back.*

reposcō, ere, *demand, require.*

repraesentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do at once.*

repre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *blame, censure, find fault with.*

re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check, stop.*

repudiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reject.*

repūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *resist, defend one's self; be an obstacle.*

repulsus, a, um, from **repello.**

re-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *require, demand; miss.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, object, interest, situation;* the context will generally suggest a more exact rendering.

resar-ciō, īre, -tum, *repair, make good.*

re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, *break down, tear down, destroy.*

re-scīscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *learn, find out.*

re-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *transfer, promote, enroll.*

reservō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep back, reserve, keep.*

re-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, *remain.*

re-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, *settle down, become calm.*

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, withstand, hold one's ground, make resistance,* w. dat.; part. **resistēns, -entis,** as adj., *firm, steadfast.*

re-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look back* or *behind; consider, have regard to.*

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, make answer, reply.*

respōnsum, ī, n., *answer, reply.*

rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, f., *state, public affairs* or *interests;* often written as two words.

re-spuō, ere, -spuī, *reject, spurn.*

re-stinguō, ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *extinguish.*

restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *restore, replace, rebuild, re-establish, renew.*

re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hold, restrain; keep, maintain, preserve; keep back.*

re-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *bring back (by force).*

re-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tear* or *wrest away, pull up.*

rever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum (chiefly in perf. tenses), *return, come back; turn back.*

rever-tor, ī, -sus sum (chiefly in pres. tenses), *return, come back.*

re-vinciō, īre, -vinxī, -vinctum, *bind fast, fasten, make fast, brace.*

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recall, call back; call away, entice.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

rhēnō, -ōnis, m., *reindeer.*

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

rīpa, ae, f., *bank.*

rīvus, ī, m., *brook, stream.*

rōb-ur, -oris, n., *oak.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, request;* w. **sacramento** *enlist.*

Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;* m. as subst., *a Roman.*

Roscius, ī, m., *Lucius Roscius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rōstrum, ī, n., *beak.*

rota, ae, f., *wheel.*

rubus, ī, m., *bramble.*

Rūfus, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rūmor, -ōris, n., *rumor, report.*

rūpēs, is, f., *rock, cliff.*

rūrsus, adv., *again, back again, in turn.*

Rutēnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ruteni,* a tribe in southern Gaul.

Rutilus, ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus,* one of Caesar's officers.

S.

Sabīnus, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sabis, is, m., *the Sabis,* now *Sambre,* a river in north-eastern Gaul.

sacer-dōs, -dōtis, m., *priest.*

sacrāmentum, ī, n., *military oath.*

sacrificium, ī, n., *sacrifice.*

saepe, adv. (**saepius, saepissimē**), *often.*

saepenumerō, adv., *often, frequently.*

saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*

saeviō, īre, īvī, ītum, *rage, be violent.*

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, ī, m., *archer.*

sagulum, ī, n., *(military) cloak.*

saltus, ūs, m., *defile, glen, pass.*

sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare, protection.*

Samarobrīva, ae, f., a town of the Ambiani, in northern Gaul.

sanciō, īre, sānxī, sānctum, *make a solemn agreement, ratify, enact;* part. **sanctus, a, um,** as adj., *sacred, holy, inviolable.*

sangu-is, -inis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, -tātis, f., *sound mind, sober mind, good sense.*

sānō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remedy, make good.*

Santones, um, or **Santonī, ōrum,** m. plur., *the Santones,* a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.

sānus, a, um, *sound, sane;* **pro sano,** *like a discreet man, sensibly, prudently.*

sap-iō, ere, -īvī, *be wise.*

sarcina, ae, f., in Caesar always in plur., *pack, (personal) baggage.*

sar-ciō, īre, -sī, -tum, *repair, make good.*

sarmentum, ī, n., *fagot.*

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably;* often as subst., *enough, sufficient.*

satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *do enough, do one's duty; make amends, satisfy, apologize.*

satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., *apology, excuse.*

saucius, a, um, *wounded.*

saxum, ī, n., *stone, rock.*

scāla, ae, f., *ladder.*

Scaldis, is, m., *the Scaldis,* now *Scheldt,* a river in north-eastern Gaul.

scapha, ae, f., *skiff, small boat.*

scelerātus, a, um, *wicked, villainous.*

scel-us, -eris, n., *crime.*

scienter, adv. (compar. **scientius**), *skilfully, cleverly.*

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance.*

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *tear down, break down.*

sciō, īre, īvī, ītum, *know.*

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., *scorpion,* a machine for hurling missiles.

scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write, state.*

scrobis, is, m., *ditch, trench.*

scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*

sēcius, see **secus.**

sec-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, *cut, reap.*

sēcrētō, adv., *privately.*

sectiō, -ōnis, f., *booty.*

sector, ārī, ātus sum, *pursue, follow after.*

sectūra, ae, f., *mine.*

secundum, prep. w. acc., *along, according to; besides; next to.*

secundus, a, um, *second; favorable, successful, prosperous;* **secundo flumine,** *down stream.*

secūris, is, f., *axe,* borne by lictors as a symbol of authority.

secus, adv. (compar. **sēcius**), *otherwise;* **nihilo secius,** *none the less.*

secūtus, a, um, from **sequor.**

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdecim, *sixteen.*

sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode, settlement.*

sēditiō, -ōnis, f., *insurrection, rising, revolt.*

sēditiōsus, a, um, *seditious.*

Sedulius, ī, m., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Seduni,* a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Sedusiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sedusii,* a German tribe.

seg-es, -etis, f., *crop; field of grain, corn field.*

Sēgnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Segni,* a German tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

Segontiācī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Segontiaci,* a tribe in Britain.

Segov-ax, -actis, m., a king ruling in Kent.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Segusiavi,* a tribe in central Gaul.

semel, adv., *once;* **semel atque iterum,** *more than once.*

sēmentis, is, f., *sowing of grain.*

sēmita, ae, f., *path, by-path.*

semper, adv., *always.*

Semprōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus,* one of Caesar's officers.

senātor, -tōris, m., *senator.*

senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

sen-ex, -is, m., *old man.*

sēnī, ae, a, *six each, six.*

Senones, um, m. plur., *the Senones,* a tribe in central Gaul on the Seine.

sententia, ae, f., *opinion, view, idea; scheme, purpose; sentence, judgment.*

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *feel, be aware, know, perceive, learn; think, have an idea, hold an opinion.*

sentis, is, m., *thorn, briar.*

sēparātim, adv., *separately, by themselves, privately.*

sēparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *separate;* part. as adj., **sēparātus, a, um,** *separate.*

septem, *seven.*

septentriō, -ōnis, m. (chiefly in plur.), *the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear;* hence *the north.*

septimus, a, um, *seventh.*

septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā, *seventy.*

sepultūra, ae, f., *burial.*

Sēquana, ae, f., *the Sequana,* now *Seine,* a river in northern Gaul.

Sēquanus, a, um, *Sequanian, of the Sequani;* m. as subst., *a Sequanian,* in plur., *the Sequani,* a tribe in Gaul north of the province.

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue; accompany, attend, attach one's self to; result, ensue.*

sermō, -ōnis, m., *conversation, intercourse, discussion.*

serō, ere, sēvī, satum, *sow.*

sērō, adv., *too late.*

Sertōrius, ī, m., *Quintus Sertorius,* a Roman general, who in a time of civil war, held Spain from 80 to 72 B.C.

servīlis, e, *of slaves, slavish.*

serviō, īre, īvī, ītum, *be a slave, follow blindly, devote one's self to.*

servitūs, -tūtis, f., *slavery, bondage, subjection.*

Servius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep, hold, maintain; watch, save, preserve.*

servus, ī, m., *slave.*

sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*

sēsē, for **se**, from **sui**.

sēsquipedālis, e, *a foot and a half.*

seu, see **sive**.

sevēritās, -tātis, f., *strictness, severity, rigor.*

sēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call aside.*

sēvum, ī, n., *tallow.*

sex, *six.*

sexāgintā, *sixty.*

sexcentī, ae, a, see **sescenti**.

Sextius, ī, m., 1. *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

sī, conj., *if, even if; whether, to see whether.*

Sibuzātes, um, m. plur., *the Sibuzates*, a tribe in Aquitania.

sīc, adv., *thus, in this way; so, in such a way; as follows.*

siccitās, -tātis, f., *drying up, dryness, drought.*

sīcubi, conj., *if anywhere.*

sīcut, conj., *just as, just like.*

sīcutī, conj., *just as, just as if.*

sīd-us, -eris, n., *star, constellation, heavenly body.*

sīgnifer, erī, m., *standard-bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, f., *signal, announcement, intimation.*

sīgnificō, āre, āvī, ātum, *indicate, announce, make known, intimate, show.*

sīgnum, ī, n., *signal; standard;* **signa convertere**, *to wheel about;* **signa ferre** or **inferre**, *to advance.*

Silānus, ī, m., *Marcus Silanus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, ī, n., *silence;* abl. **silentio** as adv., *in silence, silently.*

Silius, ī, m., *Titus Silius*, one of Caesar's officers.

silva, ae, f., *wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, *wooded.*

similis, e, *like, similar*, w. dat. or gen.

similitū-dō, -dinis, f., *resemblance, similarity.*

simul, adv., *at the same time; repeated, both..and;* **simul atque** or sometimes **simul** alone, *as soon as.*

simulācrum, ī, n., *image, figure.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, f., *pretence, show, deceit, insincerity.*

simulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pretend, feign.*

simultās, -tātis, f., *rivalry, feud.*

sīn, conj., *but if.*

sincērē, adv., *honestly, truthfully.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv., *singly, individually, one by one.*

singulāris, e, *single, one by one, by one's self; extraordinary, unparalleled, admirable, distinguished.*

singulī, ae, a, *one each, one at a time, one by one, singly, several, one.*

sinister, tra, trum, *left;* fem. **sinistra** as subst., *left hand* (sc. **manus**).

sinistrōrsus, adv., *to the left.*

sinō, ere, sīvī, situm, *allow, permit.*

sīquidem, conj., *since.*

situs, ūs, m., *position, situation.*

sīve or **seu**, conj., *or if;* repeated, *whether...or, either...or.*

socer, erī, m., *father-in-law.*

societās, -tātis, f., *alliance.*

socius, ī, m., *ally.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun;* **oriens sol**, *the east;* **occidens sol**, *the west.*

sōlācium, ī, n., *consolation.*

soldurius, ī, m., an Aquitanian word for a retainer sworn to die with his leader.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, *be wont;* often best rendered by *usually.*

solicitō, āre, see **sollicito.**

sōlitū-dō, -dinis, f., *solitude, wilderness, desert.*

sollertia, ae, f., *skill, shrewdness, ability.*

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *stir up, instigate, urge, tempt, try to bribe, try to win over.*

sollicitū-dō, -dinis, f., *anxiety.*

solum, ī, n., *soil, ground; bottom.*

sōlum, adv., *only, alone.*

sōlus, a, um, *alone, only.*

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *loose;* with or without **naves,** *weigh anchor, set sail.*

sonitus, ūs, m., *sound, noise.*

Sontiātes, um, m. plur., *the Sontiates,* a tribe of Aquitania.

sonus, ī, m., *sound.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, extent; distance, interval; pause, time.*

speciēs, ēī, f., *appearance, form; show, semblance.*

spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look, face, slope, lie; look at, consider, regard.*

speculātor, -tōris, m., *spy.*

speculātōrius, a, um, *of a spy, for spying, reconnoitring.*

speculor, ārī, ātus sum, *spy, act as spy.*

spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hope; hope for, expect.*

spēs, eī, f., *hope;* **in spem venire,** *begin to have hope, entertain a hope.*

spīritus, ūs, m., *pride, airs.*

spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip, deprive, despoil.*

spontis (gen.), **sponte** (abl.), defective noun f.; in abl., *of one's own accord, by one's self.*

stabiliō, īre, īvī, ītum, *make steady* or *firm.*

stabilitās, -tātis, f., *steadiness, firmness.*

statim, adv., *at once.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., *guard, sentry, outpost, picket.*

stat-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *set up, fix; decide, determine, resolve; take measures, punish.*

statūra, ae, f., *stature, size.*

status, ūs, m., *position, condition, state.*

stimulus, ī, m., *goad, spur, prick.*

stīpendiārius, a, um, *tributary;* m. as subst., *a tributary, vassal.*

stīpendium, ī, n., *tribute.*

stīp-es, -itis, m., *stake, post.*

stirps, stirpis, f., *stock, race.*

stō, āre, stetī, statum, *stand; abide by.*

strāmentum, ī, n., *straw, thatch; covering, saddle.*

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter, confusion.*

strūctūra, ae, f., *gallery, mine.*

studeō, ēre, uī, *strive, be eager for, be bent upon; be devoted to, pay attention to.*

studiōsē, adv., *eagerly, zealously.*

studium, ī, n., *eagerness, zeal, devotion, energy, enthusiasm; pursuit.*

stultitia, ae, f., *folly.*

sub, prep. (1) w. abl., *under, beneath; at the foot of, close by, near to;* (2) w. acc., *under, close to;* of time, *towards, just before.*

subāctus, a, um, from **subigo.**

subdolus, a, um, *crafty, cunning, deceitful.*

sub-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw off, lead off; draw up, haul up, beach.*

subductiō, -ōnis, f., *hauling on shore, beaching.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *come up, approach; enter; undergo, submit to.*

sub-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *stab from beneath* or *in the belly.*

sub-igo, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *force, compel, constrain.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

subitus, a, um, *sudden, hasty.*

sub-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw from beneath; place below; bring under, subject, expose, force to submit;* in pass., *lie near, be subject.*

sublātus, a, um, from **tollo.**

sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum, *support, raise up; assist, relieve, help.*

sublica, ae, f., *pile, stake.*

sub-luō, ere, -lūtum, *wash.*

subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *supply, furnish.*

sub-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send (to aid), send to one's aid.*

sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, drive off, dislodge.*

sub-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, *dig under, dig out, undermine.*

sub-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow (closely), follow up, succeed.*

subsidium, ī, n., *aid, assistance; support; reserves, reinforcement.*

sub-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *remain.*

sub-sistō, ere, -stitī, *halt, make a stand; hold.*

sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be near, be close at hand.*

sub-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -tractum, *remove, take away, withdraw.*

subvectiō, -ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance.*

sub-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *bring up.*

sub-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come to the support of, come to help, aid.*

suc-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *succeed, take the place of, relieve,* w. dat.; *come close to; come up, advance; be successful.*

suc-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set on fire.*

successus, ūs, m., *approach, advance.*

suc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down.*

suc-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *give way, succumb, give up under.*

suc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, *run to aid, run up.*

sudis, is, f., *stake.*

sūdor, -ōris, m., *sweat; toil, exertion.*

Suēbī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebi,* a German tribe on the Rhine.

Suessiōnes, um, m. plur., *the Suessiones,* a tribe in northern Gaul.

suf-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *be sufficient, hold out.*

suffrāgium, ī, n., *vote.*

Sugambrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sugambri,* a German tribe on the Rhine.

suggestus, ūs, m., *platform, tribune.*

suī, sibi, sē or **sēsē,** reflex. pron., *himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them;* **inter se** *(to, with, from,* etc.) *one another;* **per se,** *of* or *by one's self, as far as one is concerned.*

Sulla, ae, m., a great Roman general and political leader, living from 138 to 78 B.C.

Sulpicius, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sum, esse, fuī, *be, exist;* w. gen., *belong to, be a part* or *mark of.*

summa, ae, f., *total, sum; chief part, main body; chief control, command, management, control.*

summus, a, um, superlative of **superus,** *highest, greatest, chief, supreme, very great, very high, extreme, most important, perfect, entire.*

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, assume; inflict; spend.*

sūmptuōsus, a, um, *costly.*

sūmptus, ūs, m., *expense.*

superbē, adv., *haughtily, arrogantly, arbitrarily.*

superior, ius, comparative of **superus,** *higher, upper; former, previous; superior, more successful.*

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conquer, defeat, overcome, be victorious, prevail ; be superior, surpass, overtop ; survive.*

super-sedeō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *abstain, refrain.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, *remain, survive.*

suppet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *be at hand, be at one's service ; hold out.*

supplēmentum, ī, n., *reinforcements.*

suppl-ex, -icis, *suppliant.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, adv., *as suppliants.*

supplicium, ī, n., *punishment, penalty.*

supportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring up.*

suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc., *above, before.*

sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake, take on one's self.*

su-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *suspect ;* in pass., *be an object of suspicion.*

suspīciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *suspect.*

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hold out, maintain one's self, sustain, bear up against.*

sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *sustain, withstand, hold out, bear ; check ; hold up, rein in, endure, undertake.*

sustulī, from **tollo.**

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their ; his own,* etc. ; m. plur. as subst., **suī, ōrum,** *his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen ;* n. plur. as subst., **sua, ōrum,** *his (their) possessions, property.*

T.

T., an abbreviation for **Titus.**

tabernāculum. ī, n., *tent.*

tabula, ae, f., *list, document.*

tabulātum, ī, n., *story.*

taceō, ēre, uī, itum, *be silent, be silent about ;* part. as adj., **tacitus, a, um,** *silent.*

tālea, ae, f., *bar, rod.*

tālis, e, *such, of such a sort.*

tam, adv., *so.*

tamen, adv., *still, however, yet ; at least.*

Tamesis, is, m., *the Thames.*

tametsī, conj., *although.*

tandem, adv., *at least ;* in questions, *pray.*

tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctum, *touch, border on.*

tantopere, adv., *so much, so earnestly.*

tantulus, a, um, *so trifling, so small.*

tantum, adv., *only.*

tantummodo, adv., *only, merely.*

tantundem, adv., *just so far, just as much.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, so much, such ; as great, as much ;* n. **tantum** as adv., *so much, so far ;* **tanti,** locative, *of such value.*

Tarbellī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tarbelli,* a tribe in Aquitania.

tardē, adv., *slowly.*

tardō, āre, āvī, ātum, *retard, check, delay, hinder.*

tardus, a, um, *slow, inactive, dispirited.*

Tarusātes, um, m. plur., *the Tarusates,* a tribe of Aquitania.

Tasgetius, ī, m., a man of high rank among the Carnutes.

taurus, ī, m., *bull.*

Taximagulus, ī, m., a king ruling in Kent.

taxus, ī, m., *yew.*

Tectosages, um, m. plur., *the Tectosages,* a branch of the *Volcae,* a Gallic tribe in the province, which had penetrated into Germany.

tēctum, ī, n., *roof, house.*

tēctus, a, um, from **tego.**

tegimentum, ī, n., *covering.*

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover, hide, protect.*

tēlum, ī, n., *weapon, missile, dart.*

temerārius, a, um, *reckless, rash.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, hastily; without cause, without good reason.*

temeritās, -tātis, f., *recklessness, rashness, thoughtlessness.*

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* (of chariot).

temperantia, ae, f., *moderation.*

temperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *control, restrain, refrain;* part. as adj., **temperātus, a, um,** *temperate. mild.*

tempestās, -tātis, f., *weather; storm.*

temptō or **tentō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *try; try to force, make an attempt on; tempt.*

temp-us, -oris, n., *time. season; occasion, crisis, emergency;* **reliquum tempus,** *the future.*

Tencterī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tencteri,* a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

tendō, ere, tetendī, tēnsum or **tentum,** *stretch, stretch out; pitch a tent, encamp.*

tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., *darkness.*

teneō, ere, uī, tentum, *hold, have, keep, maintain; occupy, comprise; restrain, bind, detain.*

tener, era, erum, *tender, young.*

tentō, see **tempto.**

tenuis, e, *slight, trifling, insignificant; feeble, delicate.*

tenuitās, -tātis, f., *feebleness, poverty.*

tenuiter, adv., *thinly, thin.*

ter, adv., *three times.*

ter-es, -etis, *round, rounded.*

tergum, ī, n., *back, rear;* **tergum vertere,** *to flee, take to flight.*

ternī, ae, a, *three at a time, three each, three.*

terra, ae, f., *earth, land; ground; country;* **in terris,** *in the world.*

Terrasidius, ī, m., *Titus Terrasidius,* an officer with Caesar.

terrēnus, a, um, *of earth.*

terreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten, alarm, terrify.*

territō, āre, *frighten, terrify.*

terror, ōris, m., *alarm, panic, terror.*

tertius, a, um, *third.*

testāmentum, ī, n., *will.*

testimōnium, ī, n., *proof, evidence, testimony.*

testis, is, m., *witness.*

testū-dō, -dinis, f., *testudo, shelter of overlapping shields; shelter, covered gallery.*

Teutomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobroges.

Teutonī, ōrum, or **Teutones, um,** *the Teutones,* a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.

tīgnum, ī, n., *beam.*

Tigurīnus, a, um, *Tigurine;* m. plur. as subst., **Tigurīnī, ōrum,** *the Tigurini,* one of the four divisions or cantons of the Helvetii.

timeō, ere, uī, *fear, feel* or *have fear, be anxious, be afraid.*

timidē, adv., *timidly;* **non timide,** *fearlessly.*

timidus, a, um, *full of fear, frightened, cowardly.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, alarm, dread, panic, cowardice.*

Titūrius, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, ī, m., *Titus,* a Roman praenomen.

tolerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bear, endure, hold out, sustain.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise: take away, remove, destroy, do away with, put an end to;* in pass., *be elated.*

Tolōsa, ae, f., *Toulouse,* a city in the southern part of the province

Tolōsātes, um, m. plur., *the people of Toulouse.*

tormentum, ī, n., *torture; engin (for throwing missiles).*

torreō, ēre, uī, tostum, *scorch.*

tot, indeclinable, *so many*.

totidem, indeclinable, *as many, the same number*.

tōtus, a, um, *whole, entire, all*; often rendered freely by *entirely, altogether*.

trabs, trabis, f., *beam*.

trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hand over, give up, surrender: pass on; hand down; entrust, recommend; teach, impart*.

trā-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead across, bring over, lead; win over; transfer, promote*.

trāgula, ae, f., *javelin, lance*.

trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag along, draw*.

trājectus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trā-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *pierce, strike*.

trānō, āre, āvī, ātum, *swim across*.

tranquillitās, -tātis, f., *stillness, calm*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond, on the other side of*.

Trānsalpīnus, a, um, *Transalpine, beyond the Alps* (from Rome).

trān-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *climb over; cross over, board*.

trānsdūcō, see **trādūcō**.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *cross, cross over, pass through, go* or *come over; migrate; pass, go by*.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring over, transfer*.

trāns-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *pierce*.

trāns-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *pierce through*.

trāns-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *step over* or *across; cross*.

trānsitus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trānsjiciō, see **trajicio**.

trānsmarīnus, a, um, *beyond the sea, foreign*.

trānsmissus, ūs, m., *passage across*.

trāns-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *transport, take across*.

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry, lead, bring* or *take over*.

Trānsrhēnānus, a, um, *living across the Rhine* (from Gaul); m. plur. as subst., *those across the Rhine*.

trānstrum, ī, n., *cross-beam, thwart*.

trānversus, a, um, *cross, transverse, oblique*.

Trebius, ī, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Trebōnius, ī, m., *Caius Trebonius*, 1. one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a Roman knight.

trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred*.

trepidō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hurry, be in a hurry, be in confusion, be alarmed*.

trēs, tria, *three*.

Trēverī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Treveri*, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.

Triboces, um, or **Tribocī, ōrum**, *the Triboci*, a German tribe on the Rhine.

tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune*, (an officer in the Roman army).

trib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *grant, give, bestow; have regard, give credit, do for the sake of*.

tribūtum, ī, n., *tribute, tax*.

trīduum, ī, n., *space of three days, three days*.

triennium, ī, n., *three years*.

trīgintā, *thirty*.

trīnī, ae, a, *three at a time, three, triple*.

Trinobantes, um, *the Trinobantes*, a tribe in Britain.

tripertītō, adv., *in three divisions*.

tripl-ex, -icis, *triple, threefold*.

triquetrus, a, um, *triangular*.

trīstis, e, *sad, dejected*.

trīstitia, ae, f., *sadness, dejection*.

truncus, ī, m., *trunk.*

tū, tuī, *thou, you.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ērī, tūtus (or **tuitus**) **sum,** *protect, guard, keep safe, maintain.*

Tulingī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tulingi,* a German tribe near the Helvetians.

Tullius, ī, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Tullus, ī, m., *Caius Volcatius Tullus,* one of Caesar's officers.

tum, adv., *then, at that time;* **cum ...tum,** *both...and, not only... but also.*

tumultuor, ārī, ātus sum, *make an uproar* or *noise.*

tumultuōsē, adv., *noisily, with much disorder.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *noise, uproar, commotion, disorder; uprising, rebellion.*

tumulus, ī, m., *mound, rising ground.*

tunc, adv., *then, at that juncture.*

turma, ae, f., *squadron.*

Turones, um, or **Turonī, ōrum,** m. plur., *the Turones,* a tribe in north-western Gaul.

turpis, e, *disgraceful, base.*

turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, basely, shamefully.*

turpitū-dō, -dinis, f., *disgrace.*

turris, is, f., *tower.*

tūtus, a, um, *safe, secure;* abl. as adv., **tūtō** (compar. **tūtius**), *safely, in* or *with safety.*

tuus, a, um, *thy, your.*

U.

ubi, adv., *where; when;* **ubi primum,** *as soon as.*

ubicumque, adv., *wherever.*

Ubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ubii,* a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.

ubīque, adv., *anywhere.*

ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum, *punish, avenge.*

ūllus, a, um, *any;* as subst., *any one.*

ulterior, ius, comparative, *further, more remote.*

ultimus, a, um, superlative, *farthest, most remote, last.*

ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond.*

ultrō, adv., *beyond; besides, even; of one's own accord, voluntarily, without provocation;* **ultro citroque,** *to and fro, hither and thither.*

ultus, a, um, from **ulciscor.**

ululātus, ūs, m., *howling, yell.*

umerus, ī, m., *shoulder.*

umquam, adv., *ever.*

ūnā, adv., *at the same time, together, along, jointly.*

unde, adv., *whence, from which* or *whom.*

ūndecim, *eleven.*

ūndecimus, a, um, *eleventh.*

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*

ūniversus, a, um, *all, the whole, entire, in a body;* as subst., *all together, the whole body.*

unquam, adv., *ever.*

ūnus, a, um, *one, a single; alone, only; one and the same;* **ad unum,** *to a man.*

urbānus, a, um, *of* or *in the city* (*i.e.* at Rome).

urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

urgeō, ēre, ursī, *press hard.*

ūrus, ī, m., *bison, wild ox.*

Usipetes, um, m. plur., *the Usipetes,* a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

ūsitātus, a, um, *customary, common, familiar.*

usque, adv., *quite up to, until, even, to such a degree.*

ūsus, a, um, from **utor.**

ūsus, ūs, m., *experience, use, employment, practice, management, enjoyment; advantage, service; need, necessity;* **ex usu,** *of advantage, advantageous;* **usu venire,** *to happen, turn out.*

ut, or **utī,** *that, in order that,* generally best rendered by infin. w. *to;* w. verbs of fearing, *that not; even if; as; when; seeing that, since; how.*

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two).*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both;* m. plur., *both sides.*

utī, see **ut.**

ūtilis, e, *useful, of use, serviceable.*

ūtilitās, -tātis, f., *advantage.*

ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ, make use of, adopt, show, display, practise, exercise, maintain, avail one's self of, enjoy, have,* w. abl.

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

utrum, conj., *whether.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V.

Vacalus, ī, m., a branch of the Rhine near its mouth.

vacātiō, -ōnis, f., *freedom, exemption.*

vacō, āre, āvī, ātum, *be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, a, um, *empty.*

vadum, ī, n., *ford; shoal, shallow.*

vāgina, ae, f., *scabbard.*

vagor, ārī, ātus sum, *wander, roam about.*

valeō, ēre, uī, *be strong, be powerful, have weight* or *influence; avail, be effective.*

Valerius, ī, m., *Valerius,* 1. *Caius Valerius Flaccus,* governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.; 2. *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus,* a Roman lieutenant, slain in Aquitania about 78 B.C.; 3. *Caius Valerius Caburus,* with his two sons *Procillus* and *Donnotaurus,* Gauls who became Roman citizens.

Valetiacus, ī, m., an Aeduan of rank.

valētū-dō, -dinis, f., *health.*

vallēs or **vallis, is,** f., *valley.*

vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, wall.*

vāllus, ī, m., *stake.*

Vangiones, um, m. plur., *the Vangiones,* a German tribe on the Rhine.

varietās, -tātis, f., *variety, diversity.*

varius, a, um, *various, diverse, different.*

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum, *lay waste, ravage.*

vāstus, a, um, *vast, boundless, immense.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, f., *divination, prophecy.*

vectīg-al, -ālis, n., *tax, tribute; revenue.*

vectīgālis, e, *tributary.*

vectōrius, a, um, *for carrying;* **vectorium navigium,** *a transport-ship.*

vehementer, adv., *severely, strongly, vigorously, desperately, exceedingly.*

vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, *carry, bring.*

vel, 1. conj., *or;* **vel...vel,** *either ...or;* 2. adv., *even.*

Velānius, ī, m., *Quintus Velanius,* one of Caesar's officers.

Veliocasses, um, or **Veliocassī, ōrum,** m. plur., *the Veliocasses,* a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.

Vellaunodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Senones, in central Gaul.

Vellāvī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Vellavi,* a tribe in southern Gaul, near the province.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, f., *speed, swiftness.*

vēlōciter, adv., (**vēlōcius, vēlōcissimē**), *swiftly, quickly.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift, active.*

vēlum, ī, n., *sail.*

velut, adv., *just as.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., *hunting, hunt, the chase.*

vēnātor, -tōris, m., *hunter, huntsman.*

vēn-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *sell.*

Venellī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Venelli,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Venetī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Veneti,* a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Venetia, ae, f., *the country of the Veneti.*

Veneticus, a, um, *of* or *with the Veneti.*

venia, ae, f., *pardon, favor.*

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *come often, resort, visit.*

ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

Veragrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Veragri,* a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Verbigenus, ī, m., one of the four cantons or divisions of the Helvetii.

verbum, ī, n., *word;* **verba facere,** *speak.*

Vercassivellaunus, ī, m., a leading man among the Arverni.

Vercingetor-īx, -īgis, m., a leader of the Arverni.

vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear, be afraid.*

vergō, ere, *incline, lie, face.*

vergobretus, ī, m., the title of the chief magistrate among the Aedui.

vērisimilis, e, *probable, likely.*

veritus, a, um, from **vereor.**

vērō, *indeed, in fact; but;* often untranslated.

versō, āre, āvī, ātum, *turn about, change;* in pass. as dep., *engage in, be occupied* or *busied, remain, be.*

versus, ūs, m., *line, verse.*

versus, adv., and prep. w. acc. preceding, *towards.*

Verticō, ōnis, m., a Nervian.

ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn;* **terga vertere,** *to flee, take to flight.*

Verucloetius, ī, m., an Helvetian of rank.

vērus, a, um, *true; right, fair.*

verūtum, ī, n., *dart, javelin.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, f., a town of the Sequani in eastern Gaul.

vesper, erī, m., *evening.*

vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*

vestīgium, ī, n., *footprint, track; spot; moment.*

vestiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *clothe, cover.*

vestis, is, f., *clothing, garments.*

vestītus, ūs, m., *clothing, dress.*

veterānus, a, um, *veteran.*

vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *forbid, order not.*

vet-us, -eris, *old, former, long-standing, veteran.*

vexillum, ī, n., *flag.*

vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass, annoy; ravage, overrun.*

via, ae, f., *way, road, street, route, journey.*

viātor, -tōris, m., *traveller.*

vīcēnī, ae, a, *twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, a, um, *twentieth.*

vīciēs, adv., *twenty times.*

vīcīnitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood;* as collective, *the neighbors.*

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), f., *change;* **in vicem,** *in turn.*

victima, ae, f., *victim.*

victor, -tōris, m., *victor;* as adj., *victorious, triumphant.*

victōria, ae, f., *victory, success.*

victus, a, um, from **vinco.**

vīctus, ūs, m., *living, mode of living, life; food.*

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* in pass., *be seen, seem, appear, seem good* or *best.*

Vienna, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone.

vigilia, ae, f., *watch, watching* (a watch was one-fourth of the night time).

vīgintī, *twenty.*

vīmen, -minis, n., *twig, willow, osier, wickerwork.*

vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*

vinclum, ī, a shortened form of **vinculum.**

vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, defeat; overcome, exceed; gain a victory, prevail, carry one's point.*

vinculum, ī, n., *chain;* often in plur., *prison.*

vindicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *claim, assert, defend;* **in libertatem vindicare,** *assert the liberty of;* **vindicare in** w. acc., *punish.*

vīnea, ae, f., *vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea.*

vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*

violō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do violence to, harm, injure.*

vir, virī, m., *man; husband.*

vīrēs, ium, from **vis.**

vir-gō, -ginis, f., *maiden.*

virgultum, ī, n. (only in plur.), *brushwood, bushes.*

Viridomarus, ī, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

Viridovix, -icis, m., a leader of the Venelli.

virītim, adv., *man by man, to each.*

Viromanduī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Viromandui,* a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

vir-tūs, -tūtis, f., *manliness, valor, bravery, courage; vigor, energy; merit, excellence, good quality.*

vīs, vim, vī, plur. **vīres, ium,** f., *force, strength, power; fury, violence, furious attack; vigor, energy, influence; number, quantity;* plur., *strength, powers.*

vīsus, a, um, from **video.**

vīta, ae, f., *life, course of life.*

vītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid, escape.*

vitrum, ī, n., *woad.*

vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum, *live;* w. abl., *live on.*

vīvus, a, um, *alive, living.*

vix, adv., *scarcely, hardly, with difficulty.*

Vocātes, um, m. plur., *the Vocates,* a tribe in Aquitania.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Norici.

vocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, summon, invite.*

Vocontiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Vocontii,* a tribe in the province, near the Alps.

Volcae, ārum, m. plur., *the Volcae,* a tribe in the southern part of the province, with two branches, the *V. Tectosages* and the *V. Arecomici;* a branch of the former of these settled in central Germany.

Volcātius, ī, m., *Caius Volcatius Tullus,* one of Caesar's officers.

volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing, desire, want;* **sibi velle,** *to want, to mean.*

voluntārius, a, um, *voluntary;* m. as subst., *volunteer.*

voluntās, -tātis, f., *wish, will, desire, inclination; willingness, consent, approval, good will.*

voluptās, -tātis, f., *pleasure.*

Volusēnus, ī, m., *Caius Volusenus,* a military tribune with Caesar.

Vorēnus, ī, m., *Lucius Vorenus,* a centurion with Caesar.

vōs, plur. of **tū.**

Vosegus, ī, m., *the Vosges Mountains,* in eastern Gaul.

voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, utterance, statement, cry, shout, word.*

Vulcānus, ī, m., *Vulcan,* the Roman god of fire and metallurgy.

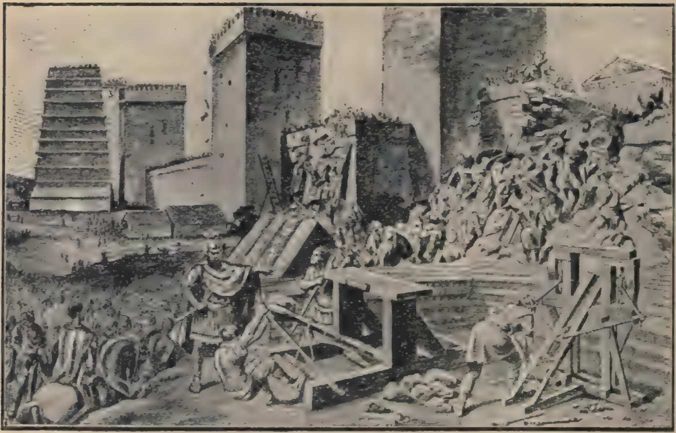
vulgō, adv., *commonly, generally, everywhere.*

vulgus, ī, n., *the common people, the public, general body.*

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *wound.*

vuln-us, -eris, m., *wound.*

vultus, ūs, m., *countenance, expression, look.*



Attack on a Walled City.

RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTORY.[1]

I. Order of Words.

1. Because of its wealth of inflections, Latin admits much greater freedom of order than English does, without a corresponding loss of clearness.

The order of words in Latin is not, however, purely haphazard, although no invariable rules exist for their position in a sentence; there are certain arrangements which are normal or usual, and which should be varied only for some definite purpose, such as to secure emphasis or to promote euphony.

2. In the normal arrangement of a simple sentence, the subject, followed by its attributes, comes first; the verb comes last, preceded by its modifiers or objects; as,

All these differ from one another in language: **Hī omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.**

3. This order is often changed, especially in the case of:

(*a*) Emphasis.—This is often secured by putting words other than the subject at the beginning of a sentence, or words other than the verb at the end; as,

---

[1] As these introductory sections are intended chiefly for reference, and find their application in all the exercises that follow, no special exercise has been based upon them.

Greece was freed by the sagacity of one man: **Ūnīus virī prūdentiā Graecia līberāta est.**

Other route had they none: **Aliud iter habēbant nūllum.**

i. Often, too, emphasis is secured by separating two words in agreement. Antithesis (or emphatic opposition) is frequently expressed by reversing in the second clause the order of the first (*Chiasmus*).

(*b*) CONNECTION OF SENTENCES.—At the beginning of a sentence are regularly placed words or phrases which refer to the previous sentence or some part of it, and which thus serve as a connecting link, leading from the known to the unknown;[1] as,

Within those woods (just mentioned) *the enemy kept themselves in hiding:* **Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant.**

The same day envoys came to Caesar: **Eōdem diē lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt.**

4. (*a*) **The modifiers of a noun.**—i. Cardinal numerals, adjectives denoting size and weight, and pronominal adjectives (except possessives) commonly precede; as, *Four days:* **Quattuor diēs.** *Large forces:* **Māgnae cōpiae.** *This part:* **Haec pars.** *Without any danger:* **Sine ūllō perīculō.**

ii. Ordinal numerals, other adjectives (unless emphatic), genitives and words in apposition commonly follow; as, *The third year:* **Annus tertius.** *The Roman people:* **Populus Rōmānus.** *Part of the summer:* **Pars aestātis.**

iii. Where a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the preferred order is adjective, genitive, noun; as, *Immense size of frame:* **Ingēns corporum māgnitūdō.** This does not apply to the partitive genitive, however; as, *A large part of Gaul:* **Māgna pars Galliae.**

iv. When two adjectives or two genitives connected by a conjunction modify a noun, it is commonly placed either before both or after both.

When an adjective or a genitive modifies two nouns connected by a conjunction, it commonly precedes both.

---

[1] To mark this connection Latin constantly uses *quī* for *hīc* or *is;* see section 172.

(*b*) **The modifiers of a verb.**—Either the direct object or an adverb directly qualifying the action of the verb is, as a rule, placed immediately before a verb; the indirect object commonly precedes the direct object; and farthest removed of all are adverbial expressions of place, time, cause or means.

(*c*) **Pronouns.**—i. Relative and interrogative pronouns are regularly the first words in their clause, preceding even a conjunction and (if used adjectively) a preposition; as, *When Caesar was informed of these things:* **Quibus dē rēbus cum Caesar certior factus esset.**

ii. Personal pronouns are apt to be placed in emphatic positions, and where two personal or possessive pronouns occur in the same clause they are generally placed close together.[1]

(*d*) **Adverbs** commonly precede the words they modify. But *quoque* and *quidem* always, and *ferē* generally, follow.

(*e*) **Prepositions.**—i. These precede the words they govern, with the exception of *cum*, which is regularly suffixed to the ablative of the personal, reflexive and relative pronouns.

ii. A preposition is often separated from its noun by a modifier of that noun; as, *Into the land of the Ædui:* **In Aeduōrum fīnēs.**

iii. A monosyllabic preposition is often placed between an adjective and its noun; as, *On the other side:* **Alterā ex parte.**

(*f*) **Negatives** are regularly placed before the word modified. When the whole sentence is negatived, the negative is either connected with the verb, or more often comes at the beginning of the sentence (so regularly when *neque* can be substituted for *and* followed by a negative).

Nē . . . quidem enclose the word or words modified; as, *Not even the first attack:* **Nē prīmus quidem impetus.**

(*g*) **Verbs.**—i. The Copula or link verb *esse* is seldom placed at the end of its clause; it is generally followed by some important word or words belonging to the predicate; as, *This side is opposite Gaul:* **Hōc latus est contrā Galliam.** Frequently, however, the copula is omitted.

ii. A dependent infinitive, as a rule, precedes the verb on which it depends; as, *The river can be crossed:* **Flūmen trānsīrī potest.**

iii. *Inquam, inquit* follow one or more words of the quotation.

---

[1] The same is true of *quisque* with the reflexive, and of *alius* when doubled.

(*h*) **Conjunctions.**—i. These are the first words in their own clauses. But they are regularly preceded by a relative pronoun, sometimes by other emphatic or connecting words; as, *If this were done:* **Id sī fieret.**

ii. *Autem*, *enim* and *vērō* never, and *igitur* very seldom, come first in a sentence.

iii. The particles *que*, *ne* (interrogative), *ve* are enclitics;[1] as, *The senate and people of Rome:* **Senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

II. ORDER OF CLAUSES.

5. Noun and Adjective clauses are, as a rule, in the position a noun or adjective of similar value would have.

i. A relative clause, however, very frequently, especially when emphatic, precedes a general antecedent, such as *is* or *hīc;* as, *He spoils what he alters;* **Quae mūtat, ea corrumpit.**

ii. Indirect questions generally follow the verb on which they depend. So also does the accusative and infinitive construction when extended to any length.

6. Adverbial clauses are placed, as a rule, as corresponding adverbial phrases would be.

i. Adverbial clauses that are preparatory to the thought of the principal clause, or express some attending circumstance, regularly either precede the principal clause, or very frequently are inserted in it. Such are the temporal, conditional, causal and concessive clauses.

ii. Adverbial clauses that are explanatory of, or complementary to, the thought of the principal clause regularly follow. Such are the consecutive clauses, and causal sentences where the emphasis lies on the reason advanced.

Final or purpose clauses, on the whole, more frequently follow than precede, the general principle being to place last the clause on which the emphasis falls.

7. Participial clauses generally precede, or are inserted in, the principal sentence, and very seldom follow it as in English; as, *After settling this affair he set sail, having met with suitable weather:* **Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, solvit.**

---

[1] Enclitics are unaccented words which are always appended to some other word.

8. In narrative prose the *order of time* is almost invariably observed in the arrangement of the various clauses of a sentence; as,

The Germans threw away their arms when they saw that their comrades were being slain, and rushed out of the camp: **Germānī, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abjectīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt.**

9. THE PERIODIC STRUCTURE is much commoner in Latin than in English. A period is a complex sentence, whose subordinate clauses are inserted in the principal clause in such a way that the sense and grammatical construction of the whole are incomplete without the final words, upon which also the chief emphasis rests. The example given in section 8 above is a period in the Latin, but not in the English.

i. In the Latin period, the subject of the principal and subordinate clauses should as far as possible be the same. In such cases it should be placed at the beginning of the period, and thus do duty for both clauses; as, *When Caesar learned that the Suebi had retired to the forest, he determined not to advance farther:* **Caesar postquam comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius.**

But where a subordinate clause is introduced by a relative with the force of a demonstrative (see section 3, *b*, footnote), this holds the first place; as, *When Caesar learned this, he withdrew to Gaul:* **Quod ubi Caesar comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit.**

III. CONCORDS.

The following are the general rules of agreement:

10. APPOSITION.—A word placed in apposition with another agrees with it in case; as,

He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus: **Dumnorīgī, frātrī Dīvitiācī, persuādet.**

The city of Rome: **Urbs Rōma.**

i. The possessive may have an appositive in the genitive, especially with *ipse*; as, *My own fault:* **Mea ipsīus culpa.**

ii. The appositive word may agree with an unexpressed subject; as, *I, Themistocles, have come to you:* **Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē.**

11. Attributive Words.—An adjective (including the numerals), a pronoun or a participle agrees in gender, number and case with the word to which it belongs.

i. If it belongs to more than one word, it regularly agrees with the nearest; as, *It was a matter requiring great effort and labor;* **Rēs erat multae operae ac labōris.**

12. The Predicate.—(*a*) The *verb* agrees with its subject in number and person.

i. Where compound or periphrastic forms of the verb are used, the participle follows the rules for predicate adjectives (see *b*).

ii. (*a*) Where there is more than one subject, the verb may be plural, or may be singular, agreeing with the nearest and being understood with the others; as, *The Matrona and Sequana separate the Gauls from the Belgians:* **Gallōs ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit.**[1]

(*b*). The verb may also be singular when two singular subjects form but one notion; as, *A loud din and shouting arose:* **Clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur.** (*Cf.* 'The tumult and the shouting dies.') So regularly with **Senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

iii. Where the subjects are of different persons and the plural is used, the first person takes precedence, then the second; as, *Cicero and I are well:* **Ego et Cicerō valēmus.**

iv. For the unemphatic introductory word *there*, and also for *it* when used as an impersonal or representative subject, Latin has no equivalent; as, *And there were no other ships:* **Neque nāvēs erant aliae.** *It is dangerous to enter:* **Intrāre est perīculōsum.**

(*b*) A *predicate adjective* (or a participle in the compound tenses of the verb) agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case; as,

---

[1] In a somewhat similar way a singular noun may agree with the nearer of two adjectives and be understood with the other; as, *The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions;* **Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs.**

Everything was unknown: **Omnia erant incōgnita.**

The supply seems to be small: **Exigua vidētur esse cōpia.**

He was informed that the ascent was easy: **Certior factus est facilem esse ascēnsum.**

i. Predicate adjectives are used with the verb **sum,** verbs of *seeming, becoming*, and passive verbs of *making, thinking, calling.*

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the predicate adjective may be either singular or plural, following the number of the verb (see *a*, ii.).

If it be singular, it will agree in gender with the nearest subject; as, *The cavalry and the charioteers were sent forward:* **Praemissus est equitātus et essedāriī.**

If it be plural, with subjects of different genders, it will be masculine when the subjects refer to living beings, otherwise neuter; as, *Father and mother are dead:* **Pater et māter mortuī sunt.** *The city and temple were taken:* **Urbs templumque capta sunt.**

(*c*) A *predicate noun* agrees with its subject in case; as,

He found that now Galba was king: **Reperiēbat nunc esse rēgem Galbam.**

Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the senate: **Ariovistus rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat.**

i. Predicate nouns are used with the verb **sum,** verbs of *seeming, becoming*, and passive verbs of *making, thinking, calling.*

ii. The dative of purpose is used with much the force of a predicate noun (see section 81).

13. PRONOUN AND ANTECEDENT.—A relative or demonstrative pronoun agrees in gender, number and person with the word (termed the antecedent) to which in sense it refers; as,

For many reasons, of which this was the strongest: **Multīs dē causīs, quārum illa fuit jūstissima.**

i. But these pronouns by preference agree with a predicate noun rather than with their antecedent; as, *To Vesontio, which is the largest town:* **Ad Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum.**

ii. A pronoun referring to two or more antecedents in common follows the rules given for predicate adjectives in section 12, *b*, ii.

N.B.—By a **sense construction**, the number or the gender of predicates and relative pronouns is often determined by the meaning, not the form, of the words to which they refer; as, *A great throng was hurling weapons:* **Māgna multitūdō tēla conjiciēbant.** *He sends forward the cavalry to see:* **Equitātum praemittit, quī videant.** *Six thousand men left the camp at nightfall:* **Hominum mīlia sex prīmā nocte ē castrīs ēgressī sunt.**

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

14. After verbs meaning *to say*, *think*, *believe*, *know*, *perceive*, *feel*, and the like **(verba sentiendī et dēclārandī)**, Latin uses the infinitive with a subject accusative, where in English we have a noun clause introduced by *that;* as,

They bring back word that the ascent is easy: **Renūntiant facilem esse ascēnsum.**

They perceive that the strongest nations have been conquered: **Intellegunt māximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.**

15. Rules for the USE OF TENSES are as follows:

(*a*) When the time of the infinitive is the *same* as that of its principal verb, use the *present* infinitive;

(*b*) When the time of the infinitive is *prior* to that of its principal verb, use the *perfect* infinitive;

(*c*) When the time of the infinitive is *subsequent* to that of its principal verb, use the *future* infinitive; as,

(*a*) *He was informed that the legion was being hard pressed:* **Certior factus est legiōnem premī.**

He will see that the legion is being hard pressed: **Vidēbit legiōnem premī.**

(*b*) *They will think that the Helvetians have moved their camp:* **Exīstimābunt Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

He learned that the Helvetians had moved their camp: **Cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

(*c*) *They think that Caesar will make peace:* **Exīstimant Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

He answered that Caesar would make peace: **Respondit Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

Or, to put the rule in another way: let the student imagine himself using the very words uttered or thought, and then use the corresponding tense of the infinitive (the perfect infinitive doing duty for the imperfect,[1] perfect or pluperfect of the original words).

In the above examples, for instance, the words actually uttered or thought would be: (*a*) *The legion is being hard pressed:* **Legiō premitur**; (*b*) *The Helvetians have moved their camp:* **Helvētiī castra mōvērunt**; (*c*) *Caesar will make peace:* **Caesar pācem faciet.**

16. (*a*) As the infinitive is without personal endings, for *I*, *we*, *you* the subject accusatives **mē, nōs, tē, vōs,** should be expressed.

For *he*, *she*, *they*, when denoting the same person as the subject of the verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., **sē** will be used; but when denoting a different person, the accusative of **is**, or for greater emphasis **ille**;[2] as,

They answered that they would make peace with him: **Respondērunt sēsē cum eō pācem esse factūrōs.**

Caesar had decided to keep Dumnorix with him, because he had discovered that he was eager for power: **Caesar Dumnorīgem sēcum habēre cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum esse imperiī cōgnōverat.**

(*b*) In the compound forms of the infinitive containing **esse**, care must be taken to have agreement with the subject accusative in gender, number and case. (See *superātās* in section 14 above.)

---

[1] For instance, **Dīcō urbem obsessam esse,** *I tell you that the city was being besieged*, for an original *obsidēbātur*.

[2] This distinction applies to all uses of the words *him*, *them*, etc.; for *his* and *their*, *suus* or *ējus* and *eōrum*, respectively, are used.

17. After verbs signifying *to hope*, *promise*, *threaten*, and the like, English generally uses the simple infinitive, instead of a noun clause introduced by *that*. In Latin the subject accusative with the *future* infinitive is used in accordance with the above rules (section 15, *c*); as,

These tribes promise to give hostages: **Hae nātiōnēs sē obsidēs datūrās (esse) pollicentur.**

18. i. In English *that* is often omitted; as, *He says he will go.*

ii. Not only single verbs, but also phrases, *sentiendī et dēclārandī* occur; as, *certiōrem faciō*, *memoriā teneō*, *fāma est*, *spem habeō*.

iii. *Esse* is very often omitted in the compound or periphrastic forms of the infinitive.

iv. Verbs of *pretending* are regularly followed by the accusative and infinitive, not, as often in English, by the simple infinitive; as, *They pretend to return home:* **Domum revertī sē simulant.**

v. Instead of *dīcō* followed by a negative, Latin prefers *negō;* as, *He says he can grant no one the right of passing through the province:* **Negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare.**

vi. Verbs of saying and thinking (except *inquam* and *crēdō*) are not used parenthetically in Latin as in English; as, *You are, I maintain, mistaken:* **Errāre vōs dīcō.** *He sends messengers to Kent, which, we have already said, is on the sea:* **Ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nūntiōs mittit.** For the position of **inquam** see section 4, *g*, iii.

vii. With passive verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., the personal construction is used in Latin (but chiefly with *videor*, and the third person of the present, imperfect and future of other verbs); as, *It was said that the Germans had been invited:* **Germānī arcessītī esse dīcēbantur,** not **Germānōs arcessītōs esse dīcēbātur.** In the perfect the impersonal construction is used.

viii. *Would have* is expressed by the future participle with *fuisse;* as, *He answered that if there had been any need, he would have come to Caesar:* **Respondit, sī quid opus esset, sēsē ad Caesarem ventūrum fuisse.**

ix. Instead of the future infinitive after verbs of *hoping*, *posse* with the present infinitive is common.

x. The subject accusative is not infrequently omitted when easily understood from the context; but this should not be imitated by the beginner in Latin.

VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

Announce, report,	**nūntiō.**
Answer, reply,	**respondeō.**
Ascertain, learn,	**cōgnōscō.**
Believe,	**crēdō.**
Deny,	**negō.**
Hear,	**audiō.**
Hope,	**spērō.**
Inform,	**certiōrem faciō.**
Know,	**sciō, cōgnōvī.**
Notice, observe, perceive,	**animadvertō, cōnspiciō, sentiō.**
Point out,	**dēmōnstrō, ostendō.**
Promise,	**polliceor.**
Remember,	**meminī.**
Report, bring back word,	**renūntiō**
Say,	**dīcō.**
Say . . not,	**negō.**
See,	**videō.**
Suspect,	**suspicor.**
Think,	**exīstimō, arbitror.**
Understand, be aware,	**intellegō.**
Write,	**scrībō.**

EXERCISE 1.

A.

1. He replied that Caesar had conquered Gaul. 2. He thinks that the Roman leader will easily vanquish the Belgians. 3. We saw that the nights were shorter in Britain than on the continent. 4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar, and promised to give hostages. 5. Word was brought to Caesar that the hill was held by the Roman soldiers. 6. To these envoys Caesar replied that the Gauls had been conquered by the Roman army. 7. The general hears that the enemy are hurling javelins at the soldiers. 8. The enemy, he answered (18, vi.), had been hurling javelins at Caesar's cavalry. 9. He learned from the scouts that all the Belgians had encamped on the other side of that river. 10. It is said (18, vii.) that Caesar set out for Gaul, and defeated the Helvetians on the other side of the river Rhone. 11. To that embassy he replied that he would come to the enemy's camp. 12. It was reported to Caesar that the soldiers would not advance.

B. (*Caesar B. G. IV., 20*).

1. He had found out that the traders themselves did not visit this harbor. 2. They answered that the summers were early in all these islands. 3. He writes that almost all the tribes have these customs. 4. We ascertained that auxiliaries were being furnished to Caesar. 5. They promised not to furnish ships to Caesar. 6. I hoped to set out for Britain. 7. They bring back word that the larger harbor is not suitable. 8. He denied having summoned anyone. 9. He pointed out that a large part of the winter was left. 10. They believe that this is unknown to almost all. 11. He thought they had set out. 12. We had heard that our enemies had great experience (had had great experience). 13. He hopes to become acquainted with the country. 14. He said that the character of the inhabitants had not been ascertained.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

19. The present infinitive (active or passive) is often used like the infinitive with *to* in English, to complete the meaning of certain verbs, whose reference would otherwise be incomplete. These verbs are often called *modal* verbs, and the infinitive when so used is termed the *complementary* infinitive.

20. (*a*) With modal verbs the present infinitive without a subject expressed is used to denote another action or condition of the *same* subject; as,

They attempt to cross the river: **Flūmen trānsīre cōnantur.**
The wind began to be violent: **Saevīre ventus coepit.**
They are able to defend themselves: **Sē dēfendere possunt.**
The river can be crossed: **Flūmen trānsīrī potest.**
He was unwilling to leave: **Discēdere nōlēbat.**
They were compelled to give hostages: **Obsidēs dare coāctī sunt.**

i. A predicate noun or adjective with the complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the modal verb; as,
We can be useful friends: **Possumus ūtilēs esse amīcī.**

21. (*b*) With modal verbs the present infinitive with a subject accusative is used to denote the action or condition of a *different* subject; as,

They allow the Helvetians to go: **Helvētiōs īre patiuntur.**

He ordered the gates to be closed: **Portās claudī jussit.**

He wished the Germans to be alarmed: **Germānōs timēre voluit.**

He did not wish that place to be unoccupied: **Nōluit eum locum vacāre.**

22. i. **Prohibeō** takes the accusative and complementary infinitive; as,

They prevent the Germans from crossing: **Germānōs trānsīre prohibent.**

ii. Some verbs expressing *emotion*, such as *doleō* (*grieve*) and *gaudeō* (*rejoice*) often take the accusative and complementary infinitive. (See also section 147, ii.)

iii. Where the complementary infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is used in place of *coepī*, with the same force; as, *Javelins began to be hurled:* **Tēla conjicī coepta sunt.**

iv. With *jubeō* the subject accusative is sometimes omitted, when obvious from the context; as, *He gives orders to fortify a camp:* **Castra mūnīre jubet.**

v. *Volō, nōlō* and *mālō* often take the accusative and infinitive even when the subject is the same, chiefly with *esse* or a passive infinitive; as, *They did not wish to be put to death:* **Sēsē interficī nōlēbant.**

vi. *Polliceor* and *spērō* are sometimes treated as modal verbs.

vii. Many of the verbs of *will* and *desire* are followed by *ut* and the subjunctive; so regularly the verbs of *ordering*, except *jubeō*. *Imperō* also may be used with the passive infinitive; as, *He orders him to be brought back:* **Eum retrahī imperat.** (See section 27.)

viii. This construction is more restricted in Latin than in English. (See especially sections 23 and 27.) But in poetry Latin more nearly approaches English usage, the complementary infinitive being used not only with verbs and phrases which do not ordinarily admit it, but also with nouns and adjectives. The poets also use the infinitive freely to express purpose.

VERBS WHICH TAKE THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

Allow, **patior, sinō.**
Attempt, **cōnor.**
Be able, can, **possum.**
Be accustomed, be wont, **cōnsuēvī, soleō.**
Be unwilling, **nōlō.**
Be willing, **volō.**
Begin, **incipiō, īnstituō.**
Began, **coepī.**
Cease, **dēsinō, dēsistō.**
Compel, **cōgō.**
Dare, **audeō.**
Decide, determine, **cōnstituō, dēcernō, statuō.**
Desire, **cupiō.**
Forbid, **vetō.**
Hasten, **contendō, mātūrō, properō.**
Hesitate, **dubitō.**
Order, **jubeō.**
Ought, **dēbeō.**
Permit, **patior, sinō.**
Prefer, **mālō.**
Prepare, **parō.**
Prevent, **prohibeō.**
Resolve, **see** *decide.*
Strive, **contendō, nītor.**
Try, **cōnor.**
Venture, **audeō.**
Wish, **volō.**

EXERCISE 2.

A.

1. The troops began to storm the town. 2. The Helvetians are accustomed to receive, not give, hostages. 3. Stones had begun (22, iii.) to be hurled from all sides against the rampart. 4. Caesar will not permit the Gauls to be crushed. 5. The enemy were unwilling to depart from the Rhine. 6. The cavalry had prevented fires from being made. 7. They will not attempt to cross the rivers. 8. The Germans did not hesitate to engage in battle. 9. The soldiers were ordered to return to the camp. 10. The Romans compelled the enemy to give hostages. 11. He determined to pass the winter there. 12. The Britons will not dare to make war. 13. Caesar was not able to set out. 14. The soldiers were compelled to make a promise to remain at home. 15. We wish him to be a soldier, but he prefers to be a merchant.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 21.*)

1. He ordered a warship to be sent in advance. 2. They themselves hasten to set out. 3. He will attempt to conquer the barbarians. 4. We are unable to return home. 5. He had wished to be made king. 6. They do not wish that design to be reported to Caesar. 7. Caesar began to make liberal promises. 8. He promised to disembark. 9. Volusenus was ordered to visit all the states and ascertain these things. 10. He hopes to ascertain this. 11. He orders a fleet to be built and hostages to be given. 12. They could not be compelled to return to him. 13. Several were unwilling to allow the envoys to be heard. 14. He had not ventured to examine the neighboring districts. 15. The barbarians resolved to embrace the alliance of the Roman people and to be faithful to Caesar. 16. The troops can quickly assemble to this place from every quarter.

FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

23. In English the purpose or end of an action is commonly expressed either by the infinitive with *to*, or by a clause introduced by *that* or *lest*; as, *They remained to avoid suspicion*, or *They remained that they might avoid suspicion.*

But in Latin prose the infinitive should never be used to express purpose.

24. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—One of the commonest modes of expressing purpose in Latin is by **ut** (or **utī**) with the *subjunctive*—in negative clauses **nē**; as,

They remained in order to avoid suspicion: **Ut suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant.**

He is setting out to attack the enemy's camp: **Proficīscitur ut castra hostium oppūgnet.**

In order that they may not be (or *in order not to be*) *surrounded by the enemy, they will make a sally:* **Nē ab hostibus circumveniantur, ēruptiōnem facient.**

Outposts are stationed lest a sally be made: **Statiōnēs pōnuntur nē ēruptiō fīat.**

25. Rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES are as follows:

(*a*) *Primary* tenses—viz., present, future, and future perfect—are followed by the *present* subjunctive.

(*b*) *Secondary* (or historical) tenses—viz., imperfect, perfect[1], and pluperfect—are followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive.

Thus the present subjunctive is used where English could use *that . . . may;* the imperfect subjunctive where English could use *that . . . might.*

(For examples see the sentences given in section 24 above.)

26. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—After certain verbs, especially those of *sending* and *appointing*, relative clauses of purpose are found, **ut** being replaced by **quī**; as,

He sends scouts in advance to choose a suitable place for the camp: **Explōrātōrēs praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant** (literally *who are to choose*).

i. Purpose clauses may be introduced also by relative adverbs, such as *ubi*, *unde*, *quō.*

27. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—After verbs of *urging*, *asking*, *commanding*, *advising*, *persuading*, *striving* (verbs of *will* and *aim*), Latin does not use the infinitive; it regards the following clause as expressive of the end desired, and therefore uses the subjunctive of purpose with **ut (utī)** and **nē**; as,

He urges them to take up arms: **Hortātur ut arma capiant.**

He induced Casticus to seize the chief power: **Persuāsit Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret.**

They begged of him not to do that: **Ab eō petēbant nē id faceret.**

---

[1] The perfect indicative, when translated by *have*, may take primary sequence, but as a rule it is followed by the imperfect subjunctive.

Jubeō and *cōnor* are important regular exceptions to this rule; so also verbs of *striving* and *resolving*, when the subject of both verbs is the same (where English also has the infinitive).

28. i. In clauses of purpose **ut** is not followed by a negative, **nē** being used instead. Hence where *not*, *no one*, *nothing*, *no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use **nē, nē quis, nē quid, nē quī** (or **quis**) and **nē umquam**; as,

He ordered the gates to be closed that the townspeople might receive no hurt: **Portās claudī jussit nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent.**

He asked him to allow none to cross: **Postulāvit nē quōs trānsīre paterētur.**

ii. A second final clause, if negative, is connected by **nēve** (or **neu**), not by **neque**; as, *He issues orders that they are to hurl their weapons from a distance, and not approach nearer:* **Prōnūntiat ut procul tēla conjiciant neu propius accēdant.**

iii. When the clause of purpose contains a comparative, **quō** is commonly used in place of **ut**; as, *They ask for reinforcements, that they may more easily withstand the enemy:* **Subsidium rogant, quō facilius hostēs sustinēre possint.**

iv. After the historical present either primary or secondary sequence may be used.

v. Certain verbs are used both in the construction given in section 27, and as *verba dēclārandī* with the accusative and infinitive: as, *He writes to Labienus to build the vessels:* **Labiēnō scrībit ut nāvēs īnstituat.** *He writes that he has set out:* **Scrībit sē profectum esse.** So also *moneō* and *persuādeō*. (See section 200.)

vi. With verbs of *asking* and *commanding* the subjunctive sometimes occurs without *ut*. This should not be imitated by the beginner in prose.

vii. In poetry, verbs of *urging* and *asking* are found with the present infinitive. (See section 22, viii.)

viii. Sometimes *ut nē* is found for *nē*, but not in Caesar.

ix. Other modes of expressing purpose exist in Latin, the most important being by means of the gerund and gerundive. (See sections 114 and 119, and also 124.)

x. For verbs of *causing*, see section 33, v.

VERBS WHICH TAKE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

Advise, **moneō, admoneō.**
Ask, **petō, rogō.**
Beg, *beseech*, **ōrō, obsecrō.**
Command, **imperō, praecipiō, mandō.**
Commission, **mandō.**
Determine, **cōnstituō, dēcernō, statuō.**
Exhort, **hortor, adhortor, cohortor.**
Incite, *instigate*, **impellō.**
Instruct, **praecipiō.**
Permit, **concēdō, permittō.**
Persuade, **suādeō, persuādeō.**
Prevail on, **impetrō.**
Request, *require*, **petō, rogō, postulō.**
Resolve, see *determine.*
Strive, **contendō, nītor**; so **id agō, operam dō.**
Urge, **hortor, adhortor.**
Warn, **moneō, admoneō.**

EXERCISE 3.

A.

1. They sent Caesar into Gaul to carry on war with the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls had sent envoys to Caesar to ask for peace and to beg him not to storm their town. 3. He instructed the cavalry to take possession of the camp, and not (28, ii.) to pursue the enemy. 4. In order to defeat the Britons, he sent forward the cavalry and the slingers to attack them in the rear. 5. Caesar exhorted the soldiers to fight valiantly, lest they should allow the enemy to cross the river. 6. The Gauls sent a messenger to report to their allies that the Roman troops had built a bridge over the river in order to (28, iii.) pursue the enemy more easily. 7. He asked the Helvetians to go forth from these territories. 8. They ordered the bridge to be destroyed in order that no one might be able to cross the river. 9. He warned the soldiers (28, v.) that the Gauls were at hand; he advised us not to leave the camp. 10. He replied that Caesar had praised the soldiers that they might fight the more valiantly. 11. Caesar ordered (*imperō*) his soldiers to press forward and not to hurl any weapon whatever at the enemy.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 22.*)

1. He urged Caesar not to demand hostages. 2. On account of the season he advises Caesar to do nothing. 3. In order that he may reach Britain, he orders (*jubeō*) ships of war to be collected. 4. He leaves a garrison to hold the harbors. 5. Lest he should be detained by the wind, he did not delay in these parts. 6. Envoys come to ask Caesar not to make war on the Menapii. 7. He promised to receive them under his protection. 8. In order the more easily (*facilius*) to wage war, he advised the lieutenants to collect transports. 9. They warn Caesar to leave no enemy behind him. 10. To excuse themselves, they point out that they are inexperienced. 11. He gives orders to the Morini to bring the hostages to Britain. 12. He left Cotta in the same harbor to procure ships. 13. In order to carry over a larger number of foot-soldiers he determined to leave the cavalry. 14. That this may not happen, he allots ships to the two legions.

Consecutive or Result Clauses. Clauses of Characteristic.

29. Adverbial Clauses of Result. — Dependent clauses expressing result are in English introduced by *that* or *as to*, following *so* or *such*. In Latin result or consequence is expressed by **ut** (or **utī**) with the subjunctive (in negative clauses by **ut nōn**); as,

They advanced with such swiftness that the enemy took to flight: **Eā celeritāte iērunt ut hostēs sē fugae mandārent.**

I am not so uncivilized as not to know this: **Nōn tam barbarus sum ut nōn haec sciam.**

30. The tenses of the English and the Latin verbs in clauses of result as a rule correspond; the Latin imperfect, however, is generally used for the English past (indefinite) tense, as in the first example in section 29.

31. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT.—After certain verbs, chiefly those of *happening* and *resulting*, clauses introduced by *that* are rendered by Latin consecutive clauses with **ut** or **ut nōn** and the subjunctive; as,

It happened that there was a full moon: **Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.**

The result was that the Germans were summoned: **Factum est utī Germānī arcesserentur.**

32. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—Clauses of characteristic are introduced by the relative pronoun or relative adverbs. In these clauses the antecedent is referred to as belonging (or not belonging) to a class characterized by a certain quality. The subjunctive (generally akin to the subjunctive of result,[1] but sometimes, as in the fourth example, to the potential subjunctive, see section 136) is regularly used in these clauses; as,

Nor was there anyone who was intent on looting: **Neque fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret.**

But I am not the man to be frightened by danger: **Neque is sum quī perīculō terrear.**

There were two roads by which they could leave home; **Erant itinera duo quibus domō exīre possent.**

Nor had they any place to which they could retreat: **Neque quō sē reciperent habēbant**[2].

i. This subjunctive of characteristic is especially common after such general phrases of existence as *sunt quī*, *nēmō est quī*, *ūnus est quī*, *sōlus est quī*, *quis est quī?* *nōn is est quī*; also after *dīgnus*, *indīgnus* and *idōneus*; as, *He will not be a fit person to be sent:* **Nōn erit idōneus quī mittātur.**

ii. The relative clause of characteristic has sometimes a restrictive force; as, *So far as I know:* **Quod sciam.**

---

[1] In such cases the relative may often be replaced by the phrase *such as* or *such that.*

[2] By some this is regarded as a relative clause of purpose (section 26, i).

33. i. As *that not* in clauses of result is **ut nōn,** so where *no one*, *nothing*, *no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use **ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut nūllus, ut numquam**; as,

He put the enemy so speedily to flight that no one held his ground at all: **Tam celeriter hostēs in fugam dedit utī omnīnō resisteret nēmō.**

ii. *Quīn* is often found instead of *quī nōn* in relative clauses of characteristic after negative phrases; as, *No one is so brave as not to be disturbed:* **Nēmō est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.**

iii. Sometimes the *perfect* subjunctive instead of the imperfect is found corresponding to our past (indefinite) tense. In such cases either (1) the writer is calling attention to the independent fact rather than dwelling on the relation of cause and effect; or (2) the action is summed up as a single whole, and not regarded as continuing; as, *Our men captured the vessels, so that very few reached land:* **Nostrī nāvēs expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ad terram pervēnerint.**

iv. A common use of the consecutive clause is to form with a preceding *fore* (or *futūrum esse*) a substitute for the future infinitive passive, and sometimes also for the future infinitive active, especially with verbs that lack the supine stem; as, *He hoped that Ariovistus would abandon his obstinacy:* **Spērābat fore utī Ariovistus pertinācia dēsisteret.**

v. Verbs of *causing* are followed sometimes by a substantive clause of purpose, sometimes by one of result. Hence the negative is sometimes *nē*, sometimes *ut nōn.*

vi. *Ita* (or *sīc*) with *ut* and the subjunctive may express restriction or limitation.

EXERCISE 4.

A.

1. So great a panic seized our soldiers that we did not dare to join battle with the enemy. 2. It happened that no ship reached its destination. 3. We are not so inexperienced as to believe that the Roman people can be conquered by our forces. 4. There is no one but (33, ii.) knows that the Helvetians are marching through our province. 5. Such was the valor of the soldiers that no one withdrew from the ramparts. 6. We have been so taught by our ancestors that we are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages.

7. Caesar said that from these circumstances it had resulted that they roamed about less widely. 8. So great is the scarcity of boats that we cannot cross. 9. He had judged this cavalryman a suitable person (32, i.) to send to Caesar. 10. He crossed the river with such a large body of cavalry that the Germans were terrified. 11. The messengers made answer to Caesar that the bridge had been so bravely defended by the enemy that no portion of the army had been able to cross. 12. There followed storms which (32) prevented the enemy from attempting to attack the camp.

B. (*Caesar*, *B. G. IV.*, *23.*)

1. So suitable was the place that he ordered the soldiers to disembark. 2. So great are the forces of the enemy that nothing can be done. 3. It happened that he met with favorable weather. 4. So swift were the foremost vessels that they reached Britain the fourth hour of the day. 5. So quickly (*celeriter*) do the soldiers embark that in the third watch he gives the signal and orders the anchors to be weighed. 6. It happens that the shore is clear and the tide favorable. 7. He pointed out that a weapon could be thrown to the shore from the ship. 8. He gave orders (*imperō*) that the cavalry should follow him and that the other troops should advance to the higher ground. 9. So slowly is everything done that no one is able to set sail. 10. So rapid is the movement of naval warfare that nothing is more uncertain.

QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

34. A DIRECT QUESTION is a principal clause introduced by

(*a*) An interrogative pronoun, pronominal adjective or adverb, or

(*b*) One of the interrogative particles, **-ne, nōnne,** or **num**[1]; as,

---

[1] None of these particles, **-ne, nōnne** or **num,** should be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word.

What do they seek? **Quid petunt?**

Whither are we setting out? **Quō proficīscimur?**

Do you not see? **Nōnne vidēs?**

i. **-Ne, Nōnne, Num.** *-Ne* is an enclitic, appended to an emphatic word, which is regularly at the beginning of the question.

-Ne asks for information, and is impartial or non-committal; as, *Is he writing?* **Scrībitne?**

Nōnne asks for confirmation of belief, and invites the answer *yes;* as,

Is he not writing? (or *He is writing, is he not?*) **Nōnne scrībit?**

Num asks for confirmation of disbelief, and invites the answer *no;* as,

Surely he is not writing? (or *He is not writing, is he?*) **Num scrībit?**

35. Indirect Questions.—A subordinate clause introduced by any of the interrogative words mentioned above is called a *dependent* or *indirect question*, and always has its verb in the subjunctive; as,

He asked what they sought: **Quaesīvit quid peterent.**

He asks whither we are setting out: **Quaerit quō proficīscāmur.**

He wonders what the reason is: **Quae causa sit, mīrātur.**

In English we do not usually consider the clause as a dependent question unless the principal verb is of an interrogative nature, but in Latin it may be a verb meaning *to learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see* or *decide;* as,

He learns what is being done: **Cōgnōscit quae gerantur.**

He reported what he had seen: **Quae perspexisset renūntiāvit.**

We perceived where they were betaking themselves: **Animadvertimus quō sē reciperent.**

They cannot decide in which direction it flows: **In utram partem fluat, jūdicāre nōn possunt.**

i. *-Ne* and *num* in dependent questions express *whether*, without any difference of meaning; as, *He asked whether they were happy:* **Quaesīvit num beātī essent** (or **beātīne essent**).

36. Rules for the Use of Tenses are as follows:

In indirect questions as a rule the English tenses will be a sufficient guide.[1] The future is represented by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (see section 123).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Primary Sequence.

He asks, learns, *He will ask, learn,*	**Quaerit, cōgnōscit,** **Quaeret, cōgnōscet,**
what they are doing:	**quid faciant.**
what they have done:	**quid fēcerint.**
what they did:	**quid fēcerint.**
what they will do:	**quid factūrī sint.**

Secondary Sequence.

He was asking, learning, *He asked, learned,* *He had asked, learned,*	**Quaerēbat, cōgnōscēbat,** **Quaesīvit, cōgnōvit,** **Quaesīverat, cōgnōverat,**
what they were doing:	**quid facerent.**
what they had done:	**quid fēcissent.**
what they did:	**quid fēcissent.**
what they would do:	**quid factūrī essent.**

i. The historical present may take either primary or secondary sequence.

37. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, English abstract nouns such as *size*, *number*, *character*, *reason*, *time*, *place*, and many verbal nouns such as *opinion*, *intention*, are best rendered into Latin by dependent interrogative clauses; as,

---

[1] The chief exceptions are: (*a*) After a primary tense the perfect subjunctive takes the place of the imperfect; as, *I know what he was doing:* **Sciō quid fēcerit.**

(*b*) After the perfect tense secondary tenses are used, even where we should expect primary tenses; as, *I have shown what resources you have:* **Quae subsidia habērēs, exposuī.** (This last peculiarity is found sometimes also in clauses of result.)

You see the extent of the danger: **Vidētis quantum sit perīculum.**

He reported his discoveries: **Quae cōgnōvisset renūntiāvit.**

They had learned the situation of affairs: **Quō in locō rēs esset, cōgnōverant.**

He could not discover their intentions: **Quae factūrī essent, cōgnōscere nōn poterat.**

38. Disjunctive Questions.—Where two questions are connected by *or*, involving an alternative choice, we have a *disjunctive, alternative* or *double* question as opposed to a *simple* question. The first alternative is in Latin regularly introduced by **utrum** (*whether*) or **-ne**, the second by **an** (*or*). Such questions when dependent are of course in the subjunctive; as,

Does duty or fear weigh more with them? **Utrum apud eōs officium an timor plūs valet?**

They were debating whether it was better to lead their forces against the enemy or to defend the camp. **Dēlīberābant cōpiāsne adversum hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere praestāret.**

39. i. *Or not*, in the direct disjunctive question, is *annōn;* in the indirect, *necne.*

ii. *Utrum* is often omitted in disjunctive questions, in which case *-ne* is sometimes used for *an* in indirect questions. In simple direct questions also *-ne* is sometimes omitted, especially in impassioned interrogations.

iii. *Yes* and *no* in answers are usually expressed by repeating the verb of the question (with or without *nōn*), or by some other emphatic word, e.g., *certē*, certainly; *sānē*, to be sure; *nōn*, no; *minimē*, by no means.

iv. In indirect questions, *nōnne*, *whether .. not*, is used only after *quaerō.*

v. It is of great importance, but not always easy, to distinguish the dependent interrogative clause from the dependent relative clause with the antecedent omitted, the latter being regularly in the indicative. For instance, in *They could not prevent what had been done*, and *I can go where they can go*, *what* and *where* are to be taken as relatives; in *They could not tell what had been done*, and *I can find out where they can go*, as interrogatives. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, however, doubtful clauses will generally be interrogative; after other verbs, generally relative.

EXERCISE 5.

A.

1. Who were leading the forces into our territories? 2. He asked what they wished to be done. 3. He told who had persuaded the soldiers to leave the camp. 4. Caesar had sent horsemen in advance to observe in what direction the enemy were marching. 5. Did you not know that he had asked whether (35, i.) the Roman people would make peace with the enemy? No (39, iii.). 6. Of whom did you ask the date of his return to the city? 7. He sent scouts across the river to ascertain what was going on in the enemy's camp. 8. Are you a Roman soldier or not (38; 39, i.)? What is your reason for coming into these territories? 9. Surely he will not ask whether (38) we have waged war with the Helvetians or not (39, i.)? 10. He could not find out what villages the Gauls had beyond the Rhone, or their size. 11. They wished to learn the strength and the position of the enemy's forces. 12. For what reason did the officers not lead the troops against the enemy to prevent their crossing the river? 13. He sent spies in order to learn with whom the leader of the Gauls had been holding communication.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 24, 25.*)

1. What kind of ship has been sent in advance? 2. With whom were they fighting? 3. Has the plan been discovered? 4. Are they not accustomed to use cavalry? 5. They had ascertained how great was the depth of the sea. 6. He asks where our men will land. 7. He perceives for what reasons we are unable to follow. 8. He observes what zeal the Romans are accustomed to display. 9. What keeps our men from leaping down into the waves? 10. He pointed out what was keeping our men from advancing. 11. Why do you hesitate? Surely you are not going to retreat? Are you not willing to leap down? 12. He pointed out how great a disgrace they were incurring (had incurred, would incur). 13. He was unable to ascertain the reason for the weapons being hurled. 14. All could see who was bearing the eagle; we cannot see in which hand he carries the eagle.

THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

40. The participle is a verbal adjective. In Latin, like the adjective, it is inflected to agree with its substantive, while, like the verb, it has distinctions of voice and tense, and has the same case relations as the verb from which it is formed.

The Present Participle has active force, whether formed from active or deponent verbs; the Perfect Participle when formed from active verbs has passive force, but when from deponents, active force.

41. The *time of the participle* is in Latin relative to that of its principal verb.

(*a*) The *Present* Participle denotes the *same* time as that of its verb.

(*b*) The *Perfect* Participle denotes time *prior* to that of its verb.

Hence whenever the English, as is so often the case, uses the present participle to denote something that takes place *before* the action expressed by its main verb, the present participle must not be used in Latin, but either the perfect participle or some equivalent; as,

Returning to the harbor, he found the ships ready: **Ad portum reversus** (or **cum ad portum rediisset), nāvēs parātās invēnit.**

Being defeated in battle, they sent envoys: **Proeliō superātī, lēgātōs mīsērunt.**

42. THE APPOSITIVE OR CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE.—The most important use of the participle in Latin is its use in the appositive relation to its substantive to define the circumstances of an action, expressing the relation of *time* or *cause* or (less frequently) of *condition* or *concession*; as, (*a*) Present Participle :—*He is slain while fighting bravely:* **Fortissimē pūgnāns interficitur.**

They slew Roscius while returning home: **Domum redeuntem** (or **revertentem) Roscium occīdērunt.**

(*b*) Perfect Participle Passive :—*Being repulsed by the cavalry, they hid in the woods:* **Repulsī ab equitātū, sē in silvās abdidērunt.**

He brought aid to his brother, when hemmed in by the enemy: **Frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium tulit.**

Though thrown into confusion, still they did not retreat: **Perturbātī, tamen pedem nōn rettulērunt.**

He will come if asked: **Rogātus veniet.**

(*c*) Perfect Participle Deponent :—*Having encouraged the soldiers, he leaped down:* **Cohortātus mīlitēs, dēsiluit.**

Fearing a scarcity of provisions, he returned: **Inopiam frūmentī veritus, rediit.**

Notice that although the English participle is frequently preceded by such words as *while*, *when*, *if*, *though*, the corresponding Latin words are not used.

43. It is generally advisable to render this Latin participle more freely into English, using either

(*a*) a dependent clause introduced by *while*, *when*, *after*, *as*, *because*, *if*, *although ;* or

(*b*) the prepositions *on*, *after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing ;* or

(*c*) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but ;* or

(*d*) a relative clause.

And conversely all such expressions are commonly best rendered into Latin (where possible) by the circumstantial participle. For instance, in place of the English sentences given in section 42, we may have, corresponding to the same Latin sentences :

They slew Roscius while (or *as*) *he was returning home*, or, *They slew Roscius, who was returning home.*

On being repulsed by the cavalry (or, *After their repulse by the cavalry*), *they hid in the woods.*

He brought aid to his brother when he had been hemmed in by the enemy, or, *who had been hemmed in by the enemy.*

Though they were thrown into confusion, still they did not retreat, or, *They were thrown into confusion but still did not retreat.*

He will come if he is asked.

After he had encouraged the soldiers (or, *After encouraging the soldiers*) *he leaped down*, or, *He encouraged the soldiers and leaped down.*

He returned, because he feared a scarcity of provisions, or, *As he feared a scarcity of provisions, he returned.*

44. i. Other uses of the Participle are :

(*a*) As a *substantive*, chiefly in the oblique cases and especially in the plural ; as, *He followed up the fugitives:* **Fugientēs prōsecūtus est.** *Opportunity for resting is given to the wounded:* **Vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur.**

Note that *those fleeing, those wounded* is not in Latin **iī fugientēs** or **iī vulnerātī.**

(*b*) As an *adjective ;* as, *This state was large and flourishing:* **Haec cīvitās fuit ampla atque flōrēns.** *They thought they were ready:* **Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt.**

Parātus and many other participles are in fact compared like adjectives.

(*c*) As a *predicative complement* of certain verbs, especially (*a*) the present participle with *videō, audiō, faciō*, and other verbs of *perceiving* or *representing ;* as, *He noticed a certain man writing:* **Animadvertit quendam scrībentem** ; and (*b*) the perfect participle passive with *habeō*, very like the English perfect with *have ;* as, *He sends forward the cavalry which he had collected from the whole province:* **Equitātum, quem ex omnī prōvinciā coāctum habēbat, praemittit.** (See section 182, ii.)

ii. The perfect participle of many deponent verbs appears often to have the force of the present ; for instance, there is no appreciable difference between *arbitrātus* and *exīstimāns.* Other words so used are *veritus, diffīsus, suspicātus, ūsus ;* as, *Suspecting that this would happen, Labienus was advancing, employing the same pretence:* **Quae fore suspicātus, Labiēnus eādem ūsus simulātiōne prōgrediēbātur.** In most cases the perfect is defensible as specifying the cause which leads to subsequent action.

iii. The participle occasionally has its force defined more exactly by the use of *nisi* (*except*), *ut* or *tamquam* (*as if*), *etsi* or *quamquam* (*although*), *utpote* (*inasmuch as*).

iv. The lack of a present participle passive is supplied by a subordinate clause with *dum*, *cum*, or *quī*; that of the perfect participle active (where a deponent verb is not available) by a subordinate verb with *cum*, *sī*, *etsī*, etc., or by the ablative absolute construction (see section 46).

EXERCISE 6.

A.

1. They threw the ambassador into chains while he was attempting to speak. 2. The envoys, after being dismissed, returned home. 3. The cavalry made an attack upon the Gauls, who were scattered and in despair. 4. Thinking the ambassadors would not return, Caesar crossed the river. 5. After encouraging the cavalry the tribunes returned to Caesar. 6. He replied that the Germans would come if asked. 7. Our men attacked the enemy and slew a great number of them. 8. Promising to return in a short time, he followed up the fugitives. 9. He comes upon the soldiers, who are fighting bravely. 10. On his return he found the soldiers engaged in the work. 11. The cavalry, being ordered to cross the river, brought aid to our men, who were resisting with the utmost bravery. 12. He said that the cavalry, though thrown into confusion, still would not retreat.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 25, 26.*)

1. Alarmed by all these things, he began to retreat. 2. We saw the enemy approaching and the soldiers hurling missiles. 3. He will attack our men as they are disembarking (after they have landed). 4. He exhorts his men to follow and leaps into the sea. 5. The ships, after being removed a short distance, are urged forward. 6. Attacking the barbarians, who had been thrown into confusion, they put (them) to flight. 7. An attack was made on our men while they were hesitating. 8. They surrounded Caesar who was fighting vigorously. 9. The boats were filled with soldiers and stationed on the exposed flank. 10. If the troops are driven off and dislodged, they will incur disgrace. 11. While pursuing the enemy they could not keep their ranks. 12. As he leaps down he observes a soldier in difficulty. 13. Though hindered by the shoals, he was still able to reach the island.

The Ablative Absolute.

45. In translating into Latin participial phrases (or their equivalents), such as have been described in sections 42 and 43, two difficulties often arise:

(*a*) The participle required is a perfect participle *active*, which does not exist in Latin (except in the case of deponents); as,

Having heard this, he departed.
After receiving hostages, he made peace.
They made an attack and drove the enemy back.

(*b*) The subject of the verb in the English subordinate clause cannot be brought into direct relation with any single word in the main sentence; as,

When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace.
Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town.

46. In such cases recourse may generally be had to the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE construction, in which a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement are used, in the ablative case; as,

Having heard this, he departed: **Hīs rēbus audītīs, discessit.**

After receiving hostages, he made peace: **Obsidibus acceptīs, pācem fēcit.**

They made an attack and drove the enemy back: **Impetū factō, hostēs reppulērunt.**

When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace: **Trāditīs armīs, pācem fēcit.**

Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town: **Paucīs dēfendentibus, oppidum expugnāre nōn potuit.**

47. There is a similar nominative absolute construction in English; as, *Their arms having been surrendered, he made peace.* But the English construction is of comparatively rare occurrence, and seldom furnishes a suitable translation for the Latin ablative absolute, which should rather be rendered freely, for instance by a change of voice, or according to the methods suggested in section 43, viz.:

(*a*) a dependent clause introduced by *while*, *when*, *after*, *as*, *because*, *if*, *although*;

(*b*) the prepositions *on*, *after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing*; or,

(*c*) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but*.

48. In the cases described in section 45, we may also have in place of the ablative absolute, *dependent clauses* expressing *time*, *cause*, *concession*, or *condition*; for instance, in place of the present participle, *cum* with the imperfect subjunctive or *dum* with the present indicative, and in place of the perfect participle, *cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive or *ubi* or *postquam* with the perfect indicative; as, *Having heard this, he departed:* **Cum haec audīvisset** (or **ubi haec audīvit**), **discessit.** *Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town:* **Etsī paucī dēfendēbant, oppidum expūgnāre nōn potuit.**

i. Where also participles do not exist in Latin, these dependent clauses may replace an English participle; as, *Being unable to cross the river, they returned:* **Cum flūmen trānsīre nōn possent, revertērunt.**

49. Instead of the participle in the absolute construction, we often find a predicate noun or adjective, without any copula, as the verb *esse* has no present or perfect participle; as,

They attempt to cross against his will: **Eō invītō trānsīre cōnantur.**

He formed a conspiracy in the consulship of Messala and Piso: **Messālā atque Pīsōne cōnsulibus conjūrātiōnem fēcit.**[1]

50. i. The ablative absolute construction is not used with the perfect participle passive of intransitive verbs, that is, of verbs which in the active do not govern an accusative; as,

Having reached the Rhine, they plunged into the river: **Cum ad Rhēnum pervēnissent, sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt.** (See sec. 56.)

ii. In the case of the perfect participle of deponent verbs with active force, the ablative absolute is somewhat sparingly used, and chiefly with intransitive verbs; as, *A great storm arose, and almost all the ships were wrecked:* **Māximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflīctae sunt.** So also *mortuus*, *profectus*, *secūtus*.

iii. It is contrary to Latin usage to have the substantive in the ablative absolute denote the same person or thing as is expressed in the principal clause: as, *When Commius landed they seized him* is not **Commiō ē nāvī ēgressō, eum comprehendērunt,** but **Commium ē nāvī ēgressum comprehendērunt.**[2]

iv. *Nisi*, *ut*, etc. (section 44, iii.), may be used with the ablative absolute.

v. An ablative absolute with the negative is often equivalent to a phrase introduced by *without*; as, *Without losing any time he sets out:* **Nūllō tempore intermissō proficīscitur.**

vi. One ablative absolute may define the circumstances of another; as, *As the ranks were in confusion from hearing the shouting, the rest took to flight:* **Reliquī, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ōrdinibus, terga vertērunt.** An ablative absolute may be connected by a conjunction (e.g., *et*, *-que*) with another ablative absolute, but not with any other (even an equivalent) construction.

EXERCISE 7.

A.

1. Having settled these matters, he returned. 2. After encouraging the soldiers and giving the signal, he ordered an attack to

---

[1] Literally *He (being) unwilling; Messala and Piso (being) consuls.*

[2] Yet Caesar has several instances of the ablative absolute in such cases, often apparently to secure emphasis; *e.g.*, B. G., III. 14, 4; IV. 12, 1; 21, 6; V. 4, 3; 44, 6; VI. 4, 4; 43, 1; VII. 4, 1; 27, 2; 29, 1; 76, 3. This should not be imitated.

be made. 3. He set out against Caesar's will, after promising to return shortly. 4. As no enemy prevented (him), he led the legion back in safety. 5. On this being done, the Roman soldiers, drawing their swords, made an attack upon the enemy. 6. In the consulship of Marius many were put to death without a hearing. 7. After that assembly had been dismissed, the chief men returned to Caesar. 8. After he heard the prisoner he dismissed him (50, iii.). 9. When this battle was fought, the enemy, being impressed by the bravery of our soldiers, sent envoys to Caesar. 10. Having reached their territories, he set fire to all their villages and (then) returned to the camp.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 26, 27.*)

1. Making an attack, they surround the enemy. 2. After seizing the envoy and putting him in chains, they send for their chief men. 3. As our men were in distress, he ordered reinforcements to be sent. 4. They attack the enemy fiercely and put them to flight. 5. When the enemy were defeated he demanded hostages. 6. By hurling their weapons they throw the enemy into confusion. 7. Being unable to land (48, i.), they asked to be sent back. 8. We shall send Commius back and sue for peace. 9. As Commius is landing from the ship, they seize him (50, iii.). 10. On their promising to do this they were sent back. 11. After they have sued for peace and given hostages, they yet have begun to make war. 12. The leading men on assembling began to complain. 13. Sending the cavalry in advance, he orders the chief men to be seized. 14. They followed the standards and attacked the enemy.

VERBS COMPLETED BY THE DATIVE, GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.

51. Many verbs followed by a direct object in English are represented in Latin by verbs that take, not the accusative, but some other of the oblique cases; as,

They forget the disagreement: **Dissēnsiōnis oblīvīscuntur.**
He persuades the state: **Cīvitātī persuādet.**
He used the timber and bronze: **Māteriā atque aere ūtēbātur.**

Thus, while the English verb is transitive, the Latin equivalent is intransitive.

52. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE.

Many verbs, chiefly denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage* or *disposition towards*, are followed by the dative. Of these the most important are:

Approach, **appropinquō.**
Believe, **crēdō.**
Command,
  (= *order*), **imperō, mandō.**
  (= *be in charge of*), **praesum.**
Injure, *damage*, **noceō.**
Meet, **occurrō,** so **obviam eō.**

Obey, **pāreō, obtemperō.**
Oppose, *resist*, **resistō, (repūgnō, obsistō, occurrō).**
Pardon, **īgnōscō.**
Persuade, **persuādeō, suādeō.**
Spare, **parcō.**
Trust, **fīdō, cōnfīdō.**

Other verbs of this class are:

Aid, *assist*, **subveniō, succurrō.**
Benefit, **prōsum.**
Displease, **displiceō.**
Distrust, **diffīdō.**
Envy, **invideō.**
Favor, **faveō, studeō.**
Heal, **medeor.**
Indulge, **indulgeō.**

Interrupt, **interveniō.**
Marry (a man), **nūbō.**
Please, **placeō.**
Relieve, *succeed*, **succēdō.**
Satisfy, **satisfaciō.**
Serve, **serviō.**
Surpass, **praestō.**
Threaten, **minor.**

53. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE GENITIVE.

(*a*) Some verbs meaning *to pity*, *remember* or *forget* are followed by the genitive; namely:

Pity, **misereor,** and **miseret** (for which see section 91, *d*).
Remember, *be mindful of*, **meminī.**
Call to mind, *recollect*, **reminīscor.**
Forget, **oblīvīscor.**

(*b*) Two impersonal verbs, **interest** and (rarely) **rēfert,** meaning *it concerns, it interests* (*it is of importance to*), take the genitive of the person interested; as, *It concerns the state:* **Reī pūblicae interest.**

i. But instead of the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns, the ablative feminine of the possessives is used, namely, **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā**; as, *This concerns me:* **Hōc meā interest** (or **rēfert**). In this usage *rēfert* is common.

ii. The *thing which is of importance* is expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive (with or without a subject accusative) or a clause. The *degree of importance* is expressed by an adverb or by the genitive of price (see section 88); as, *Your safety is of great importance to me:* **Māgnī meā interest ut salvus sīs.**

54. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ABLATIVE.

The following verbs (with their compounds) are followed by the ablative:

Use, **ūtor.** *Enjoy,* **fruor.** *Eat,* **vescor.**
Perform, **fungor.** *Gain, obtain,* **potior.**

Also verbs of *lacking,* **egeō, careō.**

55. i. That in the case of such verbs the irregularity is only apparent may be seen by observing the exact meaning of the verb; for instance, *serviō, am a slave* (*to*)*; persuādeō, make it acceptable* (*to*)*; satisfaciō, do enough* (*for*)*; pāreō, am at hand* (*for*)*; resistō, stand in opposition* (*to*)*; praesum, am at the head* (*with reference to*)*; ūtor, benefit myself* (*by means of*)*; potior, become powerful* (*by means of*)*; careō, be cut off* (*from*)*; oblīvīscor, become dark* (*as regards*) i.e., *become forgetful* (*of*).

ii. Accordingly it is not necessary that all verbs having the same English equivalent should take the same case. Thus *jubeō* (*command, order*) takes the accusative and infinitive, and *juvō* (*aid*), *laedō* (*injure*), *dēlectō* (*please*), *offendō* (*displease*), *misereor* (*pity*), and *recordor* (*recollect*), regularly take the accusative

iii. Some of the verbs given in sections 52-54 are sometimes followed by a different case, especially when used in a different sense. Thus *imperō* (*command*) takes the dative, but *imperō* (*demand, require*) takes the accusative, both being united in, *He demands hostages of the enemy,* **Hostibus imperat obsidēs.** *Meminī, remember* (*of recalling a person one has known*), takes the accusative. *Potior, gain sovereignty over,* takes the genitive, chiefly in the phrase *rērum potīrī, to obtain control of affairs.* And the verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* regularly have the accusative in the case of neuter pronouns or neuter adjectives used substantively.

iv. Certain phrases having the value of verbs which take the dative have the same construction, e.g., *fidem habeō* = *cōnfīdō.*

v. *Ūtor* may take a second ablative used predicatively ; as, *He used these men as guides :* **Hīs ducibus ūtēbātur.**

vi. *Interdīcō, debar,* takes a dative (or sometimes an accusative) of the person debarred, the ablative of the thing forbidden.

56. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.—In English only the active voice of an intransitive verb may be used. But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (*i.e.*, such as do not govern a direct object in the accusative), the passive may be used impersonally, that is, in the third person singular, and (in the compound tenses) in the neuter. The impersonal passive denotes merely the occurrence of an action without reference to the doer ; as, **Pūgnātur** : *fighting takes place,* or *there is a fight.* **Ventum est** : *coming took place.* The usual English equivalent is the active voice, the subject being obtained from the context ; as, **Ventum est.** *He* (or *we* or *they*, etc.) *came.* (See also 203, *d.*)

57. In Latin all intransitive verbs, if used in the passive, must be used impersonally, and this impersonal passive construction is used to render into Latin the passive of the verbs which take the dative[1] (section 52) ; as,

Caesar is obeyed : **Caesarī pārētur** (i.e., *obedience is rendered to Caesar*).

They asked to be spared : **Ōrābant ut sibi parcerētur** (i.e., *that mercy might be shown to them*).

---

[1] The use of the impersonal passive construction with verbs which take the genitive or ablative occurs chiefly in the passive periphrastic conjugation. (See section 120, ii.)

I had not been pardoned: **Mihi nōn erat īgnōtum** (i.e., *forgiveness had not been granted to me*).

Thus where a verb takes the dative in the active voice, that dative must be retained in the passive, and cannot become the subject.

EXERCISE 8.

A.

1. Caesar besought the soldiers of the tenth legion to remember their former valor. 2. He answered that Dumnorix was always opposing Caesar's plans and assisting the enemy. 3. These resources he is using in order to gain the sovereign power. 4. He says that the senate distrusted the Gauls and ordered them to obey Caesar's commands. 5. Exercising his usual (*suus*) clemency, he promised to spare the Nervii. 6. To this embassy the answer was given that the Roman people could forget the old insult, but not the recent wrongs. 7. It is your interest (53, *b*) and the interest of all the citizens to obey the laws. 8. Word was brought that these tribes eat corn and flesh. 9. The soldiers whom Labienus commanded were persuaded not to injure the prisoners. 10. We are accustomed to pity those who obey our rule. 11. The states which oppose the Roman people cannot be pardoned. 12. All whom we met said that they lacked food. 13. He demanded (55, iii.) hostages from the other states.

B. (*Caesar*, *B. G. IV.*, *27-29.*)

1. They were approaching the upper harbor. 2. It happened that he commanded the whole army. 3. The enemy's indiscretion will not be forgiven. 4. Meanwhile he commands part of the cavalry to repair the vessel of which mention has been made. 5. All obey the commander in chief. 6. They are not accustomed to use grain. 7. We persuaded Caesar not to forgive the chief men. 8. He demanded ropes, anchors and other tackling from this state (55, iii.). 9. This storm damages the war vessels. 10. So great a storm arose that several vessels were damaged. 11. He commands our men to resist the cavalry. 12. The mainland was reached the same night. 13. They ask to be forgiven.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

58. Conditional sentences consist regularly of two clauses: (*a*) a subordinate clause containing some assumption and introduced by *sī* (or a compound of *sī*), and (*b*) a principal clause containing the conclusion which follows the assumption. The former is called the *Protasis*, the latter the *Apodosis*. The Protasis is often called the *conditional clause.*

59. One obvious distinction of conditions is that of (1) *present* or *past*, in which the question of fulfilment has already been decided, and (2) *future*, in which a possibility of fulfilment is always conceivable. In each of these, two forms of statement are in common use, making four main classes of conditional sentences.

60. I. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where *no hint* is given of the accordance of the supposed case with fact, but where it is merely stated that, granting the assumption, the conclusion logically follows, the *indicative* is used in both clauses, the tenses being those used for the same words if occurring in simple sentences; as,

If he thinks this, he is mistaken: **Si hōc exīstimat, errat.**

If I did wrong, I did it unwittingly: **Si peccāvī, īnsciēns fēcī.**

If they did this, they are not enemies: **Si hōc fēcērunt, nōn inimīcī sunt.**

61. II. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where we wish to represent the assumption (and consequently the conclusion also) as *contrary to fact*, the *subjunctive* is used in both clauses, the *imperfect* subjunctive for *present* time, and the *pluperfect* subjunctive for *past* time; as,

If he thought this (but he does not), *he would be mistaken:* **Sī hōc exīstimāret, errāret.**

If he had said this (but he did not), *he would have been mistaken:* **Sī hōc dīxisset, errāvisset.**

Had my advice prevailed, we should to-day be free: **Sī meum cōnsilium valuisset, hodiē līberī essēmus.**

i. The imperfect subjunctive may also refer to continued or repeated action in *past* time.

62. III. In FUTURE conditions, one class corresponds exactly to that given in section 60, where the *logical* result is emphasized. The English has in the protasis generally the *present* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (sometimes the imperative); the Latin has in the protasis the *future* or *future perfect* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (or imperative).

The difference in tenses is due to the fact that Latin in dependent clauses is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future), and also priority of action in relation to the main verb.

If he thinks that, he will be mistaken: **Sī hōc exīstimābit, errābit.**

If he does that, he will receive a reward: **Sī hōc fēcerit, praemium cōnsequētur.** (The doing must precede the receiving.)

If they cross the river, hold your ground: **Si flūmen trānsierint, sustinēte.**

63. IV. In the other class of FUTURE conditions, where a *conceivable* case is put less vividly,[1] the English has in both clauses *should* or *would* (or in the protasis it may have the past subjunctive or *were to*); the Latin has the *present subjunctive* in both clauses; as,

If he were to say this (or *If he said this*), *he would be mistaken:* **Sī hōc dīcat, erret.**

Time would fail me, if I should resolve to describe everything: **Sī velim omnia dēscrībere, diēs mē dēficiat.**

---

[1] The two classes are often distinguished as the *more vivid* and the *less vivid* form of future conditions.

64. i. Many departures from these four forms are found, especially other combinations of tenses. Of the cases where the mood is varied, the most important is in conditions contrary to fact (section 61), where *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, and the periphrastic conjugations (sections 120 and 123) are regularly used in the indicative instead of in the subjunctive ; as, *If Caesar had set out, he could have crossed the river:* **Caesar, sī profectus esset, flūmen trānsīre potuit.**[1]

ii. Alternative conditions are introduced by **sīve . . . sīve** (or **seu . . . seu**) *whether . . . or*, which follow the rules for *sī* as regards mood and tense ; as, *It will be an easy task, whether they remain or set out:* **Facilis erit rēs, seu manēbunt seu proficīscentur.**

Whether . . . or in this sense should be carefully distinguished from *whether . . . or* represented by *utrum . . . an* (section 38). In the former case we can always add *in either case*, or change to *no matter whether . . . or*.

iii. For *if not*, **sī nōn, sī minus** and **nisi** are found. *Nisi* (*unless*) is used to mark an exception, or after negatives. *Sī minus* is used where the verb is to be supplied from the context.

iv. Two mutually exclusive conditions are introduced by **sī . . . sīn,** *if . . . but if.* For *but if not*, where the verb is omitted, *sīn minus* or *sīn aliter* is used.

v. An important special type of the present or past logical condition (section 60) is the so-called *general condition*, which states what is habitual in any one of a series of recurrent actions. For present time the *perfect*[2] indicative is usual in the protasis, the present indicative in the apodosis ; for past time the *pluperfect*[2] indicative in the protasis and the imperfect indicative in the apodosis ; as, *If any crime is committed, the Druids fix the penalty:* **Sī quod est admissum facinus, Druidēs poenam cōnstituunt.** *If ever they began to despair, they would betake themselves to the nearest towns:* **Sī quandō dēspērāre coeperant, sē in proxima oppida recipiēbant.**

vi. For *sī* translated by *in the hope that*, *to see whether*, see section 177.

---

[1] In poetry and rhetorical prose the indicative of other verbs also is sometimes found in the apodosis of conditions contrary to fact.

[2] The perfect and pluperfect are used on the same principle as the future perfect in section 62.

vii. Participles and adjectives may be used in place of the regular protasis to express condition; as, *He will come, if asked:* **Rogātus veniet.** *If we keep together we shall be a match for them:* **Ūniversī parēs iīs erimus.**

viii. Another favorite classification of the conditional clauses is threefold:

(*a*) Logical conditions (past, present or future) combining classes I. and III. above. Indicative in both clauses.

(*b*) Ideal or contingent conditions (future)—the same as class IV. above. Present subjunctive in both clauses.

(*c*) Unreal conditions (present or past)—the same as class II. above. Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

EXERCISE 9.

A.

1. If Casticus should seize the supreme power in his state, Caesar would wage war against him. 2. If our troops defeat the enemy, the Belgians will at once send ambassadors to Caesar. 3. If the Gauls had been conquered by Caesar, they would have immediately sent ambassadors to him concerning peace. 4. If a dispute arises among them (64, v.), the chief men decide (it). 5. The Germans would not now be carrying on war with the Gauls if Ariovistus had been defeated by the Roman troops. 6. If this is reported to Ariovistus, he will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages. 7. If the general had not sent forward three cohorts, the enemy would have gained the victory and our soldiers would now be in the greatest peril. 8. The Helvetians would return to their territories if the Roman people were to conclude peace with them. 9. Unless Caesar enrols two legions in that place, he will not be able to carry on the war successfully with the Gauls. 10. If the enemy had set fire to all their towns and villages and burnt up all their corn, they would not have been able (64, i.) to return. 11. If Caesar meets with favorable weather, he will weigh anchor; but if not (64, iv.), he will return. 12. If the Germans had made an attempt to cross the Rhine, Caesar would have marched against them with two legions.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 28-30.*)

1. If the ships have been wrecked, they are useless. 2. If a storm had not arisen, the chiefs would not have renewed the war. 3. If we cast anchor, the ships will be filled with the waves. 4. If a conspiracy were to be formed, the army would cross over to Gaul. 5. If vessels were wanting, the danger would be great. 6. If we conquer these, no one will cross over. 7. Had corn been provided, they would have wintered in Britain. 8. If the campaign should be prolonged, they would leave the camp. 9. If the moon was full, the tides were high. 10. If the legions are brought over without baggage, the camp will be smaller. 11. If this had happened, they would be confident that no one would make war.

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION. CLAUSES OF PROVISO. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON.

65. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION (or ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES) are subordinate clauses which concede or admit something in spite of which the statement in the principal clause still holds good.

(*a*) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *in spite of the fact that*, or *whereas*, are rendered into Latin by *quamquam*, *etsī* or *tametsī* with the *indicative*, or by *cum* with the *subjunctive*; as,

Although the difficulty was very great, he determined to lead his army across: **Etsī summa erat difficultās, tamen trādūcere exercitum cōnstituit.**

The Romans, in spite of being weary with fighting, yet advanced: **Rōmānī, quamquam proeliō fessī erant, tamen prōcēdunt.**

He kept himself in camp, although the enemy every day gave him an opportunity to fight: **Castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum hostēs cotīdiē pūgnandī potestātem facerent.**

He was poor, whereas (or *while*) *he might have been very rich:* **Fuit pauper, cum dīvitissimus esse posset.**

(*b*) Clauses introduced by *even though*, *even if*, *even granting*, are rendered into Latin by *etsī* or *etiamsī* with the *indicative* or *subjunctive*, according to the rules for the protasis of conditional sentences (sections 60-63), or by *ut* or *nē* with the *subjunctive*; as,

Even if he cannot show gratitude, he at least can feel it: **Etiamsī referre grātiam nōn potest** (section 60), **habēre certē potest.**

Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth: **Vēra loquī, etsī meum ingenium nōn movēret** (section 61), **necessitās cōgit.**

Even supposing everything should turn out contrary to expectation, we are very powerful in ships: **Ut omnia contrā opīniōnem accidant, plūrimum nāvibus possumus.**

(*c*) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *however much*, *no matter how*, are rendered into Latin by *quamvīs* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as, *However great expectation may be* (or *Although expectation be great*), *yet you will surpass it:* **Quamvīs sit māgna exspectātiō, tamen eam vincēs.**

66. i. The impersonal verb *licet* and the subjunctive (see section 143, fn.) is often used with the force of *even though.*

ii. *Quamvīs* is sometimes joined with a single word, the predicate of the subordinate clause being understood; as, *However few they are, they venture to advance:* **Quamvīs paucī** (supply **sint**) **adīre audent.**

iii. *Quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent clause, and may then be rendered *and yet.*

iv. Only in class (*a*) is it always certain that what is conceded is a fact.

v. For the concessive ablative absolute see section 48, and for concessive relative clauses, section 171.

67. CLAUSES OF PROVISO are subordinate clauses embodying some stipulation. They are introduced in English by *provided*, or *if only*, or *so long as*; in Latin commonly by *dum*, *dummodo* or *modo* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as, *Let them hate, provided* (or *so long as*) *they fear:* **Ōderint dum metuant.**

i. The negative in clauses of proviso is *nē.*

68. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are subordinate clauses containing a comparison to some imaginary state of affairs. Such clauses are introduced in English by *as if;* in Latin by *quasi, tamquam sī, velut sī, ut sī, ac sī,* or by *tamquam* or *velut* alone. These are followed by the subjunctive, the sequence of tenses being observed (*i.e.*, present or perfect subjunctive after the primary tenses, imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses); as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus just as if he were present:* **Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrēmus.**[1]

i. *Quasi, tamquam, ut* and *velut* are used with a similar force with participles; as, *They halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven:* **Restitērunt tamquam caelestī vōce jussī.**

EXERCISE 10.

A.

1. Although he saw that the legions were being hard pressed, he was unwilling to order the soldiers to retreat. 2. Even if Caesar were in command of the army, he would not be able to defeat the enemy. 3. Provided that (67) the enemy do not learn our numbers, we shall attack them to-morrow. 4. Many remain in the camp, as if (68) they were unwilling to return to Gaul. 5. If Caesar comes up with the enemy, he will easily defeat them, no matter how (65, *c*) brave and numerous they may be. 6. In spite of their having taken up their position on the higher ground, the enemy could not withstand the attacks of our men. 7. Although he had now come in sight of the army, he did not cease from his flight. 8. The cavalry quickly crossed the river, just as if (68) they had been instructed (to do so). 9. Though you can persuade these men to send envoys, you cannot make them friends. 10. Even though he should have met with suitable weather, he would not have sailed for Britain. 11. Whereas they might return without danger, they are unwilling to set out. 12. The enemy sent hostages at once, as if (68, i.) afraid of Caesar's vengeance.

---

[1] In all such clauses, both English and Latin, the verb of the real apodosis has been suppressed; as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus as* (*we should shudder*) *if he were present:* **Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut (horreāmus) sī cōram adsit, horrēmus.**

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 31, 32.*)

1. Although the rest of the ships had been repaired, he had not yet set out. 2. Even if they had given hostages, he would not have set out. 3. Although they were reaping, they had not laid aside their arms. 4. Although he suspects that this has happened, he orders the ships to be repaired. 5. In spite of the fact that all the vessels had been lost, he did not suspect that the enemy would form this plan. 6. Even if we are hard pressed by the enemy, we shall not surrender. 7. Although the ships have been wrecked, we shall not use their timber. 8. The enemy were hurling weapons from every quarter, whereas our men, being crowded together, were with difficulty holding their own. 9. Even if a larger cloud of dust were to be seen, he would not learn our plan.

USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

69. The DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb (whether active or deponent) is put in the accusative; as,

They slay the man: **Hominem interficiunt.**

He saw the forces of the enemy: **Hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.**

He builds a bridge: **Pontem facit.**

i. The direct object is that which is (*a*) *affected* or *apprehended*, or (*b*) *caused* or *produced*, by the action of the verb.

ii. Some verbs (chiefly verbs of emotion) which are intransitive in English are represented by transitive verbs in Latin, such as *horrēre* (*shudder at*), *dolēre* (*grieve over*), *rīdēre* (*laugh at*), *spērāre* (*hope for*), *exspectāre* (*wait for*), *tacēre* (*be silent about*); as, *They shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus:* **Crudēlitātem Ariovistī horrent.**

iii. Many intransitive verbs (chiefly verbs of motion) become transitive when compounded with prepositions (especially *circum*, *praeter* and *trāns*); as,

They cross the river: **Flūmen trānseunt.**

The Helvetians meet Caesar: **Helvētiī Caesarem conveniunt.**

Compare in English such verbs as *overrun, undergo.* (See section 78, v. *a.*)

iv. A few transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* take two accusatives in the active, one governed by the verb and the other by the preposition; as, *He leads his army across the river:* **Flūmen exercitum trādūcit.** (The preposition may, however, be repeated; as, **Trāns flūmen exercitum trādūcit.**) In the passive the accusative governed by the preposition may be retained.

v. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *electing*, *considering* and *showing* take two accusatives of the same person or thing, one being the direct object, and the other a predicate noun or adjective; as,

He calls the Ædui brothers: **Aeduōs frātrēs appellat.** *They let him know:* **Eum certiōrem faciunt.** *They choose these as their leaders:* **Hōs ducēs dēligunt sibi.** *They consider this a mark of valor:* **Hōc proprium virtūtis exīstimant.**

In the passive both direct object and predicate become nominative; as,

Ariovistus was called friend: **Ariovistus amīcus appellātus est.**

vi. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and *concealing* may take two accusatives, the one of the person and the other of the thing; as, *Caesar demands corn of the Ædui:* **Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flagitat.** *I concealed my opinion from him:* **Eum sententiam cēlāvī.** In the passive one accusative, usually of the thing, may be retained. All these verbs, however, may take a prepositional phrase in place of one of the accusatives, as *petō*, *postulō* and *quaerō* regularly do.

vii. In poetry, the passive of verbs of *clothing* is used with a reflexive or 'middle' force, and takes a direct object; as, **Galeam induitur**: *He puts on (himself) the helmet.*

The perfect participle passive of some other verbs also is found with the same accusative of the direct object that the active voice might take; as, **Per pedēs trājectus lōra**: *Having thongs put through his feet.*

70. The accusative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS:

ad, *to;* **adversus, adversum,** *against;* **ante,** *before;* **apud,** *near, at;* **circā, circum,** *around;* **circiter,** *about;* **cis, citrā,** *on this side* *of;* **contrā,** *opposite to, against;* **ergā,** *towards;* **extrā,** *outside;* **īnfrā,** *below;* **inter,** *between, among;* **intrā,** *within;* **jūxtā,** *near;* **ob,** *on account of;* **penes,** *in the power of;* **per,** *through;* **pōne, post,** *behind, after;* **praeter,** *past, except;* **prope,** *near;* **propter,** *on account of;* **secundum,** *after, following;* **suprā,** *above;* **trāns,** *across;* **ūltrā,** *beyond;* **versus,** *towards.*

The accusative is also used with **in,** *into* or *in,* and **sub,** *under,* when they express motion towards, and usually with **subter,** *beneath,* and **super,** *above.* These four also take the ablative (section 108).

i. The adverbs *propius* and *proximē, prīdiē* and *postrīdiē,* and the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* sometimes take the accusative.

71. The Subject of the Infinitive (except the historical infinitive, section 112) is put in the accusative; as,

He answered that Caesar was doing wrong: **Respondit Caesarem injūriam facere.**

It is dangerous for the Germans to cross the Rhine: **Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīre est perīculōsum.**

72. Cognate Accusative.—Intransitive verbs often take an accusative to define more clearly their meaning. This is either a substantive (generally modified by an adjective) of kindred meaning and often of kindred derivation, or more frequently a neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively; as, *We shall live a safer life:* **Tūtiōrem vītam vīvēmus.** *He makes almost the same mistakes:* **Eadem ferē peccat.**

This is the origin of the adverbial use of *multum, nihil, quid, quantum,* etc.; as, *He has very great power:* **Plūrimum potest.**

i. There are also a few isolated phrases (used adverbially) which are closely connected with the cognate accusative, such as *māximam partem, for the most part.*

73. Accusative of Specification.—In poetry, largely through Greek influence,[1] the accusative is used to denote the part of the body affected; as, **Tremit artūs**: *He trembles in his limbs.* **Ōs deō similis**: *In face like to a god.*

74. The accusative is used in Exclamations, with or without an interjection; as, *Ah, wretched me:* **Mē miserum** or **Ō mē miserum.**

---

[1] Hence this is often called the Greek accusative.

75. For the use of the accusative to denote DURATION OF TIME, EXTENT OF SPACE, and LIMIT OF MOTION, see sections 125, 128, and 129.

EXERCISE 11.

A.

1. The Gauls had already led three-fourths of their troops across (69, iv.) that river. 2. He learned that they had all encamped within those forests and were there waiting for (69, ii.) the approach of the Romans. 3. It is very easy for our forces to march through these districts. 4. The ships were carried down towards (*ad*) the lower part of the island, which is nearer (70, i.) the west. 5. The tribes which dwell on this side the Rhine have been made tributary. 6. He crossed the river, and having attacked the enemy, he began to storm the city. 7. They are mistaken, if they hope for (69, ii.) aid from us. 8. Before his arrival they had seized the country (*loca*) around the forest which the Greeks call Orcynia. 9. Because of their fear, they concealed (69, vi.) everything from Caesar. 10. Perceiving how much (72) power he had, we determined to wait for reinforcements. 11. On being asked their opinion (69, vi.) they made no answer. 12. For (*ob*) the same reason, he did not trust the Gauls much (72).

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 32, 33.*)

1. On account of the large number of the enemy they adopt this plan. 2. Up to that time they called this legion the seventh. 3. This will make the camp larger. 4. He observed that part of the legion had marched in that direction. 5. They suddenly attack the outposts. 6. They are leaving the field (*lit.* battle), and are betaking themselves to the camp. 7. He reports that this is the custom among all the barbarians. 8. He suspects that this will make the ranks uncertain. 9. They informed the enemy that the cavalry would surround the legion. 10. It is time for the rest of the cohorts to arm themselves. 11. Before the battle he had ordered a squadron of cavalry to fight among the infantry.

USES OF THE DATIVE.

76. The Dative case is used to express the indirect or remote connection of a person or thing with the action, feeling, or quality expressed by a verb or adjective. There are three main uses :[1] to express (1) the indirect object, (2) the person interested, (3) the purpose served. The dative may generally be rendered by *to* or *for*.

77. THE INDIRECT OBJECT, completing the meaning of a verb by denoting a person or thing indirectly affected, is put in the dative ; as,

They yield to Caesar : **Caesarī cēdunt.**

They granted lands to the Germans : **Germānīs agrōs dedērunt.**

78. i. The dative of the indirect object is found (*a*) with intransitive verbs, (*b*) with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object.[2]

ii. Closely allied to the use with verbs is the use of the DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES, whose meaning it completes by denoting that to which the feeling or quality is directed ; as,

He was friendly to the Helvetians : **Helvētiīs erat amīcus.**

Such adjectives are those meaning *near*, *friendly*, *like*, *useful*, *easy*, *agreeable*, *known*, and their opposites. Many of these, however, admit other constructions, especially a preposition (*ad* or *in*) with the accusative. The dative is also found with adverbs of like meaning.

iii. Often in English, especially with verbs of *giving*, *promising* and *telling*, the preposition *to* is not used, and the indirect object is in form indistinguishable from the direct ; as, *He gave the soldiers the signal :* **Mīlitibus sīgnum dedit.** *He told Cicero he would return :* **Cicerōnī dīxit sē reversūrum.**

---

[1] This division is not fundamental, but is convenient for practical purposes.

[2] The direct object of course becomes the subject in the passive voice, the indirect object remaining.

iv. Of especial importance are those cases where, because the usual translation is somewhat inexact, a Latin intransitive verb with the indirect object corresponds to an English transitive verb with the direct object. (See section 52.)

v. Another important usage is the DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS. Where an English verb with a preposition and its object is represented in Latin by a verb compounded with the corresponding preposition (e.g., *adeō = I go to*), difficulty often arises in determining the case of the Latin noun.

Three different constructions are found, for the use of which no invariable rules can be given; the student must depend upon observation and authority.

(*a*) The compound is sometimes followed by the same case as the preposition would take. (For the accusative see section 69, iii. and iv.; for the ablative, section 93.)

(*b*) More often (and especially in the literal local sense) the prefixed preposition is repeated with the noun; as, *They sally out from the camp:* **Ex castrīs ērumpunt.** *He came up to the camp:* **Ad castra accessit.** *He converses with him:* **Cum eō colloquitur.** *They put everything into the fire:* **Omnia in īgnem īnferunt.**

(*c*) But very often also, in place of the preposition and noun, Latin has the dative (to which in the case of transitive compounds may be added an accusative of the direct object). This dative means literally *with reference to*;[1] as,

He comes beneath the roof: **Tēctō succēdit** (literally, *He comes beneath, with reference to the roof*).

He puts friendship before everything: **Amīcitiam omnibus rēbus antepōnit** (literally, *He puts friendship in front, with reference to everything*).

This usage is especially common with compounds of *ad*, *ante*, *con-*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*; generally where the compound is not used in a literal sense; as, *He commanded the cavalry:* **Equitātuī praeerat**[2] (more literally, *He was at the head of the*

---

[1] In no case should this dative be regarded as depending on the preposition, but rather on the whole verb.

[2] Most of the compounds of *sum* are used in a similar way.

cavalry). *He inspired the soldiers with hope :* **Spem intulit mīlitibus** (more literally, *He put hope into the soldiers*). *He put Brutus over the fleet :* **Brūtum classī praefēcit.**

vi. A few verbs, such as *dōnō* and *circumdō*, admit a double construction: (1) dative and accusative, (2) accusative and ablative; as, *He presented the plunder to the soldiers:* **Praedam mīlitibus dōnāvit.** *They presented him with the citizenship:* **Eum cīvitāte dōnāvērunt.**

vii. In the poets the dative of indirect object is extended to include the idea of motion towards[1] (see section 125), and is also used with verbs of *nearness, union, difference* and *contention.*

79. THE DATIVE OF INTEREST denotes the person or thing concerned (especially that benefited or harmed). It is really identical with the dative of the indirect object, but the connection is looser and the dative complement not so essential to the verb; as,

He ordered each to take thought for himself: **Sibi quemque cōnsulere jussit.**

I do not ask this for myself: **Neque mihi haec quaerō.**[2]

80. Besides this simple use (often called the *dative of advantage or disadvantage*), the dative of interest includes:

(*a*) The dative with verbs of *taking away* or *warding off*, with which it is translated by *from ;* as, *They are taking from me my liberty:* **Mihi lībertātem ēripiunt.**

(*b*) The DATIVE OF REFERENCE, modifying the sentence as a whole and denoting a person indirectly interested rather than actually affected. This includes:

i. Many cases where English would use a *possessive:* as, *Pulio's shield is pierced:* **Trānsfīgitur scūtum Puliōnī** (more nearly, *Pulio gets his shield pierced*).

ii. The person *in whose eyes:* as, *She is beautiful to many:* **Fōrmōsa est multīs.** *They wished to be blameless in Caesar's eyes:* **Caesarī pūrgātī esse volēbant.**

---

[1] This, some grammarians contend, was the original force of the dative.

[2] *For*, meaning *in defence of*, is expressed by *prō* with the ablative.

iii. Participles expressing *the point of view:* as, *The first town as you come from Epirus:* **Oppidum prīmum venientibus ab Ēpīrō.**

iv. The dative with interjections; as, *Woe to the conquered:* **Vae victīs.**

(*c*) The Ethical Dative, confined to personal pronouns, and indicating a person conceived to be interested in the statement. It is chiefly used in colloquial expressions of emotion, and often answers to the English *pray* or *bless me.* Here belongs the expression *sibi velle;* as, *What does he mean?* **Quid sibi vult?**

(*d*) The Dative of the Apparent Agent with the gerundive, to indicate the person interested, and hence presumably the agent; as,

Everything had to be done by Caesar: **Caesarī omnia erant agenda.**

i. This dative is sometimes found (especially in poetry) with other forms of the passive, chiefly the compound ones.

ii. To avoid ambiguity the gerundive may have *ab* and the ablative in place of the dative of agent; as, *I must show him gratitude:* **Eī ā mē referenda est grātia.**

(*e*) The Dative of Possessor, chiefly with the verbs *sum* and *dēsum*, to denote the person interested as owner; as, *They state that they have nothing:* **Dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse.**

81. The Dative of Purpose is a predicative dative, denoting the purpose served (that which something tends or is intended to be), and is usually accompanied by another dative of the person interested (the so-called *double dative* construction); as,

They choose a place for the camp: **Locum castrīs dēligunt.**

It was a great hindrance to the Gauls: **Gallīs māgnō erat impedīmentō.**

They were coming to the aid of the Nervii: **Auxiliō Nerviīs veniēbant.**

He leaves five cohorts for the defence of the camp: **Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit.**

i. This dative is especially common with the verb *sum* (after which it has almost the force of the ordinary predicate noun), and is found also with *fīō*, *veniō*, *mittō*, *relinquō*, *dō*. The nouns so used are generally of a semi-abstract nature, and are always in the singular, some of the commonest being *auxiliō*, *praesidiō*, *subsidiō*, *ūsuī*, *impedīmentō*, *cūrae*, *salūtī*, *odiō*.

EXERCISE 12.

A.

1. He consulted the welfare of the troops whom Labienus commanded. 2. He said all these matters would be an object of concern to him. 3. It is well known to all that the departure of the Belgians was like a rout. 4. The soldiers told Labienus that Caesar had always shown special indulgence to this legion. 5. Word was brought to the lieutenant that the general had left two cohorts as a protection to the ships. 6. They said they preferred death to slavery, and that they would oppose themselves to the enemy. 7. He found that traders have (80, *e*) no access to these tribes. 8. He asked what Caesar meant (80, *c*), and why he had demanded hostages of the Gauls. 9. To these envoys Caesar made answer that he could have (80, *e*) no friendship with the Germans. 10. A centurion, who had participated in many engagements, was in command of the troops. 11. He ordered (*imperō*) the soldiers not to surround the camp with a trench nor (28, ii.) to go to the assistance of Labienus. 12. Perceiving that they had become suspected in our eyes (80, *b*, ii.), they threw themselves at Caesar's (80, *b*, i.) feet.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 33, 34.*)

1. They point out to Caesar that an opportunity is given to all. 2. He sent the cavalry to the assistance of the infantry. 3. Messengers are sent out to all the barbarians. 4. The small number of the enemy was unknown to our men. 5. Time had not been left for these things. 6. For several days he had fears (*timeō*) for our soldiers. 7. They were drawing near (*appropinquō*) to the camp; they betake themselves to the camp. 8. He had thought this messenger most faithful to Caesar. 9. The noise of

the chariots inspires (*īnferō*) fear in the horses. 10. Help will be brought to the Romans. 11. The chariots were of great service to the enemy. 12. He names (*dīcō*) a day for the battle. 13. They are not accustomed to make war on the Romans. 14. The cavalry had to leap to their feet.

USES OF THE GENITIVE.

82. The Genitive case is used for the more exact limiting of nouns, and has thus an adjectival force. It is also used to limit certain adjectives, and (by analogy) to complete certain verbs. The genitive is regularly translated (*a*) by the English possessive case, (*b*) by means of the preposition *of*, or (*c*) by means of the phrase *as regards*, or some equivalent preposition.

83. The POSSESSIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns to denote the owner; as,

The lands of the Helvetians: **Helvētiōrum agrī.**

i. The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate with *sum*, *fīō*, etc.; as, *Gaul does not belong to the Roman people:* **Neque Gallia est populī Rōmānī.**

ii. This predicative use is often found denoting the person whose property, duty, or custom the subject is, especially when the subject is an infinitive or a clause; as, *It is the part* (or *duty*) *of a wise man to obey the laws:* **Sapientis est lēgibus pārēre.** So **Sapientiae est**: *It is a mark of wisdom.* But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns the neuter possessives are used; as, *It is my duty* (or *my way*): **Meum est.**

iii. The word on which the genitive depends is frequently omitted, regularly so if it has been used previously in the sentence; as, *He had been in the army of Sulla, and afterwards in that of Crassus:* **In exercitū Sullae et posteā in Crassī fuerat.**

iv. This genitive is used with *causā*, *īnstar*, *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē*.

84. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote the person who acts or feels; as,

The flight of the Gauls: **Fuga Gallōrum.**

Caesar's anxiety: **Sollicitūdō Caesaris.**

i. In all such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its subject; as, *The Gauls fled:* **Gallī fūgērunt.**

85. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns denoting action or feeling, to denote that to which the action or feeling is directed; as,

The storming of the camp: **Expūgnātiō castrōrum.**
The fear of death: **Metus mortis.**

i. In such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its object; as, *They storm the camp:* **Expūgnant castra.**

ii. This construction is often used when there would be no corresponding Latin verb with the accusative, but where we should expect a dative or ablative or prepositional phrase; and in such cases it will constantly be found that the English equivalent is a phrase containing some other preposition than *of*, but one that, as a rule, is equivalent to *as regards* or *as to;* as,

Confidence in (as regards) one's self: **Suī fīdūcia.** *Exemption from (as regards) military service:* **Mīlitiae vacātiō.** *War with the Veneti:* **Bellum Venetōrum.** *Reputation for valor:* **Opīniō virtūtis.** *Danger to the cavalry:* **Perīculum equitum.**[1]

iii. Both the objective and the subjective genitive may modify the same noun; as, *The wrongs done by the Helvetians to the Roman people:* **Helvētiōrum injūriae populī Rōmānī.**

iv. Prepositional phrases[2] and possessive pronominal adjectives are sometimes used instead of the objective genitive; as, *Injuries to men:* **In hominēs injūriae.** *Danger to himself:* **Perīculum suum** (for **suī**).

---

[1] Compare *Sibi cōnfīdere, mīlitiā vacāre, cum Venetīs bellāre, dē virtūte opīnārī, perīculōsum equitibus.*

[2] Nouns in Latin are, as a rule, joined to each other by prepositions only when the word on which the prepositional phrase depends is of verbal origin, and even then but very seldom.

86. The Partitive Genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

The genitive is used with nouns, pronouns, numerals (especially ordinals and *mīlia*), adjectives (especially comparatives and superlatives), and occasionally with a few adverbs ; as,

Part of the soldiers : **Pars mīlitum.**

Which of you ? **Quis vestrum ?**

Two of the states : **Duae cīvitātum.**

Three miles (lit. *three thousands of paces*) *:* **Tria mīlia passuum.**

The bravest of all these : **Hōrum omnium fortissimī.**

Least of all : **Minimē omnium.**

i. The partitive genitive often depends on neuter pronouns or adjectives used substantively (but only in the nominative or the accusative without a preposition) ; e.g., *nihil*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *plūs*, *minus*, *quid*, *quod*, *aliquid*, *id*, *hōc*, and also the adverbs *satis* and *parum* used substantively. In most of these cases the English equivalent omits *of ;* as, *No time :* **Nihil spatiī.** *Less hesitation :* **Minus dubitātiōnis.** *They carried off what corn they could :* **Frūmentī quod potuērunt āvexērunt.** *This measure of consolation :* **Hōc sōlāciī.** *Sufficient protection :* **Satis praesidiī.**[1]

ii. In other cases an adjective used substantively regularly agrees in gender with the partitive genitive depending on it ; as, *Many of the ships :* **Multae nāvium.**

iii. With adjectives and pronouns the partitive idea is often expressed by prepositions, chiefly *ex* or *dē*, but also *inter*, *ante*, *apud* and *in*. Especially is this the case with *ūnus*, *paucī* and *quīdam ;* as, *One of his sons :* **Ūnus ē fīliīs.** *A few of our men :* **Paucī dē nostrīs.**

iv. The partitive genitive should not be used in the following cases :

(*a*) When, though English uses *of*, not a part but the whole is taken ; as,

To all of us : **Omnibus nōbīs.** *All of whom :* **Quī omnēs.** *Three hundred of us have conspired :* **Trecentī conjūrāvimus.**

---

[1] This genitive may be an adjective of the first and second declensions used substantively, but not of the third ; as, *No evil :* **Nihil malī,** but *Nothing greater :* **Nihil mājus.**

(*b*) To denote the whole, the remainder, or any local part of anything, as the top, middle, bottom, beginning. Here Latin idiom prefers an adjective in agreement, which regularly precedes the substantive; as,

The whole of Gaul: **Tōta Gallia.** *The rest of the struggle:* **Reliquum certāmen.** *The top of the hill:* **Summus collis.** *The middle of the river:* **Medium flūmen.** *At the beginning of spring:* **Prīmō vēre.**

87. The GENITIVE OF QUALITY[1] is used to denote some character or quality of the noun modified, including value, measure, time, etc.; as,

A man of great prudence: **Vir cōnsiliī māgnī.**
Stones of great weight: **Māgnī ponderis saxa.**
A few days' march: **Paucōrum diērum iter.**
A six-foot wall: **Mūrus sex pedum.**

i. There must be some adjectival modifier of this genitive; e.g., *A man of bravery* is not **vir fortitūdinis,** but **vir fortis.**

ii. The modifiers most commonly used are numerals and such adjectives as *māgnus, māximus, parvus, tantus, summus, paucī.* The genitive of quality should not be used with *pār, similis, dissimilis, aequus,* or with pronouns except in such phrases as *hūjusmodī, ējusmodī.*

iii. The genitive of quality may be used as a predicate; as, *The depth of the river was three feet:* **Flūminis erat altitūdō trium pedum.**

iv. For the relation to the ablative of quality see section 105, iii.

88. The GENITIVE OF PRICE denotes the value, but only in general, not definite, terms; as, *His influence was valued highly:* **Auctōritās ējus māgnī habēbātur.**

i. With verbs of *estimating* are found *tantī, quantī, māgnī, parvī, plūris, minōris, nihilī,* and a few other words.

---

[1] Also called the *Descriptive* Genitive or Genitive of *Characteristic.*

ii. With verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and *costing* are found only *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*.

iii. For the ablative of price see section 100.

89. The GENITIVE OF DEFINITION is used occasionally to explain the meaning of a noun, as a word in apposition might do; as, *The virtue of justice:* **Virtūs jūstitiae.**

i. With words like *urbs*, *oppidum*, *flūmen*, etc., this genitive is not used by the best prose writers: e.g., *The city of Rome* is **Urbs Rōma,** not **Rōmae.**

90. The GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.—Many adjectives require a genitive (usually objective) to complete their meaning; as,

Full of confidence: **Fīdūciae plēnus.**

Eager for power: **Cupidus imperiī.**

Skilled in war: **Perītus bellī.**

Unaccustomed to toil: **Īnsuētus labōris.**

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those of *desire*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, *participation* and *fulness*, so also some verbal adjectives in *-āx* and some present participles used as adjectives; as, *Averse to exertion:* **Fugiēns labōris.**

ii. As with the objective genitive after nouns (see section 85, ii.), so after adjectives the preposition used in the English rendering is frequently not *of*, but some equivalent of *as regards*.

iii. Many of these adjectives take other constructions; while in poetry the number of adjectives taking the genitive to define their application is largely extended.

iv. *Similis* commonly takes the genitive of persons, the genitive or dative of things. With personal pronouns the genitive should always be used.

91. The GENITIVE WITH VERBS. Many verbs take a genitive to complete their meaning.

(*a*) For verbs of *pitying*, *remembering* and *forgetting* see section 53, *a*.

(*b*) Verbs of *reminding* sometimes take the genitive of the thing called to mind with the accusative of the person reminded.

(*c*) Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning* and *acquitting* take the genitive of the fault or crime charged; as, *You are accusing him of treason:* **Eum prōditiōnis īnsimulātis.** *He was found guilty of wrong-doing:* **Injūriae condemnātus est.**

(*d*) The impersonal verbs of emotion, *miseret*, *pudet*, *piget*, *paenitet* and *taedet*, take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of that which causes the feeling;[1] as, *I am ashamed of my folly:* **Mē stultitiae pudet.**

(*e*) For the genitive with *interest* and *rēfert* see section 53, *b*.

(*f*) The genitive is sometimes found with verbs of *plenty* and *want*, with *potior* (see section 55, iii.), and in poetry (after the analogy of the Greek) with verbs denoting *separation*.

EXERCISE 13.

A.

1. He said that this circumstance had dispelled all doubt as to the arrival of the legions. 2. He was a man of consummate ability, and had very great experience in the art of war. 3. He believed that the soldiers of Ariovistus were wholly inexperienced in this mode of fighting. 4. In the middle of this course is the island of Mona (89, i.). 5. He reminds his men of their old disaster, and urges them not to forget the valor of the enemy. 6. He distributed three months' provisions among the soldiers. 7. It is a consul's duty (83, ii.) to be of service to the rest of the citizens. 8. The top of the hill was held by a few of our men (86, iii.). 9. Your influence is of great value (88), your friendship is of greater. 10. They acquitted him of treachery (91, *c*), but he was found guilty of carelessness. 11. They compelled the Ædui to give them part of their land and to undertake to form no project against the Sequani. 12. He says he is ashamed of his treachery (91, *d*), and sorry for having attempted to revolt.

B (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 34-36.*)

1. A large part of the country is unable to withstand the enemy's attack. 2. He had collected thirty-two ships of great speed. 3. So great was the barbarians' fear of the Romans that

---

[1] These verbs (except *miseret*) sometimes have instead of the genitive an infinitive or substantive clause or a neuter pronoun as subject; as, *I am sorry for having done this:* **Mē haec fēcisse paenitet.**

they turned and fled. 4. He orders the enemy's camp to be burned. 5. On account of the swiftness of Caesar's approach they could not escape. 6. Several of the ships (the rest of the ships) had reached the middle of the harbor. 7. It happened that all of us were inexperienced in sailing. 8. These transports were the weakest of all the vessels. 9. He pointed out how great was the peril of the legion. 10. He saw how great had been the peril of the previous day. 11. Mention has previously been made of the small number of harbors. 12. The cavalry were thought to be very eager (*cupidus*) for plunder.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

92. The Ablative case is an adverbial case, used to determine the circumstances attending upon some action. It is composite in its origin, representing three main ideas: the *true ablative*, meaning *from*; the *instrumental and comitative*, meaning *with*; and the *locative*, meaning *in* or *at*.

A. THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

93. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION denotes that from which something is removed or excluded; as,

They cut off Caesar from supplies: **Commeātū Caesarem interclūdunt.**

They are in need of assistance: **Auxiliō egent.**

i. The idea of separation is commonly expressed by the abl. with *ā* (*ab*), *ex* or *dē*, especially in the literal local sense. The simple ablative is used chiefly with verbs of *relieving*, *depriving* and *lacking*; with adjectives of *freedom* and *want*; and also with certain verbs of *removing* and *excluding* (such as *excēdō*, *expellō*, *ēgredior*, *prohibeō*, *interclūdō*, *dējiciō* and *dēsistō*), with which the preposition may either be used or be omitted.

ii. When the ablative denotes a person, the preposition should always be used.

iii. The fact that the verb expressing separation may be a compound of *ab*, *ex* or *dē* does not prevent the use of a preposition with the ablative. (See section 78, v. *b.*)

94. For the Ablative of the Place from which, with or without prepositions, see section 126.

95. The Ablative of Source denotes that from which something is derived. It is found chiefly with participles denoting ancestry or rank; as,

Descended from a very old family: **Antīquissimā familiā nātus.**

i. A preposition is regularly used (*a*) in the case of finite verbs, (*b*) with pronouns, and (*c*) to denote remote origin.

ii. Here belongs the ablative denoting the *material* of which something is made; with this ablative *ex* is commonly used in prose.

96. The Ablative of Cause[1] is used to denote the motive from which some act proceeds, more rarely the cause of something; as,

In that hope he sought our friendship: **Amīcitiam eā spē petīvit.**

i. In place of this ablative we find more frequently prepositional phrases with *ex*, *dē*, *ob*, *per*, *propter*, *prae*, the genitive with *causā* or *grātiā*, or, especially to indicate the moving cause, an ablative of means with a participle such as *adductus*, *permōtus*.

97. The Personal Agent with passive verbs is denoted by the ablative with *ā* or *ab;* as,

Their lands are laid waste by the enemy: **Agrī eōrum ab hostibus vāstantur.**

i. For the dative of apparent agent see section 80, *d*.

ii. For the so-called secondary agent with *per* see section 99, i.

98. The Ablative of Comparison (translated by means of *than*) is used after comparatives to denote that with which something is compared; as,

The Ubii are more civilized than the rest: **Ubiī cēterīs hūmāniōrēs sunt.**

---

[1] This use may also be classed under the Instrumental Ablative.

i. This ablative is most often used in negative sentences or their equivalent, and is rarer after adverbs than after adjectives.

ii. As a rule the ablative of comparison is used only when the first of the words compared is in the nominative or is a subject accusative. But the ablative of the relative pronoun is often used when the first of the words compared is an object accusative.

iii. In other cases, as well as often where the ablative might be used, *than* is expressed by *quam*, and a noun or pronoun following takes the case of the word with which it is compared;[1] as, *Ireland is smaller than Britain:* **Hibernia minor est quam Britannia.** After comparative adverbs also, *quam* is commonly found.

iv. The comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *longius* and *amplius* are regularly used without *quam*, yet without affecting the case of the following word; as, *More than eight hundred ships had been seen:* **Amplius octingentae nāvēs erant vīsae.**

v. The ablative of comparison of some abstract words such as *opīniō* and *spēs* is used in place of a comparative clause; as, *Sooner than anyone expected:* **Celerius omnī opīniōne.**

vi. Latin often omits the standard of comparison (e.g., *than is natural*, *than is usual*, *than is desirable*, *than that just mentioned*) when it is easily gathered from the context. In such cases the comparative may generally be translated by *unusually* or *too* with the positive.

vii. When two qualities in the same object are compared with each other, Latin has either *magis . . . quam* with the positive in both clauses or *quam* with the comparative in both clauses; as, *He is more brave than wise;* **Magis fortis est quam sapiēns,** or **Fortior est quam sapientior.** So, too, with adverbs.

B. THE INSTRUMENTAL AND COMITATIVE ABLATIVE.

99. The ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT is used to denote that by means of which something is effected; as,

---

[1] As a general rule, unlike English idiom, the same construction follows *quam* as precedes it; as, *He said they were doing nothing else than making preparations for war:* **Dīxit eōs nihil aliud agere quam bellum parāre.** See also section 98, vii.

It cannot be determined by the eyes: **Oculīs jūdicārī nōn potest.**

They live on flesh and are clad in skins: **Carne vīvunt, pellibusque sunt vestītī.**

i. A personal instrument is occasionally in the ablative, but is more often expressed by *per* and the accusative (sometimes called the *secondary agent*); as, *He learns by means of scouts:* **Cōgnōscit per explōrātōrēs.**

ii. The ablative of means is used (*a*) to denote the route or means of conveyance; (*b*) with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc.; (*c*) with *opus est* and *ūsus est;* (*d*) with verbs of *filling* and *abounding* and adjectives of *plenty.*

100. The Ablative of Price is used with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *exchanging* and *costing;* as,

It was purchased for a small price: **Parvō pretiō redēmptum est.**

They exchange war for agriculture: **Bellum agricultūrā commutant.**

i. For the genitive of indefinite price see section 88.

101. The Ablative of Measure of Difference is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the amount by which two persons or things differ; as,

The other road is much easier: **Alterum iter est multō facilius.**

Ireland is considered a half smaller than Britain: **Hibernia dīmidiō minor quam Britannia exīstimātur.**

A few days after: **Paucīs post diēbus.**

Three years before: **Tribus ante annīs.**

i. This ablative is used also in designations of distance, *e.g.*, with *distō* and *absum* (where also the accusative may be used), and regularly in the case of the words *spatium* and *intervāllum;* as, *He halts at a great distance:* **Māgnō intervāllō cōnsistit.**

ii. To this usage belong (*a*) *quō . . . eō* (or *quantō . . . tantō*) with comparatives, as, *The sooner the better:* **Quō citius eō melius;** (*b*) *quō* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive (sections 28, iii. and 139); and (*c*) *eō* or *hōc* with a comparative.[1]

---

[1] This last usage is, however, complicated with the ablative of cause, especially before *quod* clauses.

102. The ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION is used to denote in what respect a statement or term is to be taken as true; as,

They excel the rest of the Gauls in valor: **Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt.**

103. The ABLATIVE OF MANNER AND ACCOMPANIMENT expresses manner or the attendant circumstances of an action; as,

The news is carried with incredible speed: **Incrēdibilī celeritāte fāma perfertur.**

They began to mount the rampart with loud shouts: **Māximō clāmōre vāllum ascendere coepērunt.**

i. As a rule the ablative of manner and accompaniment requires the preposition *cum* when not modified by an adjective or a genitive, and even when so modified it often has *cum;* as,

He is put to death with torture: **Cum cruciātū necātur.**

He did this with the greatest care: **Summā (cum) dīligentiā hōc fēcit.**

Some ablatives, however (e.g., *vī*, *jūre*, *cāsū*), never take *cum*, being used virtually as adverbs.

ii. Literal accompaniment is always expressed by *cum* and the ablative; except that in certain military phrases (chiefly of the troops with which a march is made) *cum* may be omitted if the ablative has a modifier; as, *They hastened with all their forces:* **(Cum) omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt.**

iii. The ablative of manner denotes that *in accordance with which* something is done; as,

He did this in accordance with Caesar's instructions: **Praeceptīs Caesaris hōc fēcit.**[1]

104. For the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, which is perhaps locative in origin, but which in use resembles the ablative of accompaniment in expressing the attendant circumstances of an action, see sections 46-50.

---

[1] This usage is also classed by some as *specification*, by others as arising in the idea of *from*.

105. The ABLATIVE OF QUALITY[1] is used to denote some character or quality of the noun modified; as,

A young man of great valor: **Māgnā virtūte adulēscēns.**

i. As in the case of the genitive of quality (see section 87, i.), there must be some adjectival modifier of this ablative.

ii. This ablative may be used not only attributively but also in the predicate; as, *They have long hair:* **Capillō sunt prōmissō** (*literally, They are [a people] with long hair*).

iii. When the description refers to *number* the genitive of quality should be used. To denote *physical characteristics* or *external appearance* the ablative is used, while for other descriptions either case may be used, with a preference for the genitive to express *permanent* or *inherent qualities.*

C. THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

106. For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE, see section 127, and for the ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN or WITHIN WHICH, see sections 130 and 131.

107. The ablative is used with many special verbs and adjectives, really belonging to the classes already mentioned but not always easy to classify.

i. For the ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and with verbs of *lacking*, see section 54.

ii. The ablative is used with *glorior*, *laetor*, *gaudeō; fīdō, cōnfīdō*;[2] *nītor*, *innītor; assuēfaciō.*

iii. The ablative is used with *dīgnus*, *indīgnus; contentus*, *laetus; frētus.*

108. The ablative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS:

Ā, ab (abs), *from, by;* **absque,** *without;* **cōram,** *in the presence of;* **cum,** *with;* **dē,** *from, concerning;* **ē, ex,** *out of, from;* **prae,** *before, in comparison with, because of;* **prō,** *before, for (= in behalf of), in place of, in accordance with;* **sine,** *without;* **tenus,** *as far as.*
The ablative is also used with **in,** *in* and **sub,** *under*, expressing the place where, and sometimes with **subter,** *beneath*, and **super,** *above, concerning.* These four also take the accusative (section 70).

---

[1] Also called the *Descriptive* Ablative or Ablative of *Characteristic.*

[2] **Fīdō** and **cōnfīdō** regularly take the dative of persons (52).

EXERCISE 14.

A.

1. They strengthened the place with a wall, and filled the trench with water. 2. He was a man of the highest merit and worthy of all praise. 3. Relying on the friendship of the Romans, he had collected all his retainers, two hundred in number. 4. If they had been able to keep our men from supplies, they would have cut them off from returning. 5. They all stain themselves with woad, and thus are of more frightful appearance in battle. 6. In order that the soldiers, influenced by the hope of plunder, might not wander too widely (98, vi.), he did not suffer them to go farther than usual (98, vi.) from the camp. 7. He was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain two days before. 8. If they are of an unfriendly disposition, they will be incensed at this grievance. 9. With such swiftness and vehemence did our soldiers advance that more than six hundred of the enemy were slain. 10. Advancing with the charioteers, whom they are accustomed to use in all their battles, they prevent our men from landing from the ship. 11. In accordance with their custom, they were boasting insultingly of their victory. 12. Whether (64, ii.) by chance or design, they had been led out of the camp without baggage. 13. The Helvetians were much braver than the rest of the Gauls.

B (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 37-38.*)

1. The Morini being subdued, Caesar, being influenced by these things, set out with two legions for Britain. 2. All the buildings, about three hundred and twenty in number, were burned by the cavalry. 3. It was announced to the senate that hostages had come from two states. 4. They use the marshes as a place of refuge. 5. Our soldiers fight more bravely than the enemy; our soldiers are braver than the enemy. 6. On receipt of these despatches, more than (98, iv.) three hundred soldiers were landed from the ship. 7. Because of the marshes and forests the legion was led back from the territories of the Menapii. 8. They are unwilling to defend themselves with arms. 9. Aid was sent more

quickly by Caesar than by the lieutenant Cotta. 10. Influenced by this hope, they surround the legion with great shouting. 11. After several had been slain, the rest betook themselves to a marsh of vast extent (*ingēns māgnitūdō*). 12. The soldiers on disembarking (use both *expōnō* and *ēgredior*) hastened to their winter quarters.

VERBAL NOUNS—INFINITIVE, GERUND, SUPINE.

A. THE INFINITIVE.

109. The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; it governs the same case as other parts of the verb; it has the distinction of tense, and it has a subject. As a noun it is used as a subject or object of verbs, or as an appositive, and is always neuter.[1]

110. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the *subject* of a verb; as,

It is better to defend the camp: **Castra dēfendere praestat.**

It is not right for the Germans to cross over: **Germānōs trānsīre nōn aequum est.**[2]

It was reported that the cavalry was approaching: **Nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere.**

He shows that carrying out their plans is an easy matter: **Perfacile esse probat cōnāta perficere.**

i. This usage is found chiefly with (*a*) certain (so-called) impersonal verbs, e.g., *oportet*, *licet*, *juvat*, *placet*; (*b*) *est* and neuter adjectives, such as *aequum*, *turpe*, *ūtile*, *necesse*; (*c*) passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī* (section 14).

ii. Except with passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī*, the tense of the infinitive used as subject is almost invariably the present, the perfect occurring but seldom, and the future never.

---

[1] In the case of the historical infinitive, however, the infinitive has the value of a verb only, not of a noun.

[2] Notice that neither the introductory *for* nor the representative subject *it* is expressed in Latin by any separate word.

111. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is used as the object of a verb ; as,

He says Caesar has come: **Dīcit Caesarem vēnisse.**

He wished to depart: **Discēdere volēbat.**

i. For the accusative and infinitive construction see section 14, for the complementary infinitive, sections 19-21. For the infinitive as an appositive see section 195.

112. THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the present infinitive, with its subject (when expressed) in the *nominative* case, is often found instead of the imperfect indicative ; generally several such infinitives are found together ; as,

Every day Caesar dunned the Ædui ; day after day the Ædui kept putting him off: **Cotīdiē Caesar Aeduos flāgitāre ; diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī.**

B. THE GERUND.

113. The Gerund is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular. Like the infinitive, it is modified by an adverb, and governs the same case as the other parts of the verb.

In use the gerund corresponds pretty closely to the English gerund in *-ing*, but often also, especially with *ad*, it may be translated by the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to*.[1]

114. (*a*) The Genitive of the gerund is used chiefly with *causā* and as an objective genitive with nouns and adjectives ; as,

For the purpose of foraging: **Frūmentandī causā.**

Desirous of making war: **Bellandī cupidus.**

(*b*) The Dative of the gerund is rarely found, and is used chiefly with adjectives denoting *fitness* (for which *ad* and the accusative is more common), and in some official phrases ; as *A wall sufficiently high for defence:* **Satis altus tuendō mūrus.**

---

[1] Unlike the English usage, the gerund in Latin is not found as the subject or the object of a verb, the infinitive being used instead ; as, *Doing this is easy:* **Facile est haec facere.** *They began fleeing in all directions:* **Passim fugere coepērunt.**

(*c*) The Accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions, chiefly *ad;* as,

Ready to fight (or *Ready for fighting*)*:* **Parātus ad dīmicandum.**

(*d*) The Ablative of the gerund is used to denote means and with prepositions, chiefly *in*, *ab*, *dē* and *ex ;* as, *Occupied in reaping :* **In metendō occupātī.**

i. The use of the gerund with an accusative object is, on the whole, rare. See section 119.

ii. *Ob* and *in* are the only prepositions, other than *ad*, found with the accusative gerund in the best Latin.

C. THE SUPINE.

115. The Supine is a verbal noun found only in the accusative and ablative singular, in both cases with adverbial force. It is translated by the English infinitive with *to.*[1]

116. The ACCUSATIVE SUPINE or supine in *-um*, is used to denote purpose, especially after verbs of motion, and if transitive may take an accusative object ; as,

They send envoys to Caesar to ask aid : **Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.**

i. The construction is not common in classical Latin, which prefers to express purpose by the final subjunctive, or by the gerund and gerundive with *ad* or *causā.* It is used most frequently with *eō* and *veniō*, and also in the phrase *nūptum dare* (or *collocāre*).

ii. The rare future infinitive passive is formed by means of *īrī* (present infinitive passive of *eō* used impersonally) and this supine ; as, *He says the city will be taken :* **Dīcit urbem captum īrī** (literally, *there is a going to take the city*). Here *urbem* is really the object of *captum*, not the subject of *captum īrī.*

117. The ABLATIVE SUPINE, or supine in *-ū*, is used to define the application of certain adjectives and of the nouns *fās* and *nefās ;* as,

This is difficult to do : **Hōc est difficile factū.**

Incredible to narrate : **Incrēdibile dictū.**

It is a sin to say so : **Hōc nefas est dictū.**

---

[1] The supine in *-um* corresponds to the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to* after verbs; the supine in *-ū* to this infinitive with adjectives and nouns.

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those meaning *easy*, *difficult*, *pleasant*, *strange*, *best*. The supines so used are chiefly *audītū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *vīsū*, *nātū*.

ii. The ablative supine does not take an object.[1]

EXERCISE 15.

A.

1. The lieutenant brought word to Caesar that he had found the ships ready for sailing. 2. They saw that our men were not advancing for the purpose of fighting. 3. After (114, ii.) making a bridge Caesar attempted to cross the river and pursue the enemy. 4. He proves to them that it is a very easy thing to do, to seize the supreme power. 5. For quickness in loading, the ships were made lower. 6. If messengers had come to Caesar to ask help, he would have sent three legions to their assistance. 7. Answer was made that it was better to be slain in battle than not to recover their freedom. 8. By making enquiry, Caesar found that the rest of the cavalry had been thrown into a panic. 9. They hurl their weapons at the enemy and give them no opportunity of retiring. 10. They thought the best thing to do was to cut off our men from supplies. 11. He learned from the soldiers that the ships were useless for sailing. 12. Although he was ready to set out, he thought it would be extremely dangerous for the soldiers to embark. 13. So fierce an onset did the enemy make that there was no possibility of keeping (one's) position on the wall.

B. (*Caesar*, *B. G. V.*, *1.*)

1. He orders (*jubeō*) the old vessel to be repaired. 2. Envoys are sent for the purpose of giving satisfaction to Caesar. 3. It is dangerous (*perīculōsus*) for the consuls to leave Italy. 4. They are ready for (*ad*) setting out. 5. They had come thither to announce (*supine*) that raids were being made. 6. He points out the method of repairing. 7. What is it best (*optimus*) to do? 8. It seems (*videor*) to be best to put the lieutenant in charge of this legion.

---

[1] It may however be found in connection with a noun clause (infinitive or indirect question) which forms the subject of the main verb; as, *It is hard to say how powerful they are:* **Difficile est dictū quid possint.**

9. All these things were of service for loading. 10. They are accustomed to display (*ūtor*) quickness in assembling. 11. It has been pointed out that they are accustomed to use lower vessels.

Verbal Adjectives—Gerundive, Participles.

A. The Gerundive.

118. The Gerundive (sometimes called the future participle passive) is a verbal adjective of the first and second declensions, and agrees with its substantive.

119. The Gerundive Construction.—Instead of the *gerund governing* a direct object in the accusative, we often find the substantive put in the case required by the context and the *gerundive in agreement* with it. This is the regular usage after prepositions and in the dative case, and is preferable in the genitive and in the ablative of means ; as,

He sets out to harass the enemy: **Ad hostēs vexandōs proficīscitur** (not **ad vexandum hostēs**).

They lose time in seeking their comrades: **In quaerendīs suīs tempus dīmittunt** (not **in quaerendō suōs**).

An opportunity is afforded of marching through the province: **Facultās datur per prōvinciam itineris faciendī** (rather than **iter faciendī**).

He sets out for the purpose of bringing aid: **Auxiliī ferendī causā proficīscitur** (rather than **auxilium ferendī**).

i. The various cases are used in the same way in the gerundive construction as in the gerund. (See section 114.)

ii. The gerundive construction cannot be used with intransitive verbs ; as,

For the purpose of resisting the enemy: **Hostibus resistendī causā** (never **Hostium resistendōrum causā**).

But *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor* and *potior*, which governed the accusative in old Latin, regularly take the gerundive construction ; as,

The hope of taking the camp: **Spēs potiundōrum castrōrum.**

iii. In the case of neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives used substantively the gerund with an object accusative is regular, even after prepositions ; as, *For the purpose of doing something :* **Aliquid agendī causā.**

iv. With *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, the gerundive in *-ndī* is used, without regard to either gender or number ; as, *For the purpose of clearing themselves* (or *himself* or *herself*) : **Suī pūrgandī causā** (not **suī pūrgandōrum** or **suī pūrgandae**).[1]

120. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The gerundive is used in the nominative and accusative as a predicate adjective with *sum*, to denote *duty* or *necessity ;* as,

Everything had to be done by Caesar : **Caesarī omnia erant agenda.**

He decided that the Rhine must be crossed : **Statuit Rhēnum esse trānseundum.**

The leading men should (*ought to*) *have been assembled :* **Prīncipēs convocandī erant.**

i. The expression is always passive, the agent being in the dative (see section 80, *d*). The English equivalent is, however, constantly in the active ; as,

Caesar had to do everything. He decided that he must cross the Rhine.

ii. In this construction intransitive verbs are used impersonally (see section 56), the gerundive taking the same case as the verb from which it is formed ; as, *There must be no delay :* **Nōn est cunctandum**. *They had to fight :* **Erat pūgnandum.** *These things ought to be used :* **Hīs rēbus ūtendum est.**

121. The accusative of the gerundive is used in predicative agreement with the object of certain verbs (chiefly verbs of *giving*, *assigning*, *undertaking* and *caring for*) to express *purpose ;* as, *He hands them over to the Ædui to guard :* **Hōs Aeduīs custōdiendōs trādit.** *He provided for the transportation of the army ;* **Exercitum trānsportandum cūrāvit.**

---

[1] The usual explanation given is that *pūrgandī* is the gerundive agreeing with *suī*, which, like *meī*, *nostrī*, etc., was in its origin the genitive of the neuter singular possessive, *suum*=*their* (or *his* or *her*) *personality.*

B. THE PARTICIPLES.

122. For the grammatical value of the participle and the use of the *present* and *perfect* participles see sections 40-44.

The *future* participle denotes an action as about to happen at a time *subsequent* to that of its principal verb. Its chief uses are (*a*) to form (with *esse*) the future infinitive active in the accusative and infinitive construction, and (*b*) in the active periphrastic conjugation. It is but rarely used as an adjective or substantive (*futūrus* being the chief instance); in poetry and late prose writers it is used appositively to express intention or probability.

123. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The future participle is used as a predicate adjective with **sum** to express *intention*, *likelihood*, or *imminence ;* as,

You are about to fight : **Pūgnātūrī estis.**

He said that he had been on the point of setting out : **Dīxit sē profectūrum fuisse**.

They are going to send hostages : **Obsidēs missūrī sunt.**

124. Various ways of expressing purpose are found in Latin. Thus the sentence *Envoys were sent to seek peace* may be translated :

(*a*) **Lēgātī missī sunt ut pācem peterent** (section 24).

(*b*) **Lēgātī missī sunt quī pācem peterent** (section 26).

(*c*) **Lēgātī missī sunt ad pācem petendam** (section 119).

> **Ad** and the *gerund* of intransitive verbs is also used (section 114, *c*).

(*d*) **Lēgātī missī sunt pācis petendae causā** (section 119).

(*e*) **Lēgātī missī sunt pācem petendī causā** (section 114, *a*).

(*f*) **Lēgātī missī sunt pācem petītum** (section 116).

(*g*) **Lēgātī missī sunt pācem petītūrī** (section 122).

Of these the gerund and gerundive constructions are found in short expressions only, while the future participle should be avoided altogether in prose composition.

EXERCISE 16.

A.

1. Caesar is about to lead out his forces with the object of crushing the enemy. 2. He answered that the soldiers must not, in searching for their comrades, waste the time for fighting. 3. He caused two bridges to be built (121) for the purpose of follow-

ing up the enemy. 4. All hope of seizing the town has vanished. 5. The enemy was on the point of making an attack on the cavalry. 6. He perceived that he would have to set out at once. 7. We should not let slip the opportunity of freeing ourselves for ever. 8. He will give this legion to Labienus to lead back (121). 9. They did not think that so large a number of hostages should have been required. 10. They were assembling from all sides to defend the camp.

B. (*Caesar*, *B. G. V.*, *1*, *2.*)

1. He points out what has to be done (what he is going to do). 2. The winter is not sufficient for accomplishing these ends (*rēs*). 3. He was on the point of setting out for the purpose of laying waste the adjacent states. 4. Envoys must be sent to stir up the Germans. 5. These things were of great service in equipping the war vessels. 6. He praised (their) quickness in bringing the hostages. 7. Are twenty ships enough to (*ad*) carry over six hundred cavalry? 8. The soldiers had to build thirty ships in eight days. 9. The soldiers' unparalleled zeal is to be praised. 10. We are about to visit the winter quarters of all the legions. 11. Caesar should have left the legions in hither Gaul. 12. On account of their zeal in finishing this task, he was able to launch the vessels in a few days. 13. He ordered (*jubeō* and *imperō*) the army to assemble at this harbor for the purpose of setting out for the mainland. 14. He is said not to have been obedient to Caesar's authority.

Expressions of Place and Time.

125. Place to which (limit of motion) is denoted by the accusative with **ad** or **in**, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with **domum, domōs** (*home*), and **rūs** (*to the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

They hasten to the camp: **Ad castra contendunt.**
He sets out for Britain: **In Britanniam proficīscitur.**

He sets out for Rome: **Rōmam proficīscitur.**

They returned home: **Domum rediērunt.**

i. With names of towns *ad* is used (*a*) to denote *into* (or *in*) *the neighborhood of*, and (*b*) sometimes in contrast with *ab* in expressions of direction; as, *He came into the neighborhood of Geneva:* **Ad Genāvam pervēnit.** *He pitched his camp near Alesia:* **Ad Alesiam castra fēcit.**

ii. For the use of the dative in poetry to express the limit of motion see section 78, vii.

126. PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the ablative with **ab, ex,** or **dē,** except that with names of towns and small islands, and with **domō** (*from home*) and **rūre** (*from the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

They withdrew from the shore: **Ā lītore discessērunt.**

They crossed over from Belgium: **Ex Belgiō trānsiērunt.**

He fled from Corinth: **Corinthō fūgit.**

They had gone away from home: **Domō discesserant.**

i. With names of towns *ab* is used (*a*) to denote *from the neighborhood of*, (*b*) sometimes in contrast with *ad* in expressions of direction, and (*c*) with *longē* and verbs of distance; as, *It is three hundred miles from Zama:* **Ā Zamā abest mīlia passuum trecenta.**

127. PLACE WHERE is denoted by the ablative with **in,** except that with names of towns and small islands, and with a few common nouns the preposition is omitted; as,

He stood on the wall: **In mūrō cōnstitit.**

They spend the winter in Gaul: **In Galliā hiemant.**

He died at Athens: **Athēnīs mortuus est.**

i. In names of towns and islands of the first and second declensions in the singular, the locative (identical in form with the genitive) is used, not the ablative; as,

At Rome: **Rōmae.** *At Corinth:* **Corinthī.**

So occasionally in the third declension singular (as **Carthāginī**), and regularly in the words **domī, rūrī, humī, bellī, mīlitiae.**

ii. The words *locus* and *pars*, and other nouns when modified by *tōtus* (and sometimes by *medius*, *omnis* or *cūnctus*), may be used in the ablative without a preposition; as, *On suitable ground:* **Idōneō locō**. *Throughout the whole camp:* **Tōtīs castrīs**. In poetry the preposition is freely omitted with any noun.[1]

iii. Often where English uses *in*, *motion towards* is implied, and Latin consequently uses the accusative; as, *They concealed themselves in the woods* (that is, *went into the woods and hid*): **In silvās sē abdidērunt.**

Collocō and *pōnō*, however, take the ablative with *in*.

iv. For such expressions as *He came to the senate at Rome* (where *at Rome* is an adjectival phrase modifying *senate*), Latin has **Rōmam ad senātum vēnit** (where both expressions modify the verb). Similarly, *He came from the senate at Rome* is **Rōmā ā senātū vēnit.**[2]

v. With *pars*, *latus*, *agmen*, *cornū*, *tergum*, *frōns*, the direction in which or the side on which is expressed by the ablative with *ab* (and in the case of *pars*, also with *ex*); as, *In front:* **Ā fronte.** *On one side:* **Ūnā ex parte.**

vi. The locative **animī** (*in heart*) is used with verbs and adjectives of *feeling* to denote *respect.*

128. EXTENT OF SPACE is expressed by the accusative with verbs and with the adjectives **longus, altus** and **lātus**; as,

He advances three miles: **Tria mīlia passuum prōcēdit.**

A trench five feet deep: **Fossa quīnque pedēs alta.**

i. With *absum* and *distō* either this accusative or the ablative of measure of difference may be used. (Section 101, i.)

129. DURATION OF TIME is expressed by the accusative; as,

---

[1] In phrases like *castrīs tenēre,* the ablative is rather instrumental.

[2] On a somewhat similar principle, where English has a common noun (like *town* or *city*), modified by an adjective or its equivalent, in apposition with the name of a place, with the corresponding noun Latin generally uses a preposition to express *motion towards*, *motion from* or *place where*, instead of having *urbs* or *oppidum* in apposition with the proper name; as, *They halted at Alba, a convenient city:* **Albae cōnstitērunt in urbe opportūnā.** *I came to Athens, a most famous city:* **Athēnās in urbem praeclārissimam vēnī.** *He set out from Cures, a town of the Sabines:* **Curibus ex oppidō Sabīnōrum profectus est.**

He waits there a few days: **Paucōs diēs ibi morātur.**

He was twenty years old: **Vīgintī annōs nātus erat.**[1]

i. *Per* is sometimes added to the accusative to emphasize the idea of duration.

ii. *How long ago* is expressed by *abhinc* and the accusative; *how long before* and *how long after*, by *ante* and *post* with (*a*) the accusative, or (*b*) the ablative of measure of difference; as, *A few days after:* **Post paucōs diēs** or **Paucīs post diēbus.**

130. TIME WHEN is expressed by the ablative; as,

He returns on the fifth day: **Quīntō diē revertitur.**

At sunset he led back his forces: **Sōlis occāsū cōpiās redūxit.**

In all the Gallic wars: **Omnibus Gallicīs bellīs.**

131. TIME WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the ablative; as,

He has been put to death within the last few days: **Hīs paucīs diēbus interfectus est.**

i. Occasionally, by inference, the ablative of the time within which, especially with *tōtus*, may be equivalent to the accusative of the time how long; as, *They marched all that night:* **Eā tōtā nocte iērunt.**

EXERCISE 17.

A.

1. After waiting in Italy three months he returned from Rome to Athens. 2. The enemy took up their position on wooded ground eight miles from Caesar's camp. 3. Four years ago (129, ii.) a battle was fought in the neighborhood (125, i. *a*) of Massilia. 4. This river, he replied (18, vi.), was sixty feet wide and about five feet deep. 5. Setting out from the army in Gaul (127, iv.), he came a few days later to the river Thames in the enemy's country (127, iv.). 6. They were ordered to leave home within three days and hide in (127, iii.) the nearest woods. 7. He set out for the country at the beginning of spring and returned home the next year. 8. The battle was begun on the right wing (127, v.). 9. He came from Geneva in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey (49), and lived for several years at Rome and Athens. 10. On the

---

[1] Literally, *He had been born twenty years.*

same day, he was informed that the enemy's forces were three miles distant from Bibracte. 11. He said that he was nine years old. 12. After completing a march of twenty miles, they remained in camp for several successive days.

B. (*Caesar*, *B. G. V.*, *1-3.*)

1. The forest of Ardennes used to extend from the borders of this state to the river Rhine. 2. For a large part of the winter they had been under arms in the territories of the Treveri. 3. Britain is about thirty miles distant (*absum*) from the mainland. 4. They point out what is being done in our camp. 5. On Caesar's approach they had hidden themselves in the midst of the forests. 6. Within two days all the leading men had assembled from the whole of Gaul. 7. On coming to Rome he began to be afraid. 8. In the consulship of Caesar I was returning from Rome to Spain. 9. During all these days they were preparing for war in Rome and the adjacent part of Italy. 10. Their territories extend for many miles to the sea. 11. For a few days they are unwilling to come to Caesar in his winter camp. 12. In this war they were unwilling to withdraw from the province. 13. It is easier to collect troops in hither Gaul than in Illyricum. 14. On this day they had set out from the harbor for home.

Imperative. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

132. Commands.—The present imperative is regularly used to express commands and entreaties; as,

Consider Gaul: **Respicite Galliam.**

i. As in English, there are many substitutes for the imperative; *e.g.*, (*a*) periphrases with *jubeō*, *petō*, *ōrō*, etc.. ; (*b*) *velim* (*I should like*), and *fac* or *cūrā* (*see to it*, *be sure*) with the present subjunctive (with or without *ut*); (*c*) in the indefinite second person, the present subjunctive alone.

ii. The future imperative expresses rather a contingent command than one to be immediately obeyed. Hence it is used in laws and precepts, and in distinct reference to the future.

133. PROHIBITIONS are usually expressed by **nōlī, nōlīte** (*be unwilling*) with the present infinitive ; as,

Do not suppose : **Nōlīte exīstimāre.**

i. Prohibitions are also expressed (*a*) by *cavē*, (or, less commonly, *cavē nē*, *vidē nē*, or *fac nē*), and the present subjunctive ; (*b*) by *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive, but chiefly in familiar discourse ; (*c*) in poetry by *nē* and the present imperative.

134. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *willed.*[1] The following varieties exist :

(*a*) HORTATORY.—The first person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid ; as, *Let us consider Gaul :* **Galliam respiciāmus.** *Let us not despair :* **Nē dēspērēmus.**

(*b*) JUSSIVE.—The third person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid ; as, *Let the consuls see to it :* **Videant cōnsulēs.**

i. So too the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive is used to express prohibition or command (sections 133, i. *b* and 132, i. *c*).

(*c*) CONCESSIVE.—The present and perfect subjunctive are used to concede for the sake of argument, the negative being *nē ;* as, *Granting that pain is not the greatest evil, still it certainly is an evil :* **Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est.**

(*d*) DELIBERATIVE.—The Subjunctive is used to ask for direction (though without expecting an answer), and thus comes to express perplexity (commonly in the first person of the present or imperfect subjunctive) or again surprise and indignation ; as, *What am I to do?* **Quid faciam ?** *Are we to yield to him?* **Huic cēdāmus ?**[2]

135. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *desired.*

This is called the OPTATIVE subjunctive, or the subjunctive of DESIRE. The negative is *nē.* The present tense is used to express wishes viewed as practicable ; the imperfect and pluperfect to express wishes viewed as impossible of fulfilment in present and past time respectively. Such clauses are frequently introduced by

---

[1] This is sometimes termed the VOLITIVE subjunctive.

[2] See further section 136, *d*. These various types of question are known as *Rhetorical Questions* or *Questions of Appeal.*

utinam, regularly so in the case of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses; as, *May they be happy:* **Sint beātī.** *Would that he were present:* **Utinam adesset.** *Would that I had never been born:* **Utinam nē nātus essem.**

136. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *conceivable.*

This is the so-called POTENTIAL subjunctive, used of present and past time. It is generally to be translated by *could*, *would* or *should*, and takes the negative *nōn.* The following types exist:

(*a*) Modest expressions of wish or regret with *velim* or *vellem* and their compounds, followed often by another subjunctive (of desire) as object; as, *I should like to know:* **Velim scīre.** *I would rather he were present:* **Māllem adesset.**

(*b*) With the indefinite second person singular; as, *You* (= *one*) *would have thought:* **Putārēs.**[1]

(*c*) In softened assertions or questions; as, *It would scarcely seem probable:* **Vix vērisimile videātur.** This usage is found chiefly in the protasis of conditional sentences (see sections 61 and 63).

(*d*) In questions virtually equivalent to a negative statement; as, *Who could doubt?* **Quis dubitet?** *Who would ever have thought?* **Quis umquam arbitrārētur?**

i. Latin, however, often has the indicative where we might expect the potential subjunctive. So regularly with *possum*, *dēbēō*, etc., with the passive periphrastic conjugation, and with *est* and predicate adjectives such as *aequum*, *melius*, *satis*, *facile*, etc.; as, *I might have said more;* **Plūra poteram dīcere.** *It would be tedious to tell everything:* **Longum est omnia nārrāre.** (See section 64, i.)

137. Notice the values of *would* in the following sentences, and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(*a*) *I thought he would come;* **Arbitrābar eum ventūrum esse** (15, *c*).

(*b*) *I asked what they would do:* **Rogāvī quid factūrī essent** (36).

(*c*) *He would not do this:* **Nōluit haec facere** or **Negāvit sē haec factūrum.**

---

[1] The indefinite second person singular of the present subjunctive is also found in independent sentences to state a general fact; as, *One (often) looks for what is before one's eyes*, **Quod oculīs videās, dēsīderēs.**

(*d*) *If he were alive he would be present:* **Sī vīveret, adesset** (61).

(*e*) *If you should do this, he would come:* **Sī haec faciās, veniat** (63).

(*f*) *Would that he would come!* **Utinam veniat!** (135).

(*g*) *Would that he had come!* **Utinam vēnisset!** (135).

(*h*) *It would be better to do this:* **Melius est haec facere** (136, *a*, 1).

(*i*) *Who would venture to do this?* **Quis haec facere audeat?** (136, *b*).

(*j*) *I was afraid he would come:* **Verēbar nē venīret** (138).

(*k*) *Whenever they came, he would do this:* **Ubi vēnerant, haec faciēbat** (180, *b*).

EXERCISE 18.

A.

1. Let the Gauls send envoys to Cæsar to seek peace. 2. Would that Caesar were not sending two legions to the assistance of Labienus. 3. Who can endure that his freedom should be taken away? 4. Remember the former valor of the Helvetians, soldiers. 5. Let us not fear the enemy, however numerous (66, ii.), nor return to the camp unless victorious (44, iii.). 6. Do not let slip this opportunity of waging war. 7. What was I to say? It would have been (136, *a*, i.) easy to make many promises; but who would have believed me? 8. I should like you to inform me at once of his departure. 9. Would that Caesar had allowed us to march through the province. 10. Advance towards the shore and do not betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He would (137, *c*) not announce to the soldiers when he would set out. 12. One would have supposed that the envoys would not return the next day.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 4-5.*)

1. Remain loyal; do not be deterred from this plan. 2. Come to me with all your sons. 3. Let us return (134, *a*) to the point from which we set out. 4. Tell us, Caesar, why you are spending the summer there. 5. Caesar was aware that the rest would be annoyed. 6. If Caesar himself had been absent, the leading men would not have remained loyal. 7. Would that (135) Caesar were not absent. 8. Do not be of an unfriendly disposition towards

him. 9. Let us take (134, *a*) the hostages with us. 10. He had learned from what point they would set out. 11. Who would be willing (136, *d*) to be left as a hostage? 12. It would be easy (136, i.) to compel them to assemble. 13. Do not fear these uprisings. Let everything be made ready (136, *a*) for war. 14. When they learned this, they would not (137, *c*) hold on their course. 15. If he should be driven back by storms, he would be annoyed. 16. Had he summoned the chief men, his influence would be very great.

VERBS OF FEARING. USES OF **Quīn** AND **Quōminus**.

138. After verbs of fearing and such phrases as **metus est, perīculum est,** *that* and *lest* are translated by **nē,**[1] and *that not* by **ut,** with the present subjunctive after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses; as,

I fear that he will do this (or *I fear lest he do this*): **Vereor nē hōc faciat.**

I fear that he will not do this: **Vereor ut hōc faciat.**

There was danger that they would be surrounded: **Perīculum erat nē circumvenīrentur.**

i. For *ut*, *nē nōn* is very commonly used, regularly so after *nōn vereor.*

ii. Verbs of fearing may be used as modal verbs, followed by the infinitive to represent a corresponding infinitive in the English; as, *I fear to do this:* **Vereor haec facere.**

139. Verbs and phrases of *hindering* and *objecting*, and negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, *failure* or *omission*, are regularly followed by the subjunctive with the introductory particles *quīn*,

---

[1] The apparently redundant negative, *nē*, *quō-minus*, *quīn = quī* (an old ablative form = *quō*) + *nē*, in these clauses is due to the fact that the clauses now dependent were once independent clauses expressing a desire; this has been developed through a final clause into a substantive clause; as, *I fear; may he not do this. They hinder the Aedui whereby the less they may bring in corn.* English, unlike Latin, tends to look at what is prevented as the result, not the purpose, of the hindering.

quōminus or *nē*, according to the following rules; the present subjunctive being used after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses.[1]

N.B.—*Quīn* is used only after negatives or virtual negatives.

(*a*) Verbs of *hindering*, e.g., *dēterreō*, *impediō*, *retineō*, and also *recūsō*, *object* (if negatived), take *quōminus* or *quīn;* or (if not negatived) *quōminus* or *nē;* as,

They did not object to coming: **Nōn recūsābant quīn** (or **quōminus) venīrent.**

They hinder the Aedui from bringing in corn: **Aeduōs dēterrent quōminus** (or **nē) frūmentum cōnferant.**

i. *Prohibeō* regularly takes the accusative and infinitive (section 22, i.), while *nōn recūsō* also may take the infinitive.

(*b*) Negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, e.g., *nōn dubitō*, *nōn est dubium*, take *quīn;* as,

There was no doubt that they had (or *of their having*) *very great power:* **Nōn erat dubium quīn plūrimum possent.**

i. *Dubitō*, *hesitate*, regularly takes the infinitive.

(*c*) Negative verbs and phrases of *failure* or *omission*, such as *nihil praetermittō* (*leave nothing undone*), *haud multum abest* (*be within a little*), *facere nōn possum* (*cannot but* or *cannot help*), take *quīn;* as,

And a suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide: **Neque abest suspīciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.**

They let no time go by without stirring up the states: **Nūllum tempus intermīsērunt quīn cīvitātēs sollicitārent.**

i. For *quīn* after such expressions as *nēmō est*, see section 33, ii.

EXERCISE 19.

A.

1. I fear the soldiers will not be able to take the city by storm. 2. Who could doubt (130, *d*) that (139, *b*) the Romans are going to take our freedom away? 3. They promised to raise no objections to being (139, *a*) under the sway of the enemy. 4. There was great danger of the enemy's crossing the river and making an attack upon the camp. 5. Caesar was afraid that they were about to renew the war. 6. They believed that Caesar by his influence

---

[1] It should be observed that *quīn* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive often answer to the English gerund governed by a preposition.

could hinder (*prohibeō*) the Germans from being brought across the Rhine. 7. He feared that the soldiers would not be able to cross the bridge and attack the enemy in the rear. 8. There was no doubt that (139, *b*) the Aedui were hesitating to declare war. 9. Several vessels were prevented by the storms from (139, *a*) being able to reach the same port. 10. There is no one who (33, ii.) does not know that we feared to disembark (138, ii.). 11. We fear that the soldiers will be unwilling to defend the camp. 12. Not even at the conference could the Gauls be deterred from (139, *a*) hurling weapons at our men. 13. The soldiers did not object to repairing the old vessels. 14. There was no one but knew that Labienus was in charge of that legion.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 6.*)

1. They fear that they will be taken across to Britain. 2. They were afraid lest they should not gain their request. 3. I am hindered by religious scruples from (139, *a*) giving (*dō*) the oath that Caesar demands. 4. There is no doubt that (139, *b*) the Aedui are unaccustomed to sailing. 5. Several report to Caesar that the Aedui feel this keenly. 6. They are so (*ita*) unused to the sea that they do not venture to sail. 7. He begged that all hope should not be taken away. 8. The others objected to (139, *a*) the royal power being conferred on Dumnorix. 9. There is added the fact that the Gauls are eager for change. 10. He saw that Gaul was being robbed of her chief men. 11. It happens that Caesar fears to prevent (*prohibeō*, 139, *a*, i.) our remaining (113, fn.). 12. They were afraid that Caesar would confer the royal power on Dumnorix. 13. In order that they might not be killed, they urged that they be left on the mainland.

DUTY, NECESSITY, POSSIBILITY, PERMISSION.

140. DUTY or OBLIGATION is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive* with **esse**, also by **dēbeō** and **oportet**.

(*a*) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(*b*) *Dēbeō* takes the present infinitive as object, and the impersonal verb *oportet* takes the accusative and the present infinitive as subject[1]; as,

Caesar ought to come to me: **Caesar ad mē venīre dēbet,** or **Caesarem ad mē venīre oportet.**

i. The infinitive remains in the *present* tense with all forms of these verbs, while the verbs themselves change according to the time of the action; as *Caesar ought to have come:* **Caesar venīre dēbēbat,** or **Caesarem venīre oportuit.** *Caesar ought to come to-morrow:* **Caesar venīre crās dēbēbit,** or **Caesarem venīre crās oportēbit.**

141. NECESSITY is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive* with **esse,** also by **necesse est.**

(*a*) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(*b*) *Necesse est* is used with the dative and the present infinitive to express what is *inevitable* rather than what is obligatory or binding;[1] as,

All men must die: **Omnibus necesse est morī.**

142. POSSIBILITY OR ABILITY is expressed by **possum** and the present infinitive; as,

The river can be crossed: **Flūmen trānsīrī potest.**

They were unable to defend themselves: **Sē dēfendere nōn poterant.**

It is impossible for us to cross: **Trānsīre nōn possumus.**

We could (or *might*) *have been useful friends:* **Poterāmus esse ūtilēs amīcī.** (For the tenses see section 140, *b*, i.)

143. PERMISSION is expressed by **licet** with the dative and the present infinitive;[1] as,

You may remain: **Licet vōbīs remanēre.**

They were not allowed to depart: **Discēdere illīs nōn licēbat.**

i. A predicate noun or adjective referring to the dative agrees with it in case; as, *We may be free:* **Nōbīs licet esse līberīs.**

---

[1] The impersonal verbs *licet*, *necesse est* and *oportet* may also take the subjunctive as subject; as, *You ought to do this:* **Haec faciās oportet.** With *necesse est* the subjunctive often has *ut*.

144. Notice the values of *should* in the following sentences and the different ways of translating it into Latin :

(*a*) *I said I should return at once:* **Dīxī mē statim reditūrum esse** (15, *c*).

(*b*) *He did this so that I should not return:* **Haec fēcit nē redīrem** (24).

(*c*) *If he had done this I should not be returning:* **Sī haec fēcisset nōn redīrem** (61).

(*d*) *If he should do this* (or *Should he do this*), *I should return at once:* **Sī haec faciat, statim redeam** (63).

(*e*) *It is best that he should return at once:* **Optimum est eum statim redīre** (110).

(*f*) *You should return at once:* **Statim vōbīs est redeundum** (120).

(*g*) *I should like you to return:* **Velim redeās** (136, *a*).

(*h*) *I feared that I should not return:* **Veritus sum ut** (or **nē nōn**) **redīrem** (138).

(*i*) *He promised great rewards to anyone that should return:* **Sī quis rediisset, māgna praemia pollicitus est** (177).

EXERCISE 20.

A.

1. You should reply that you are unable to leave the city. 2. The soldiers had to advance into the waves. 3. He answered that Gaul ought to be free, and that he could not allow the Germans to cross the Rhine. 4. They asked to be allowed to march through the province. 5. We must not wait longer ; we must set out for home at once. 6. Caesar should have ordered that state to furnish hostages. 7. He was afraid this would inevitably (141, *b*) happen. 8. The king could not be persuaded (57) to stay longer. 9. The Gauls may be cowards if they wish, but Romans must be brave men. 10. All will have to die some day. 11. You might have left the camp yesterday. 12. Our fields ought not to have been laid waste in sight of your army. 13. These towns will have to be taken by storm.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V.*, 7.)

1. We must discover his plans ; we cannot discover their plans. 2. Part of the cavalry ought to be sent, in order that he may be

recalled. 3. If we should not get suitable weather, we should not embark. 4. He should have been brought back and put to death. 5. You are injuring the state by whatever means you can. 6. He feared (*vereor*) lest the wind should hinder his sailing. 7. Everything had to be disregarded. 8. He took care that this folly should not go farther. 9. I had announced that I should depart for home. 10. The cavalry must defend themselves. 11. May we offer violence? 12. You could have pursued him. 13. They decided that their departure should be postponed. 14. It is impossible to retain Dumnorix in Caesar's absence. 15. The cavalry are not allowed to return. 16. All ought to have returned.

CAUSAL SENTENCES. USES OF **Cum**.

145. Causal sentences are introduced by *quod*, or (less frequently) *quia*, *because*, *for the reason that ; quoniam*, *seeing that ; cum*, *ut*, *since*, *as ;* and *quī*, *since he*.

i. For *quī* with the causal subjunctive see section 171.

ii. For *quod*, meaning *the fact that*, see section 198.

iii. *Cum* clauses (as giving attendant circumstances) regularly precede the principal clause ; *quod* clauses (as emphasizing the reason) generally follow.

146. Quod, quia and **quoniam** take the *indicative* to express a reason advanced by the writer or speaker himself ; as,

He set out for Illyricum, because he wished to become acquainted with that district: **In Īllyricum profectus est, quod eās regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat.**

i. Frequently a sort of antecedent (such as *proptereā*, *eō*, *hōc*, *eā dē causā*) is found preparing the way for the *quod* clause.

147. Quod, quia and **quoniam** take the *subjunctive* to quote some other person's reason ;[1] as,

They begged him to lend them aid, because (as they said) they were hard pressed by the Suebi: **Ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur.**

---

[1] Or even to quote one's own previously expressed reason.

Aristides was banished from his country on the ground that he was unreasonably just : **Aristīdēs expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum jūstus esset.**

i. It should not be supposed that the subjunctive casts doubt upon the reason given, or refuses to vouch for its accuracy. It simply quotes without expressing any opinion, and is, in fact, identical with the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse (section 177). *Quod* with the indicative tells *why* something was said or done ; *quod* with the subjunctive tells *on what grounds* something was said or done.

ii. *Quod* is very commonly used after verbs of *accusation*, *praise*, *complaint*, *thanks*, *joy*, *anger*, and the like ; the indicative or subjunctive being used according to the distinction just drawn ; as, *I thank you for setting me free :* **Tibi gratiās agō, quod mē līberāvistī.** *Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth :* **Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem.**

iii. *Nōn quod* or *nōn quō* is used with the subjunctive of a reason mentioned only to be rejected, = *not because* (*as one might suppose*). So also *quam quod* or *quam quō* after an actual or virtual comparative.

iv. For the illogical *quod dīceret* see section 177, ii.

148. Cum, with causal force, meaning *since* or *as*, takes the *subjunctive* ;[1] as,

Since they could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Cæsar : **Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.**

149. Cum, meaning *whenever* or *when*, in clauses denoting indefinitely recurring action, takes the *indicative.*

When, as is usually the case, the **cum** clause denotes an action preceding that of the main verb, the perfect and pluperfect tenses are used ; but when it denotes what is simultaneous, the present and imperfect (section 178, ii.). The main verb is regularly present or imperfect indicative.

Whenever our men attacked, the enemy fell back : **Cum nostrī impetum fēcerant, hostēs pedem referēbant.**

---

[1] For *cum*, with concessive or adversative force, meaning *although*, *while*, *whereas*, see section 65, *a*.

Whenever our men attack, the enemy fall back: **Cum nostrī impetum fēcērunt, hostēs pedem referunt.**

Whenever there is need, the enemy fall back; **Cum ūsus est, hostēs pedem referunt.**

i. With the same force and with the same construction are used also *quotiēns, quotiēnscumque, ut, ubi, sī quandō.*

150. Cum, meaning *when,* referring to present or future time, takes the *indicative;* as,

When I find out, I shall inform you: **Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiōrem.**

i. The future and future perfect are used with *cum* as with *sī* (section 62).

151. Cum, meaning *when* (or *while*), referring to past time, regularly takes the *subjunctive;* the imperfect of contemporaneous action, the pluperfect of antecedent action (section 178, ii.); as,

When they were approaching Britain, a storm arose: **Cum Britanniae appropinquārent, tempestās coorta est.**

When he perceived this, he sent reinforcements: **Quod cum animadvertisset, subsidia submittit.**

In most cases **cum** with the subjunctive describes the *circumstances* or *situation,* very often, as in the last example, combining the causal with the temporal idea.[1]

The following exceptions to this use of *cum* with the subjunctive regularly occur:

i. *When,* meaning *whenever,* is regularly expressed by *cum* and the indicative (section 149).

ii. *Cum* expressing *identity of action* or *coincidence of time* regularly takes the indicative, chiefly when the principal clause contains *tum,* or some equivalent expression; as, *When they remain quiet* (or *in remaining quiet*), *they approve:* **Cum quiēscunt, pro-**

---

[1] Similarly combining the adversative with the temporal idea, *cum* (meaning *while* or *whereas*) is used with the subjunctive to contrast two situations; as, *The enemy numbered five thousand, while our men had no more than eight hundred cavalry:* **Hostium erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum nostrī nōn amplius octingentōs habērent.**

bant. *At the time when he came to Gaul, there were two factions in that state :* **(Tum) cum in Galliam vēnit, in eā cīvitāte duae erant factiōnēs.**

iii. *Cum*, meaning *when* or *when suddenly*, in a clause which is logically the principal one, takes the indicative. The principal clause often has *jam*, *vix* or *nōndum ;* as, *They were already preparing to depart, when suddenly it was announced that the city had been captured :* **Jam discēdere parābant, cum repentē nūntiātum est urbem captam esse.** (This is sometimes called *cum inversum.*)

iv. *Cum prīmum*, *as soon as*, takes the indicative.

v. *Cum . . . tum*, meaning *both . . . and*, has regularly no influence on the mood of the verb.

EXERCISE 21.

A.

1. Caesar complained because the enemy were laying waste the territories of the Aedui. 2. When the ships were drawing near the island, so great a tempest arose that they could with difficulty hold their course. 3. As they thought the enemy were within the gates, they rushed out of the town. 4. Caesar feared an ambush, because he had not yet learned why they were withdrawing. 5. Whenever our men began to return to the place from which they had started, they were surrounded by the enemy. 6. They asked to be allowed to remain in our camp, on the ground that they dreaded the vengeance of the Gauls. 7. Since this is the case, I shall set out at once. 8. The soldiers were proceeding with the greatest caution, when (151, iii.) the Helvetians suddenly attacked them in the rear. 9. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with great numbers of the enemy, they immediately took to flight. 10. When Caesar returns (150, i.) to the camp, he will find the ships repaired. 11. At the time when (151, ii.) the enemy were preparing to storm the camp, Caesar was leading the soldiers across the bridge. 12. When Caesar discovered what had been done, he reproved the rashness of the soldiers in that (= because), on the signal being given, they had not halted.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 6, 7.*)

1. They urged Caesar to leave them, on the ground that they were not used to sailing. 2. Whenever the wind began to blow,

they begged Caesar to return. 3. Caesar will keep the leading men with him because he is afraid to leave them in Gaul. 4. When (*cum*) this was reported, he perceived that all hope had vanished. 5. Since Dumnorix cannot be kept loyal, Caesar has determined to take him over to Britain. 6. Whenever Caesar is absent, they disregard his authority. 7. He keeps calling out that he must not be killed, because he is a free man. 8. When Caesar finds this out, he will be greatly annoyed. 9. He accused (*accūsō*) Dumnorix of being (147, ii.) eager for supreme power. 10. When they were coming in sight of the camp, he began to resist. 11. As orders had been given not to bring him back, they did not venture to pursue him. 12. When they surround him, they will put him to death.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

152. WHEN, AFTER, AS SOON AS,[1] introducing clauses of time, are translated by

(*a*) **Cum** or **cum prīmum** (sections 149-151).

(*b*) **Postquam, posteāquam, ut, ubi, simul ac** (or **simul atque**) with the indicative, in narrative chiefly the perfect indicative; as,

After Caesar reached that place, he determined to cross the Rhine: **Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit.**

When he heard that, he removed to Corinth: **Id ut audīvit, Corinthum dēmigrāvit.**

When they were informed of his approach, they sent envoys to him: **Ubi dē ējus adventū certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.**

As soon as they perceived this, they began to take up arms: **Quae simul atque cōnspexērunt, arma capere coepērunt.**

i. To indicate indefinitely recurring action the perfect and pluperfect tenses would be used as with *cum* (section 149).

---

[1] Clauses introduced by *when*, *while*, *after*, are also expressed in Latin by participial phrases, especially in the ablative absolute (see sections 43, 47, and 48).

ii. With *postquam* the pluperfect indicative is used when a definite interval is specified; as, *He was killed in the ninth year after he came to Spain:* **Nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, occīsus est.**

iii. *Postquam* and *posteāquam* are often written as two words, in which case *post* is sometimes treated as a preposition; sometimes *quam* is used for *postquam.*

153. WHILE, meaning *within the time that*, is expressed by **dum** with the *present* indicative, even when the reference is to past time; as,

While this was being done, the Treveri had gathered large forces: **Dum haec geruntur, Trēverī māgnās cōpiās coēgerant.**

i. This idea may also be expressed by *cum* and the imperfect subjunctive (section 151), especially if there be any idea of contrast (section 151, fn.).

154. WHILE, meaning *as long as*, is expressed by **dum, quoad** or **quamdiū**[1] with the indicative.

The tenses are used as in English, except that for future time Latin uses the future where English loosely uses the present; as,

While their strength lasted they held their ground: **Dum vīrēs suppetēbant sustinuērunt.**

He resisted as long as he could: **Quoad potuit, restitit.**

You shall study as long as you wish: **Discēs, quamdiū volēs.**

i. For *dum*, meaning *so long as*, *provided that*, where the temporal force no longer appears, see section 67.

155. UNTIL, introducing clauses of time, is expressed by **dum** or **quoad.**[2]

(*a*) To denote *mere limit of time* the *indicative* is used, chiefly with **quoad**; as,

He was in the senate that day until the senate adjourned: **In senātū fuit eō diē quoad senātus est dīmissus.**

---

[1] *Dōnec* also is used in poetry and late prose, often with the subjunctive.

[2] *Dōnec* also is used, but not often in the best prose.

Until I learn that the winter camp has been fortified, I shall stay in Gaul: **Quoad mūnīta esse hīberna cōgnōverō, in Galliā morābor.**

(*b*) To denote *expectation*, *purpose* or *end in view*, the present or imperfect *subjunctive* is used, generally with **dum**; as,

He waited until the other ships should assemble (or, more freely, *he waited for the other ships to assemble*): **Dum reliquae nāvēs convenīrent, exspectāvit.**

i. For *not until*, meaning *not before*, see section 156, iii.

ii. As a rule, actions referring to the future may be regarded as denoting either mere limit of time (with the indicative) or expectation (with the subjunctive).

156. BEFORE is expressed by **antequam** or **priusquam.**

(*a*) To denote *mere priority* or *limit of time* the *indicative* is used; as,

I was born the year before he died: **Annō antequam est mortuus, nātus sum.**

And they did not cease their flight before they reached the river Rhine: **Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt.**

(*b*) To denote *purpose* or *anticipation* or *prevention* the present or imperfect *subjunctive* is used; as,

Before they could recover from their panic, he led his army across: **Priusquam sē ex terrōre reciperent, exercitum trānsdūxit.**

i. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as two words, especially after a negative.

ii. *Priusquam* is commoner than *antequam*, especially with the subjunctive.

iii. To express *not before*, meaning *not until*, both indicative and subjunctive are found, but after secondary tenses the perfect indicative is preferred.

iv. When the pluperfect subjunctive is found after *priusquam* or *antequam*, it is regularly either in indirect narration (actual or virtual) for the perfect or future perfect indicative of the direct, or it is due to attraction (see section 177, i.).

EXERCISE 22.

A.

1. The Gauls will wait until Caesar reaches their borders. 2. Before he should make an attack on the enemy, he sent forward a scout to find out what their numbers were. 3. While these things were going on, the envoys who were in the camp took their departure. 4. As soon as they recovered from their panic, they sent envoys to Caesar to sue for peace. 5. For that reason I shall keep silent as long as I can. 6. He did not set out for the army until (155, i.) he learned that the enemy were gathering their forces to one place. 7. Before he reached the harbor, the cavalry had set sail. 8. We shall hold our ground until Caesar sends reinforcements. 9. After they had been informed of our advance, they withdrew into their remotest forests. 10. While our men were getting the ships ready, it was reported that the camp had been attacked. 11. Before these could learn of his departure, he crossed the river. 12. The enemy resisted bravely until they saw our cavalry approaching in the rear.

B. (*Caesar*, *B. G. V.*, *7*, *8.*)

1. After Dumnorix had taken his departure for home, Caesar ordered the cavalry to bring him back. 2. As long as he disregards Caesar's authority, I shall take care that he does no harm to the state. 3. While this was going on in Britain, two thousand cavalry were guarding the harbor. 4. We shall not embark until supplies are provided. 5. Before Caesar reached the shore, he learned that large forces had assembled. 6. They held on their course until the wind fell at sunset. 7. Whenever they caught sight of (*cōnspiciō*) our soldiers, the enemy would conceal (180, *b*) themselves on the higher ground. 8. While the warships were assembling, we withdrew from the island. 9. Before Caesar could get suitable weather, word was brought that the enemy had learned his design. 10. As soon as he began to offer violence, they set sail. 11. Caesar should have put off his departure until he learned in what part of the island was the best landing place.

PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, REFLEXIVE AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.[1]

157. As the pronominal subject is really contained in the personal ending of the finite verb, the nominative of the personal pronouns is not, as a rule, expressed except for *emphasis* or *contrast;* as,

I drove out kings, you bring in tyrants: **Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis.**

i. The third personal pronoun is supplied by *is*, *hīc* or *quī*, or if emphatic by *ille.*

ii. *Nōs* is often used for *ego* (compare our 'editorial we'), but *vōs* should never be used for *tū.* So, too, *noster* is used for *meus.*

iii. In the partitive sense the genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used ; in the objective sense, the genitives *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī* and *vestrī ;* in the possessive and subjective senses, the adjectives *meus, tuus, suus, noster* and *vester.*

158. Hīc, *this* (the demonstrative of the first person), denotes something *near* (in place, time or thought). Hence it is used of something just mentioned or something just about to be mentioned ; as,

This present war: **Hōc bellum.**

All these (the tribes just mentioned) *differ from one another in language:* **Hī omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.**

The character of the ground was as follows: **Locī nātūra erat haec.**

159. Is, *that, this, the,* refers without emphasis to something named in the preceding context, and also serves as the antecedent of the relative. It is thus also used as the unemphasized third personal pronoun ; as,

---

[1] N.B.—It will be understood that the words treated of in sections 157 to 174 are pronouns when they are substitutes for nouns, and pronominal adjectives when they modify nouns.

They order Lutetia to be burnt and the bridges of that town to be destroyed: **Lutētiam incendī pontēsque ējus oppidī rescindī jubent.**

The legion which he had with him: **Ea legiō, quam sēcum habēbat.**

The number of those who returned home: **Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, numerus.**

They send envoys to him: **Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.**

i. *Is* sometimes has the force of *such* (=*tālis*).

ii. *Et is* and *neque is* are used to emphasize, with the force of *and that too*; as, *One cohort, and that too a small one:* **Ūna cohors et ea parva.**

iii. Where English uses *that of* or *those of* to avoid repeating a noun, Latin does not use a pronoun, but the noun is either repeated or understood (see section 83, iii.).

160. **Ille**, *that* (the demonstrative of the third person), denotes something *remote* in place, time or thought. It is frequently used as the emphatic third personal pronoun, in contrast with **hīc**, and also to call special attention to some person or thing; as,

Trained not in the customs of former days, but after our modern fashion: **Nōn antīquō illō mōre, sed hōc nostrō ērudītus.**

These are under arms; those remain at home: **Hī in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent.**

The famous Alexander the Great: **Māgnus ille Alexander.**

Part of the cavalry he assigned to him, part he left for himself: **Equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi relīquit.**

i. A very common use of *ille* is to indicate a change of subject, where the new subject has been referred to in the preceding clause. In such cases it may be rendered by an emphatic *he* or *they*, or by *the other*, *the enemy*, *the latter*, or some similar phrase.

ii. *Ille*, often, especially in the neuter *illud*, is used to point forward with emphasis to a following clause.

iii. *Hīc* is often opposed as *the latter* to *ille*, *the former*.

161. *Iste*, *that* (the demonstrative of the second person), denotes something near or belonging to the person addressed; as, *Those affairs of yours* (or *Those affairs you mention*): **Istae rēs.** It has also at times a contemptuous force.

162. Īdem, *the same*, expresses identity, and is often to be rendered by *also* or *likewise;* as,

The same day he moved his camp: **Eōdem diē castra mōvit.**

Whatever is honorable is also expedient: **Quicquid est honestum, idem est ūtile.**

i. For *the same as* see section 174.

ii. As *īdem* is a compound of *is*, *that same* is *ille īdem*, not *is īdem.*

163. Ipse, *-self*, is used for emphatic contrast, not as a reflexive pronoun. It may be used with nouns or with any of the personal pronouns, or may be used independently, meaning *he himself;* as,

They slew Dumnorix himself: **Ipsum Dumnorīgem interfēcērunt.**

Leaving Labienus on the mainland, he himself set sail: **Labiēnō in continentī relīctō, ipse nāvēs solvit.**

i. The emphatic force of *ipse* is often best rendered by *very* or *mere;* as, *They were fighting on the very banks of the river:* **In ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur.**

ii. The genitive of *ipse* with or without the possessive pronominal adjectives may be used as the equivalent of *own;* as, *My own fault:* **Mea ipsīus culpa.** *Their own tongue:* **Ipsōrum lingua.**

iii. *Ipse*, when used to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, agrees with the subject, unless very strong emphasis is to lie on the reflexive; as, *They kill themselves:* **Sē ipsī interficiunt.**

iv. Occasionally in indirect narration *ipse* is used as a reflexive for the sake of emphatic contrast, or where *sē* might be ambiguous.

164. Sē, *himself*, *him*, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, refers back to the subject of the verb. It should be carefully distinguished from (*a*) the emphatic pronoun **ipse,** and (*b*) the third personal pronoun referring to others than the subject; as,

They cannot defend themselves: **Sē dēfendere nōn possunt.**

Commius took the cavalry over with him: **Commius sēcum equitēs trānsportāvit.**

i. When *sē* refers to the subject of the clause to which it belongs, it is called the 'direct reflexive'; but when, as often, *sē* belongs to a subordinate clause and refers to the subject of the principal clause, it is called the 'indirect reflexive.' In subordinate clauses expressing a thought, statement, wish, command or question, the reflexive, as a rule, is indirect, referring to the person who thinks, commands, etc., but frequently, where there is no ambiguity, it is direct, referring to the subject of its own verb. The direct and the indirect uses may be found together; as, *They asked the king not to keep Hannibal with him, but to surrender him to them:* **Ab rēge petēbant nē Hannibalem sēcum habēret sibique dēderet.**

ii. The reflexive pronouns with *inter* are equivalent to the reciprocal *each other* or *one another* (including often the English preposition governing these words), as, *They love one another:* **Inter sē amant.** *They fight with one another:* **Inter sē pūgnant.**

iii. For the reflexives of the first and second persons, the personal pronouns are used.

iv. The passive voice of some verbs is used with reflexive force; as, *They exercise themselves:* **Exercentur** or **Sē exercent.**

165. Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester, the possessive pronouns, are seldom expressed except for the sake of emphasis or clearness; in other cases the context gives a sufficient indication; as,

For the sake of your well-being, they have neglected their own peril: **Vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt.**

i. These pronouns often express what is characteristic of a person; as, *By his own peculiar methods:* **Suīs artibus.**

ii. *Suus*, like *sē* (section 164, i.), is used both as a direct and as an indirect reflexive. Very frequently also *suus* refers to some word in its clause which is not a subject of any verb; as, *They send Mago with his fleet to Spain:* **Magōnem cum classe suā in Hispāniam mittunt.** As a rule, *ējus* and *eōrum* are used for *his* or *their* when not reflexive.

iii. The possessive pronouns are often used substantively, especially *nostrī*, *suī* and *sua*.

iv. Sometimes we find a genitive in apposition with the genitive idea implied in these words; as *My name in my absence:* **Nōmen meum absentis.** *By our own help:* **Nostrā ipsōrum operā.** *Amid the tears of us all:* **In nostrō omnium flētū.** (See section 163, ii.).

EXERCISE 23.

A.

1. After these matters had been settled, a war suddenly broke out in the province itself. The cause of this war was as follows. 2. He himself placed you in charge of us. 3. The enemy had concealed their own forces in the same woods. 4. For the same reason he feared our men would inflict injury upon themselves. 5. I remained with you all that time, he returned to his own home. 6. Caesar had these two legions and those (159, iii.) of Crassus with him. 7. They slew themselves in the very gates of the camp. 8. He also thought this present war itself was dangerous to all of us (86, iv., *a*). 9. Our cavalry, after encouraging one another (164, ii.), joined battle with the enemy's horsemen. These latter (160, i.) at once betook themselves to their comrades. 10. He made this (160, ii.) promise, that he would give them a safe passage through your province. 11. After their usual (165, i.) custom, they put their wives and all their property in the woods. 12. The Nervii and the Aduatuci were waging war against us; the former (160, iii.) had taken up their position on the other side of the river Sabis; the latter were fortifying their own town.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 9, 10.*)

1. These same men had come from those who were pursuing our cavalry. 2. On the same night they found out that their own vessel had been wrecked. 3. These sailors reported to him that the nature of that place was as follows. 4. He himself forbade my advancing with him. 5. He does not fear for himself. They will prevent Caesar himself from advancing. 6. We repulsed the enemy, you fled. 7. He learned that they had hidden themselves (164, i.) and their possessions (165, iii.) in the woods. 8. I wished you to advance to that river with all your forces. 9. In that place our men caught sight of the enemy's camp. These latter (160, i.) had begun to blockade the very entrances. 10. The soldiers of this legion will encamp in the same place. 11. During all these days they were pursuing those who had been driven out of the fortifications. 12. He has left you (*plur.*) to

guard us. 13. You (*sing.*) have been put in charge of us. 14. While these were fortifying the camp, those were felling trees.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

ANY.

166. (*a*) **Quis (quī)** means *any*, *anyone*, after **sī, nē, num,** and *some*, *some one*, after **nisi**; as,

If any one has heard anything he reports it to the magistrate: **Sī quis quid accēpit, ad magistrātum dēfert.**

He ordered the soldiers not to hurl back any weapon: **Mīlitibus imperāvit nē quod tēlum rejicerent.**

i. For the tenses used in general conditions introduced by *sī quis*, see section 64, v.

(*b*) **Quisquam** (substantival) means *any one*, and **ūllus** (adjectival) means *any*, when all are excluded, that is, when *any* has the force of *any*, *even one*, suggesting the idea of *no one* or *none*. They are used in negative, or practically negative sentences;[1] as,

Nor was any one found: **Neque repertus est quisquam.**

The battle was without any danger: **Sine ūllō perīculō erat proelium.**

i. Instead of *nōn* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus*, Latin prefers *nēmō*, *nihil* and *nūllus*; but *neque* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus* is preferred to *et* followed by *nēmō*, *nihil* or *nūllus*: as, *They do not expect any disaster:* **Nūllum cāsum exspectant.** *And nothing is considered more disgraceful:* **Neque turpius quicquam habētur.**

(*c*) **Quīvīs, quīlibet** mean *any*, *any one*, when all are included, that is, when *any* has the force of *any you please*, suggesting the idea of *every one, all*; as, *The vessels were built to withstand any violence:* **Nāvēs factae sunt ad quamvīs vim perferendam.**

SOME.

167. (*a*) **Aliquis (aliquī)** means *some*, *some one* (*or other*), wholly indefinite; as,

---

[1] For instance, rhetorical questions, comparative clauses, clauses with *priusquam* denoting *prevention*, and clauses containing such words as *sine*, *vix*, *aegrē*.

He bade them send some one : **Jussit eōs aliquem mittere.**

They are devising some new plan : **Aliquid novī cōnsiliī ineunt.**

Even if some portion be surrounded, the rest can be saved : **Sī pars aliqua circumventa erit, reliquī servārī possunt.**

i. *Quispiam* has the force of *aliquis*, but is much rarer.

(*b*) **Nōnnūllī** means *some, some few*, suggesting the idea of *some, but not many ;* as,

They lost some (or *a few*) *of their men :* **Nōnnūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt.**

(*c*) **Nesciō quis** means *some one or other* unknown to the speaker ; often, through an affectation of ignorance, it implies contempt ; as, *He had raised some rumor or other* (or *some trifling rumor*) *:* **Rūmōris nesciō quid afflāverat.**

i. *Nesciō quis* in this sense is treated as a simple word, and as such is not followed by the subjunctive of indirect question. Similarly *nesciō quō modō* or *nesciō quō pactō, in some way or other.*

(*d*) **Sunt quī** with the subjunctive (section 32) means *some* (emphatic) or *there are some who ;* as, *Some said :* **Erant quī dīcerent.**

(*e*) **Quīdam** means *a certain one, a certain*, of what one has in mind, but is not anxious or able to specify further. Hence it is often used in vague descriptions, meaning *a sort of ;* as,

One of the soldiers said : **Quīdam ex mīlitibus dīxit.**

The Romans have defeated us not by valor but by a sort of trick : **Nōn virtūte vīcērunt Rōmānī sed artificiō quōdam.**

(*f*) For *alius* repeated, meaning *some . . . others*, see section 168, *a.* and for *quis*, meaning *some*, see section 166, *a.*

OTHER.

168. (*a*) **Alius** means *other*, *another*. When it is repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is *one . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . others ;* as,

They fled in another direction : **Aliam in partem fūgērunt.**

Some were filling the trenches, others were hurling weapons : **Aliī fossās complēbant, aliī tēla conjiciēbant.**

When in the same clause it is repeated in a different case, or is accompanied by a derivative adverb, the meaning is, in the singular *one . . . one*, *another . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . one*, *others . . . another*: as, *Some were carried in one direction, others in another*: **Aliī aliam in partem ferēbantur.** *They believe one thing one moment, another another*: **Aliās aliud sentiunt.**

i. After *alius* or *aliter* (and similarly after *contrā*), *ac* or *atque* is used to introduce a comparison (*other than*); as, *They wage war in a manner very different from* (or *far other than*) *the rest of the Gauls*: **Longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerunt.**

ii. Sometimes *alius* repeated in the same clause is to be rendered by *one another*; as, *They lend aid to one another* (or *one to another*): **Alius aliī subsidium ferunt.** (See also 164, ii.).

(*b*) **Alter** means *the other*, *the second* (of two). When repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is (*the*) *one . . . the other*, in the plural *the one party . . . the other party*; as,

(*The*) *one part he gave up to the Gauls, the other he allotted to the cohorts*: **Alteram partem Gallīs concessit, alteram cohortibus attribuit.**

One division fled to the mountain, the other to the baggage: **Alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta.**

(*c*) **Cēterī** and **reliquī** mean *the others*, *the rest*, *the remainder*;[1] as,

They differ from the others: **Differunt ā cēterīs.**

The Veneti and the other states also prepare for war: **Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs bellum parant.**

EACH.

169. (*a*) **Quisque** means *each* (*of more than two*), *every*, and is especially frequent with the reflexive;[2] as,

It is best for each to return to his home: **Optimum est domum suam quemque revertī.**

---

[1] For the agreement of *cēterī* and *reliquī* see section 86, iv. *b*.

[2] With pronouns *quisque* and *uterque* are used substantively, taking the partitive genitive; but with nouns they are used adjectively in agreement.

i. With superlatives and ordinal numerals *quisque* has the force of *every* (or *all the*); as, *Every man of noble birth:* **Nōbilissimus quisque.** *Every tenth man:* **Decimus quisque.** *Prīmus quisque* means *the very first, the first possible.*

(*b*) **Uterque** means *each* (*of two*), freely *both;* the plural **utrīque** means *both sides* or *both parties;* as,

On each bank (or *on both banks*) *they had villages:* **Ad utramque rīpam vīcōs habēbant.**

That day both armies keep within their own lines: **Eō diē utrīque sēsē suō locō continent.**

EXERCISE 24.

A.

1. They beheld certain of our men leaping down from the other vessel. 2. They used to inquire what each one had heard concerning each matter. 3. Before he could make any (166, *b*, fn.) answer, he ordered the others to be summoned to him. 4. Some thought they could gain the victory without a (= *any*) wound. 5. It would be better to suffer any (166, *c*) fate at the hands of the Romans. 6. They will not make peace on any other terms. 7. The enemy were advancing, some from one direction, others from another (168, *a*). 8. When he saw that the enemy were pressing him on each flank, he suspected some new design (86, i.) had been formed. 9. If any of the Gauls are captured, the rest will soon surrender. 10. He trusted both chiefs, the one because of his ancient loyalty, the other because of his recent services. 11. Scarcely any one perceives that another plan must be devised. 12. That the flight of the Gauls should not alarm any, he pointed out that the Germans had won by some trick or other.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 11, 12.*)

1. Labienus was unwilling to build any ships. 2. Some have said that there is timber in each part of the island. 3. If he summons any workmen, they will be ordered to repair the other vessels. 4. He put a certain Labienus in charge of the other legion. 5. Some had been born on the island, others had crossed

over from the mainland. 6. Scarcely any one had learned that Caesar was leaving a garrison for both camps. 7. Some think that the cold is less intense in the interior, others, in the districts on the coast. 8. Others said that some place or other should be chosen. 9. Scarcely any ships have been lost, but some few must be repaired. 10. If any ship was lost (64, v.), he used to order another to be built. 11. He orders the one legion to remain there, the other to make war. 12. The ships should be drawn up, lest we lose any.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

170. Quī, *who*, *which*, the relative or conjunctive pronoun, is regularly followed by the *indicative;*[1] as,

The bridge which was at Geneva he orders to be destroyed: **Pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, jubet rescindī.**

i. The indicative is regularly found also after relative adverbs, such as *unde*, *ubi*, *quō*, *ut*, relative adjectives such as *quālis*, *quantus*, and indefinite relatives such as *quisquis* and *quīcumque*.

ii. For the agreement of the relative with its antecedent see section 13.

iii. In Latin, unlike the English usage, the relative is always expressed; as, *The liberty we have received from our forefathers:* **Ea lībertās, quam ā mājōribus accēpimus.**

iv. In the case of two relative clauses coordinate with each other, the second relative is generally omitted if the two relatives would have the same case; as, *He prevails upon Dumnorix, who held the chief authority and was very popular with the common people:* **Dumnorīgī, quī prīncipātum obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet.** When the two relatives would be in different cases, as a rule both are expressed; but sometimes the second is replaced by a demonstrative, or (if it would be in the nominative or accusative) is omitted; as, *He has sent a man whom we neither fear nor obey:* **Hominem, quem neque timēmus neque eī pārēmus, mīsit.**

---

[1] This indicative becomes subjunctive in actual or virtual indirect discourse (see sections 175 and 177).

v. Where the same preposition would be used with both antecedent and relative, it is regularly omitted with the relative.

vi. The relative is often found in the ablative absolute construction.

171. The relative is used also with the *subjunctive* to introduce clauses of *purpose* (section 26), clauses of *characteristic* (section 32), and also clauses of *concession* (or *adversative* clauses) and clauses of *cause* or *reason* ;[1] as,

Though Cicero during all the previous days had kept the soldiers in the camp, on the seventh day he sent five cohorts to forage : **Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, septimō diē quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum mittit.**

It is not without divine aid that the Romans carry on war, seeing that (or *since*) *they are able to move forward such mighty engines :* **Nōn Rōmānī sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerunt, quī tantās māchinātiōnēs prōmovēre possint.**

They upbraid the Belgians for surrendering : **Increpitant Belgās quī sē dēdiderint.**

172. The Coordinating Relative.—**Quī** is often used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce, not a subordinate clause, but *a new independent sentence*, which it thus connects more clearly with the preceding words than a personal or demonstrative pronoun such as English uses, would do; as,

For this reason the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls : **Quā dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt.**

Having completed this business Caesar set out for Gaul : **Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar in Galliam profectus est.**

The relative may even take the place of a personal or demonstrative pronoun in a subordinate adverbial clause at the beginning of a new sentence; as,

When they perceived this, they began to close the gates : **Quod cum vīdissent, portās claudere coepērunt.**

---

[1] The causal relative sentence is often introduced and emphasized by *quippe*, *ut*, or *utpote*.

173. The following peculiarities in the antecedent are of common occurrence:

(*a*) The antecedent is frequently omitted; as, *They do what they are ordered:* **Quod jussī sunt, faciunt.** *He sent men to find out:* **Mīsit quī cōgnōscerent.**

(*b*) The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause, especially the words *pars, rēs, locus, diēs;* as, *Dust was seen in the direction in which the legion had marched:* **Pulvis in eā parte vidēbātur quam in partem legiō iter fēcerat.**

(*c*) The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause:

i. Where the relative clause precedes, an antecedent substantive is often put in the relative clause; as, *That part which had brought the disaster paid the penalty:* **Quae pars calamitātem intulerat, ea poenās persolvit.**

ii. Where the antecedent is an appositive, it is, as a rule, put in the relative clause; as, *They inhabit Kent, a country which lies entirely on the coast:* **Cantium incolunt, quae regiō omnis maritima est.**

iii. Somewhat similar is the transference of a superlative or other modifier of the antecedent to the relative clause; as, *He sent the largest ship he had:* **Nāvem, quam māximam habuit, mīsit.**

(*d*) The substance of a sentence may be referred to parenthetically by *quod* or *id quod;* as, *He told them that after the enemy were put to flight (as he saw would be the case) they were all to attack the king:* **Praecēpit, hostibus in fugam conjectīs (quod fore vidēbat), omnēs peterent rēgem.**

174. The relative pronoun *as* in correlative sentences is represented by several words, according to the antecedent. **Īdem** is followed by **quī**, or by **ac (atque).** (So also **pār** when used with the force of **īdem**). **Tālis, tantus** and **tot** are followed by **quālis, quantus** and **quot** respectively.

Our men resist in the same manner as on the previous day: **Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostrīs resistitur.**

He was the same kind of man as I perceive you to be: **Tālis erat quālem tē esse videō.**

i. *As (many, large,* etc.) *as possible* is expressed by **quam** and the superlative of adjectives or adverbs, with or without the proper form of *possum;* as, *They gather as many ships as possible:* **Nāvēs quam plūrimās (possunt)**[1] **cōgunt.** *As quickly as possible:* **Quam celerrimē.**

ii. As with **quī** (section 173, *a*) the antecedent *tālis*, *tantus*, or *tot* is often omitted; as, *They allot them as much land as seems best:* **Attribuunt quantum vīsum est agrī.**

EXERCISE 25.

[*In this exercise the relative should, where possible, be used as in section 172.*]

A.

1. The ships which he had built in the previous summer, were ordered to assemble at once. 2. Nor could any vessels be found on which the cavalry could (32) be brought over. 3. Having made these preparations, they fixed a day on which all were to assemble (26) at the banks of the river. 4. When they heard this, they withdrew to the camp whence they had set out. 5. The same thing will happen as happened yesterday. 6. This legion he left to guard the camp, seeing that it (171) was wearied with marching. 7. The number of those who set out from the country of the Helvetians was three hundred and sixty-eight thousand. Of these, those who could bear arms were ninety-two thousand. 8. Dismayed by his advance, the enemy took to flight, although they (171) had gathered large forces. 9. These do not strive with as great eagerness as they are accustomed to exhibit in battles on land. 10. The enemy suddenly came in sight of the cavalry Caesar had sent to the assistance of the Aedui. 11. These are allowed to go in safety in whatever direction they wish. 12. He sent the bravest horsemen he had (173, c. iii.) with him to Vesontio, which (13, i.) is the largest town of the Sequani.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 13, 14.*)

1. This is the length of the side which is opposite Ireland. 2. There are three (*trēs*) sides, all of which (86, iv., *a*) are equal. 3. The distance is thought to be the shortest possible. 4. Those who inhabit the other district are more civilized. 5. Ireland is not considered to be as large as Britain. 6. This island the

---

[1] With *possunt* the infinitive (*cōgere*) is understood.

Britons inhabit. These, seeing that (171) they dye themselves with woad, are of a hideous appearance. 7. The region which is on the sea some call Kent. 8. The island is of the same circumference as Mona. 9. By these inquiries we have found that the custom is the same as in Britain. 10. They have (*habeō*) milk and flesh in the island of which I have written. 11. The woad with which the Britons used to dye themselves is thought to have produced a blue color. 12. When the ship was brought to land at this place, we saw that most of the people were clad in skins.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.[1]

175. In many of the preceding sections rules have been given for using, now the indicative, now the subjunctive, in subordinate clauses introduced by a relative or conjunction.

But all such subordinate clauses are put in the *subjunctive* when dependent on a clause in indirect discourse, that is, on a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *stating*, *thinking*, *fearing*, *perceiving*, *ordering* or *asking*. The indicative should never be used to express any portion of the quoted words or thoughts of another; as,

He answers that he has been silent as long as he has been able: **Respondet quamdiū potuerit sē tacuisse.**

They thought they would recover the hostages that they had given to Crassus: **Sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent reciperātūrōs exīstimābant.**

It was observed that our men were scarcely suited to an enemy of this sort, because they could not follow up a retreating force: **Intellēctum est nostrōs, quod īnsequī cēdentēs nōn possent, minus aptōs esse ad hūjus generis hostem.**

He ordered them to await his arrival in the place where they then were: **Eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre jussit.**

---

[1] These clauses are sometimes called by the conveniently short term *sub-oblique.*

He asked why Caesar demanded this if he did not think it right: **Rogāvit cūr Caesar, sī nōn aequum exīstimāret hōc postulāret.**

i. An apparent exception is found in the use of the indicative in subordinate clauses that really form no part of the quoted words or thoughts, but either are parenthetic or explanatory additions made by the writer himself, or are the writer's substitute for something actually said or thought; as,

He ordered the cohorts which were on guard to set out with him: **Cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum proficīscī jussit.**

Caesar suspected that that would happen which did occur: **Caesar fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.**

Here *quae in statiōnibus erant* formed no part of the order given, while no such clause as *quod accidit* could possibly have been in Caesar's mind.

176. The *sequence of tenses* is observed in these subjunctive clauses, primary tenses following primary and secondary following secondary. In narrative, secondary sequence is the rule, the present and future indicative becoming the imperfect subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the pluperfect subjunctive (see section 187, *b*).

But sometimes for the sake of vividness the primary sequence is used in narrative, the present and future indicative becoming the present subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the perfect subjunctive. (See also section 190, vi.)

177. VIRTUAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—The subjunctive is used in any subordinate clause which is conceived as expressing the words or thoughts of another, without any formal or explicit statement to that effect. This is called the subjunctive of *virtual* (*informal* or *implied*) *indirect discourse;* as,

He offered great rewards if they succeeded in carrying the despatches through: **Māgna prōposuit praemia sī litterās pertulissent.** (Here *prōposuit* is equivalent to *sē datūrum esse pollicitus est.*)

They led part of their troops across, in order, if possible, to storm the fortress: **Partem suārum cōpiārum trādūxērunt ut, sī possent, castellum expūgnārent.** (This represents the original thought *sī poterimus, castellum expūgnābimus.*)

The enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross the marsh: **Palūdem sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant.** (This represents some such thought as *sī trānsībunt, adoriēmur.*) In such sentences *sī* may also be translated by *in the hope that* or *to see whether.*[1]

He gave me all the books that (as he said) his father had left: **Omnēs librōs quōs pater suus relīquisset mihi dōnāvit.**

For other examples compare the subjunctive with *quod*, *dum* and *priusquam* (sections 147, 155 and 156).

i. Subjunctive by Attraction—A clause dependent on a subjunctive, and forming a close connection with it, is sometimes itself put in the subjunctive by attraction, without in any way being in virtual indirect discourse; as, *So profound an impression was produced by this war among the barbarians, that envoys were sent to Caesar by those tribes which dwelt beyond the Rhine:* **Tanta hūjus bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem.** *They drove the cavalry before them in such a panic that they did not cease from their flight until they came in sight of our army:* **Equitēs ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.** *When he failed to influence him as he desired, he sent by night to the king the most trusty slave he had:* **Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servīs suīs quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit.**[2]

ii. There sometimes occurs an illogical extension (by mistaken analogy) of the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse, in which the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is expressed, and is itself put in the subjunctive; as, *He begged to be left in Gaul because, as he said, he was prevented by religious scruples:* **Petēbat ut in Galliā relinquerētur, quod religiōnibus impedīrī dīceret** (for *quod religiōnibus impedīrētur*).

---

[1] Such a clause seems to have the value of an indirect question, but is really a protasis in virtual indirect discourse.

[2] The subjunctive mood of *incolerent*, *vēnissent* and *vellet*, instead of *incolēbant*, *vēnērunt* (see section 156, *a*) and *volēbat* is due entirely to the subjunctives on which they depend.

EXERCISE 26.

A.

1. He promised to send all the cavalry he had with him. 2. He believes that if the Aedui are crushed, the rest of the Gauls will disperse to their homes. 3. Caesar feared that the same thing would happen as had occurred the previous day. 4. We were waiting in case (177) the Gauls should attempt to break down the bridge. 5. Having offered rewards to those who should (177) first mount the wall, he gave the signal. 6. He ordered Labienus, whom he had put (175, i.) in charge of the camp, to set out as soon as he could. 7. Caesar complains because the Aedui have not lent him aid. 8. The enemy swarmed around in hopes (177) of finding some means of approach. 9. Word was brought that Caesar would send the cavalry by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 10. He inquired how many miles the town in which they dwelt was distant from the camp. 11. Driven by hunger, they secretly went out from the camp to see whether (177) they could find any grain or cattle in the fields. 12. They gave many reasons which (they held) were perfectly valid.

B. (*Caesar*, *B. G. V.*, *15*, *16.*)

1. He observed that when our men were engaged in battle with the enemy, the cavalry never fought in close order. 2. He feared (*vereor*) that if the enemy were driven back our men would pursue them too eagerly. 3. The two cohorts which Caesar had sent to reinforce our men were ordered to drive back the charioteers who were boldly breaking through the cavalry. 4. They were waiting (*exspectō*) to see whether (177) our men would follow those who designedly retreated. 5. He thinks (*arbitror*) that our men will not dare to make an attack on the charioteers, because they are not suited for this kind of fighting. 6. They asked (*quaerō*) what brought the same danger to the cavalry and to those who had leaped down from their chariots. 7. He had not posted guards, on the ground that all the soldiers were busy fortifying the camp. 8. He perceived that if our men left the standards, the enemy

rushed out of the woods and slew them. 9. He urged (*hortor*) them to fight vigorously because those who had been placed on guard were in great danger.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.[1]

178. In the general use of the tenses Latin differs from English in two respects:

i. There is no distinction in form corresponding to the English Progressive, Indefinite and Emphatic tenses, except that the Latin imperfect and perfect nearly correspond to the English past progressive and past indefinite respectively.

[In the subjunctive the perfect usually is equivalent to the English true perfect, while the English simple past is represented as a rule by the imperfect or (to indicate priority of action) the pluperfect.]

ii. Especially in subordinate clauses Latin is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future)[2] and also priority of action in relation to the main verb; as, *When I find out, I shall inform you, if I can:* **Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiōrem, sī poterō.** (Literally, *When I shall have found out, I shall inform you, if I shall be able.*) [This holds true of the subjunctive also.]

---

[1] Although sections 179-184 are not printed in large type, they should be carefully studied.

[2] In letters the writer often transfers himself in thought to the time of the reader, and uses the imperfect and pluperfect instead of the present and perfect; as, *I have nothing to write:* **Nihil habēbam quod scrīberem.**

179. The PRESENT tense is used:

(*a*) Of what is going on now at the present moment; as, *They are preparing for war:* **Bellum parant.**

(*b*) Of general truths, and of continued, repeated or habitual actions or states; as, *Fortune favors the brave:* **Fortūna fortēs adjuvat.** *Those in the interior do not sow grain:* **Interiōrēs frūmenta nōn serunt.**

(*c*) As an historical present, in animated narrative; as, *When the news was brought, he makes haste to set out:* **Cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat proficīscī.**

(*d*) To express an action attempted or intended in present time (the conative present); as, *They are trying to avoid danger:* **Perīculum vītant.**

(*e*) With *jam* and its compounds to express actions continued from the past into the present, where we should expect the perfect; as, *He has long been collecting troops:* **Jam diū cōpiās comparat.**

(*f*) With *dum* (*while*), where we should expect the imperfect (see section 153).

180. The IMPERFECT tense is used:

(*a*) Of what was going on in past time; as, *He was wintering in Gaul:* **In Galliā hiemābat.**

(*b*) Of continued, repeated, or habitual actions or states in past time, like the English past indefinite; as, *He used to lead* (or *would lead*, or *kept leading*, or *led*) *his troops out daily:* **Cotīdiē prōdūcēbat cōpiās.** *He had the greatest confidence in this legion:* **Huic legiōnī cōnfīdēbat māximē.** *He could not discover anything:* **Nihil reperiēbat** (suggesting repeated failures). *They would not come to the councils:* **Ad concilia nōn veniēbant** (implying repeated refusals).

(*c*) Hence appropriately where English would use the simple past:

i. To express one's usual way of thinking, or the thoughts or feelings which accompany consideration (while the perfect is used of coming to a decision).

ii. To explain the situation of affairs.

iii. To give the details of movements, or to describe the process as opposed to summing up the result.

iv. To mention the natural features of the scene of past operations.

(*d*) To express an action attempted or intended (the conative imperfect) or begun in past time (the inceptive imperfect); as, *They tried to prevent our march:* **Nostrōs itinere prohibēbant.** *He proceeded to stir up the Gauls:* **Gallōs sollicitābat.**

(*e*) With *jam* and its compounds to express action continued from a still earlier time into the past time spoken of, where we should expect the pluperfect; as, *He had long been carrying on war:* **Jam prīdem bellum gerēbat.**

(*f*) In the case of *possum*, *oportet*, *dēbeō* and such verbs, to express lack of correspondence with fact.

181. The FUTURE tense is used to denote what will take place at some future time; as, *Caesar will take the camp by storm:* **Caesar castra expūgnābit.**

i. Where English has the present in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future when the actions are contemporaneous (section 178, ii.). Compare section 184, i.

182. The PERFECT tense is used:

(*a*) Like the English present perfect, to denote an action completed by the present time; as, *They have left their lands and have hidden in the forest:* **Fīnibus suīs excessērunt, sēque in silvās abdidērunt.**

(*b*) Like the English past indefinite, to state that something took place in past time; as, *He sent forward the cavalry:* **Equitātum praemīsit.**

The perfect narrates; the imperfect describes. The perfect sums up; the imperfect dwells upon the process or the particulars. Compare also section 180, *c*.

(*c*) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the present. (Section 149.)

(*d*) With *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul atque*, where we might expect the pluperfect. (Section 152, *b*.)

(*e*) To denote the present state resulting from completed action; as, *He is dead:* **Mortuus est.** *They are gone:* **Discessērunt.** *We are surrounded:* **Circumventī sumus.** This is especially the case with *cōnsuēvī*, *I am accustomed;* *meminī*, *I remember;* and *nōvī*, *I know* (literally *I have become accustomed*, *I have called to mind*, *I have learned*).

Similarly the pluperfect of these verbs has the value of the imperfect, and the future perfect the value of the future.

i. The perfect tenses of the passive have sometimes *fuī*, *fueram*, *fuerō*, instead of *sum*, *eram*, *erō*. The form with *fuī* generally implies that the condition spoken of has ceased to exist.

ii. A sort of perfect is formed by *habeō* and the perfect participle passive,[1] emphasizing the continuance of the result of a past action; as, *He has large forces collected:* **Māgnās cōpiās coāctās habet.** Similarly for the pluperfect *habēbam* is used.

183. The PLUPERFECT tense is used:

(*a*) To mark an act as completed or taking place before some point in past time mentioned or implied: as, *They had by this time reached the territories of the Aedui:* **Jam in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant.**

i. Sometimes Caesar uses the pluperfect instead of the perfect in referring to previous passages in his Commentaries. (Compare section 178, ii. fn.)

ii. For the pluperfect formed by *fueram* and by *habēbam* see section 182, i. and ii. respectively.

(*b*) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the imperfect. (Section 149 and 64, *v*.)

(*c*) To denote a past state resulting from a previously completed action. (See section 182, *e*.)

184. The FUTURE PERFECT tense is used to express something completed or attained by some point in the future; as, *Meanwhile he will have gone*, or *will be gone:* **Interim discesserit.**

i. Where English has the present or present perfect in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future perfect when the action of the subordinate verb is prior to that of the principal verb (section 178, ii.). Sometimes where two future actions are regarded as identical, one involving the other, the future perfect is found in both clauses; as, *He who crushes Antony will* (*thereby*) *finish the war:* **Quī Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum cōnfēcerit.**

ii. The future perfect is sometimes used to emphasize the completion of a future act; as, *I at least shall have my duty done* (or *I at least shall be found to have done my duty*)*:* **Ego certē meum officium praestiterō.** It thus may come to give assurance of rapidity of action; as, *The first attack will carry the camp forthwith:* **Prīmus impetus castra cēperit.**

---

[1] Compare in English *I have the letter written*, as distinguished from *I have written the letter.*

EXERCISE 27.

A.

1. To this legion he always showed especial indulgence. 2. If you assist the enemy, I shall burn your villages. 3. The Druids are accustomed to hold aloof from war, and do not pay taxes. 4. After he had learned this, he thought he ought not to wait longer. 5. If Caesar is at the head of the army, we shall easily conquer the Gauls. 6. He marched through the forest of Ardennes, which extended from the Rhine to the Nervii. 7. By this means they sought (180, *d*) to terrify the others. 8. While this was going on, the enemy had already reached the territories of the Aedui, and were laying waste their lands. 9. On the following day they move their camp two miles. 10. Whenever he saw his men in distress, he would send reinforcements. 11. For the reasons which I have mentioned, Caesar wished to set out for Britain. 12. Before midnight the enemy will be gone (184).

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 17, 18.*)

1. The enemy are rallying. 2. The enemy are repulsed and a large number slain. 3. When (*cum*) Caesar learns this he will send forward the legions. 4. They were accustomed (*cōnsuērī*) to leap down from their chariots. 5. For a long time (*diū*) they had been contending with their full force. 6. Whenever they began to forage, the enemy would suddenly show themselves. 7. As soon as all the reinforcements had assembled he proceeded (180, *d*) to cross the river. 8. During all these years they were unable to learn his plans. 9. While the cavalry were foraging, the enemy had withdrawn. 10. They trusted (180, *c*, i.) in the speed of the chariots. 11. Whenever our men make an attack, the enemy betake themselves to flight. 12. When (*ubi*) they had crossed (182, *d*) the river, they halted. 13. When (*cum*) he perceived this, he immediately ordered the cavalry to halt. 14. The enemy's forces are drawn up on the other hill.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE—**Ōrātiō Oblīqua.**

185. Direct Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*) gives in their original form the words or thoughts of any person.

Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*) gives (in dependence upon some verb of *stating*, *thinking*, *perceiving*, *ordering* or *asking*) the substance of the words or thoughts of another person, and even of the writer or speaker when quoting himself.

The rules for changing Direct into Indirect Discourse are as follows:

A. CHANGES IN MOOD.[1]

186. 1. Principal Clauses.

(*a*) Clauses containing a *statement* (assertive or declarative sentences) have their verb in the *infinitive* with subject accusative (section 14).

(*b*) Clauses containing a *question* (interrogative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive* (section 35).

i. Indirect deliberative questions (section 134, *d*) retain the subjunctive.

(c) Clauses containing a *command* or *request* (imperative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive.*

i. This use of the subjunctive is closely related to the substantive final clause (section 27), both being developments of the independent jussive subjunctive (section 134, *b*). It is thus sometimes difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish the reported command and the substantive final clause, especially after *nē* or when *ut* is omitted (section 28, vi.); as for instance in the sentences, **Nūntiī postulābant hōs sibi dēderent** : *The messengers demanded that they should surrender these men to them.* **Mīlitibus imperātum est nē hostēs aggrederentur** : *The soldiers were given orders that they should not attack the enemy.*

2. Subordinate Clauses.

All kinds of subordinate clauses (relative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.) are put in the *subjunctive* mood (section 175 and fn.).

---

[1] In no case is the indicative retained.

B. CHANGES IN TENSE.

187. (*a*) Clauses put in the *infinitive* change as follows:

DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
Present Ind.	becomes Present Infinitive.
Imperfect, Perfect or Pluperfect Ind.	" Perfect "
Future Ind. Present or Imperf. Subj.[1]	" Future "
Future Perf. Ind. Imperf. or Pluperf. Subj.[1]	" Inf. in *-ūrum fuisse.*

(*b*) Clauses put in the *subjunctive* as a rule observe the sequence of tenses (section 176) as follows:

DIRECT DISCOURSE.		INDIRECT DISCOURSE.	
		Primary Sequence.	*Secondary Sequence.*
Present Indic. or Subj.	becomes	Present Subj.	Imperfect Subj.
Future " " "	"	" "	" "
Imperfect " " "	"	Imperfect "	" "
Perfect " " "	"	Perfect "	Pluperfect "
Fut. Perf. " " "	"	" "	" "
Pluperfect " " "	"	Pluperfect "	" "

Certain exceptions occur, however, in *indirect questions:*

The future indicative becomes (according to sequence) the present or imperfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (section 36).

The imperfect indicative becomes (according to sequence) the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive (section 36, fn. 1 (*a*)).

i. Of special importance is the use of the pluperfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse. The difficulty of this common use is due largely to the fact that the original future perfect is foreign to the English idiom (section 178, ii.). Thus, *If I find out, I shall bring back word:* **Sī cōgnōverō, renūntiābō** would become, *He answered that if he found out, he should bring back word:* **Respondit sī cōgnōvisset, sē renūntiātūrum esse.** The pluperfect subjunctive in such cases means literally *should have*, not *had already.*

---

[1] In the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

C. CHANGES IN PRONOUNS.

188. When, as is generally the case,[1] the first and second persons of the original words are changed in indirect discourse to the third person :

ego, *nōs*, become *sē* (or if emphatic in the nominative, *ipse*, *ipsī*).
meus, *noster*, " *suus*.
tū, *vōs*, " *illē*, *illī* (or sometimes *is*, *eī*).
tuus, *vester*, " *illīus*, *illōrum*.
hīc, *iste*, " *ille* (or *is*.)

D. CHANGES IN ADVERBS.

189. Adverbs which are relative to the time or place of the speaker, are, as a rule, adapted to the time and place of the reporter. Thus *nunc*, *hodiē*, *hīc*, *hinc*, *herī*, would become respectively *tum* or *tunc*, *illō diē*, *ibi*, *inde*, *prīdiē*.

190. The following real or apparent exceptions also are found :

i. Clauses introduced by the coordinating relative, which are only apparently subordinate, are put in the infinitive.

ii. Because of the tendency in Latin to use the same construction after *quam* (*than*) as before it, the accusative and infinitive sometimes occurs in *quam* clauses instead of the subjunctive.

iii. For the indicative in parenthetic clauses in indirect discourse see section 175, i.

iv. The hortatory subjunctive (section 134, *a*) is usually changed into the infinitive of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

v. Rhetorical questions which are virtual denials are often put in the accusative and infinitive.

vi. Instead of the regular secondary sequence the more vivid[2] primary is often found after historical tenses ; and sometimes also a passage may begin with secondary sequence and suddenly change to primary sequence. On the other hand, after the historical present (section 179, *c*) secondary sequence may be used.

vii. The pronoun *hīc* and the adverbs mentioned in section 189 are often retained unchanged in indirect discourse.

---

[1] Of course where the matter quoted refers to the person reporting or the person to whom it is reported, Latin, like English, will use the first or second persons in indirect discourse.

[2] More vivid because presenting more exactly the original tenses.

viii. The regular rules for the use of *sē*, *ille* and *is* in indirect discourse are not always rigidly followed, especially where no ambiguity arises. See particularly on the use of *sē* and *suus* sections 164, i. and 165, ii.

191. The verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., on which the indirect discourse depends, is not always expressed, being often sufficiently suggested by the context.

Further, where the indirect discourse includes more than one variety of reported utterance (statements, commands, questions, requests) it is not Latin usage to change the verb introducing the various indirect clauses, as English often does.

Ariovistus sends envoys to Caesar saying that he wished to treat with him about these matters and asking him to appoint a day for an interview: **Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē dē hīs rēbus agere cum eō: colloquiō diem cōnstitueret.**

192. In indirect discourse conditional sentences assume the following forms:

Sī quid habeō dō,	*becomes*	**dīcit sē,** **dīxit sē,**	**sī quid habeat, dare.** **sī quid habēret, dare.**
Sī quid habēbam dabam,	*becomes*	**dīcit sē,** **dīxit sē,**	**sī quid habēret, dedisse.** **sī quid habēret, dedisse.**
Sī quid habuī dedī,	*becomes*	**dīcit sē,** **dīxit sē,**	**sī quid habuerit, dedisse.** **sī quid habuisset, dedisse.**
Sī quid habēbō dabō,	*becomes*	**dīcit sē,** **dīxit sē,**	**sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.** **sī quid habēret, datūrum esse.**
Sī quid habuerō dabō,	*becomes*	**dīcit sē,** **dīxit sē,**	**sī quid habuerit, datūrum esse.** **sī quid habuisset, datūrum esse.**
Sī quid habeam dem,	*becomes*	**dīcit sē,** **dīxit sē,**	**sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.** **sī quid habēret, datūrum esse.**
Sī quid habērem darem,	*becomes*	**dīcit** **dīxit**	**sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum fuisse** (*or* **esse**).
Sī quid habuissem dedissem,	*becomes*	**dīcit** **dīxit**	**sē, sī quid habuisset, datūrum fuisse.**

193. The following examples illustrate the rules for changing from direct to indirect discourse :

1. *Direct.* — We shall give hostages, and shall do whatever you command.	Obsidēs **dabimus,** quaeque **imperāveris faciēmus.**
Indirect.—(They promised) that they would give hostages, and would do whatever he commanded.	(Pollicitī sunt) obsidēs **sē datūrōs,** quaeque **imperāvisset factūrōs.**
2. *Direct.*—A larger cloud of dust than is customary is visible in the direction in which the legion has marched.	**Pulvis mājor** quam cōnsuētūdō **fert** in eā parte **vidētur,** quam in partem legiō iter **fēcit.**
Indirect.—(They reported) that a larger cloud of dust was visible in the direction in which the legion had marched.	(Renūntiāvērunt) **pulverem mājōrem,** quam cōnsuētūdō **ferret,** in eā parte **vidērī,** quam in partem legiō iter **fēcisset.**
3. *Direct.*—Visit as many states as you can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that I shall quickly come thither. After examining everything, return to me as quickly as possible.	Quās **poteris adī** cīvitātēs, **hortāre**que ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, **mē**que celeriter eō ventūrum **nūntiā.** Explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad **mē** quam prīmum **revertere.**
Indirect. — (He gives him orders) that he is to visit as many states as he can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that he will quickly come thither. After examining everything, he is to return to him as quickly as possible.	(Huic imperat) quās **possit adeat** cīvitātēs, **hortētur**que ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, **sē**que celeriter eō ventūrum **nūntiet.** Explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad **sē** quam prīmum **revertātur.**

4. *Direct.*—It is not without reason that Gaul is being robbed of all her nobility; this is Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those he fears to slay in sight of Gaul.	Nōn sine causā **fit**, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte **spoliētur; hōc est cōnsilium** Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere **verētur,** hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs **necet**.
Indirect.—(He said) that it was not without reason that Gaul was being robbed of all her nobility; that this was Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those whom he feared to slay in sight of Gaul.	(Dīxit) nōn sine causā **fierī**, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte **spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium** Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere **verērētur,** hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs **necāret.**
5. *Direct.*—I was unwilling to leave my people and come to you, for this reason that I might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state is in my power, and if you permit it I shall come to you in your camp and entrust the fortunes of myself and the state to your protection.	Idcircō ā **meīs** discēdere atque ad **tē** venīre **nōlēbam**, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō **continērem**; itaque **est cīvitās** in **meā** potestāte, atque sī **permittēs**, ad **tē** in castra **veniam**, **meās** cīvitātisque fortūnās **tuae** fideī **permittam.**
Indirect. — (He answered) that he had been unwilling to leave his people and come to him, for this reason that he might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state was in his power, and if Caesar permitted it, he should come to him in his camp, and entrust the fortunes of himself and the state to his protection.	(Respondit) idcircō ab **suīs** discēdere atque ad **eum** venīre **nōluisse**, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō **continēret**; itaque **esse cīvitātem** in **suā** potestāte, **sēsēque**, **sī** Caesar **permitteret**, ad **eum** in castra **ventūrum**, **suās** cīvitātisque fortūnās **ējus** fideī **permissūrum**.

6. *Direct.*—Even if time fails, yet it will be of great service to me, if I merely visit the island.	Sī tempus **dēficiet, tamen** māgnō **mihi** ūsuī **erit,** sī modo īnsulam **adierō.**
Indirect. — (He thought) that, even if time failed, yet it would be of great service to him, if he merely visited the island.	(Arbitrābātur) sī tempus **dēficeret, tamen** māgnō **sibi** ūsuī **fore,** sī modo īnsulam **adiisset.**
7. *Direct.*—If you think it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against your wish, why do you claim that anything beyond the Rhine is under your sway or power?	Sī **tē** invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum **exīstimās,** cūr **tuī** quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum **postulās?**
Indirect.—If he thought it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against his wish, why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?	Sī **sē** invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum **exīstimāret,** cūr **suī** quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum **postulāret?**
8. *Direct.*—Leap down, soldiers, unless you wish to betray the eagle to the enemy. I at least shall have done my duty.	**Dēsilīte, mīlitēs,** nisi **vultis** aquilam hostibus prōdere. **Ego** certē **meum** officium **praestiterō.**
Indirect.—Let the soldiers leap down, unless they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy. He at least should have done his duty.	**Dēsilīrent** mīlitēs, nisi **vellent** aquilam hostibus prōdere. **Sē** certē **suum** officium **praestitūrum fuisse.**
9. *Direct.*—Do no harm to the Trinobantes, Cassivellaunus.	**Nōlī, Cassivellaune, Trinobantibus nocēre.**
Indirect.—He ordered Cassivellaunus to do no harm to the Trinobantes.	(Imperat **Cassivellaunō**) **nē** Trinobantibus **noceat.**

(Observe how the vocative may be represented in indirect discourse.)

EXERCISE 28.

[*The passages quoted in direct form should be turned into indirect for translation.*]

A.

1. To these ambassadors he replied: "I will go with you, if you are ready to set out." 2. They sent ambassadors to Caesar saying that they were ready to open the gates they had closed the day before. 3. He told them not to forget the former valor of the Helvetians, nor the wrongs done by them to the Roman people. 4. "I," answered he, "have spared the citizens, you the Gauls." 5. He began to urge them not to set out; Caesar did not dare to leave them in Gaul; but if they crossed over to Britain, he would kill them all. 6. "Let them not," he wrote, "provoke the enemy to battle, but if they are being harassed themselves, let them hold out until (155, *b*) I come up." 7. They replied that if these proceedings were reported to Ariovistus, they did not doubt that he would inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages who were in his power. 8. What were they to do? he asked; it was impossible to defend the camp any longer, and Caesar would have been annoyed if they had set out without his orders. 9. In his consulship (he said) the Germans had most eagerly sought the friendship of Rome. Why should anyone imagine that they would forsake their allegiance? 10. Would they have sent Commius back, he asked (35, i.), if he had not led his army across?

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 19-21.*)

1. He points out that if the cavalry rush out, the legionary soldiers will not endure the onset. 2. He pointed out that if the cavalry wandered too widely, the Britons would rush out from the woods and seize them. 3. "We shall send you all the corn we have (*habeō*)," they answered Caesar. "Why (*cūr*) are you setting out with the legions? Do not attack our town." 4. He said that this young man would have held supreme power if he had not been slain by Cassivellaunus. 5. "Let us cross (190, iv.) the river," they answered. "Who can harm us if we are able to conceal ourselves in the marshes?" 6. The Trinobantes sent an

embassy to Caesar (saying) that they had given up all hope and (promising) that they would surrender to him all the hostages he demanded and (begging him) not to suffer the soldiers to lay waste their lands. 7. They feared (*vereor*) that if Caesar allowed the legions to leave the line of march, the enemy would seize many of the soldiers. 8. They said they were accustomed to assemble in these towns, whenever the enemy made a raid. 9. They promised (him) the kingship, if he did not attach (177) himself to Caesar.

Different Forms of the Noun Clause.

194. A noun (or substantive) clause is one that takes the place and discharges the functions of a substantive, whether as *subject* or *object* of a verb or equivalent phrase, or as an *appositive*[1] to some other word in the sentence.

N. B.—The accusative and infinitive construction is here treated as a noun clause because it represents the English noun sentence introduced by the conjunction *that*. Similarly in substantive clauses of result, and in clauses with *quīn* and *quōminus*, the adverbial notion of result or purpose has become so weakened that they may properly be treated as noun clauses like their English equivalents.

i. Clauses, like infinitive phrases, are always regarded as neuter.

195. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, many so-called impersonal verbs, and many expressions composed of a neuter adjective and *est*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by the accusative and infinitive.

(*a*) Subject.—*It is not right that the Germans should cross the Rhine:* **Nōn aequum est Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīre.**

(*b*) Object.—*They thought they possessed limited territories:* **Angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur.**

(*c*) Appositive.—*This report was brought to Caesar, that they were attempting to march through our province:* **Caesarī id nūntiātum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī.**

---

[1] A noun clause is occasionally used as a restrictive appositive to an accusative of anticipation; as, *You know Marcellus how slow he is:* **Nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit.** *They feared that supplies could not be brought in:* **Rem frūmentāriam ut supportārī posset timent.**

196. After words of *ordering*, *asking*, *determining*, and verbs of *fearing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. This subjunctive is akin to the subjunctive of purpose, and like it is in its origin the subjunctive expressing will (see section 186, 1, *c*, i.).

(*a*) Subject.—*The soldiers have been given orders that they are to attack the enemy:* **Mīlitibus imperātum est ut hostēs aggrediantur.**

(*b*) Object.—*I fear that I may be deserted by all:* **Vereor nē ab omnibus dēserar.**

(*c*) Appositive.—*Their aim is that they may recover their liberty:* **Id agunt ut lībertātem recipiant.**

197. After verbs of *happening* and *causing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* and the subjunctive, which is a weakened subjunctive of result.[1]

(*a*) Subject.—*It happened that there was a full moon:* **Accidit ut esset plēna lūna.**

(*b*) Object.—*He brought it about that supplies could be conveyed to him without danger*: **Commeātūs ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat.**

(*c*) Appositive.—*The day had this result, that a very great number of the enemy were wounded:* **Diēs hunc habuit ēventum, ut māximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur.**

198. English noun clauses with *that* after verbs expressing *emotion*, and clauses with *that = the fact that*, are expressed by clauses with *quod* and either the indicative, or the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse.

(*a*) Subject.—*There was also the fact that he had stated this in the assembly of the Aedui:* **Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Aeduōrum haec dīxerat.**

(*b*) Object.—*He complains that he has been abandoned:* **Quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.**[2]

(*c*) Appositive.—*A most fortunate thing happened, that the next day the Germans came into the camp:* **Opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē Germānī in castra vēnērunt.**

---

[1] The substantival notion became so much more prominent than the notion of result that this construction came to be used in cases where not even the faintest trace of result can be discerned.

[2] Here, as often, the substantival and causal notions are combined.

(*d*) Adverbial Accusative.—*As to the fact that you threaten me you will not disregard the wrongs of the Aedui, no one has contended with me, except to his own destruction:* **Quod mihi dēnūntiās tē Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit.**

199. After verbs of *asking*, *learning*, *knowing*, *telling*, etc., English noun clauses introduced by an interrogative are expressed by an interrogative clause with the subjunctive of indirect question.

(*a*) Subject.—*It cannot be determined with the eyes in which direction it flows:* **Oculīs in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn potest.**

(*b*) Object.—*He found out what was being done:* **Cōgnōvit quid gererētur.**

(*c*) Appositive.—*This is the real question, whether he has returned:* **Illud quaeritur num redierit.**

200. The same verb may have more than one construction, the difference of construction in most cases representing a difference of meaning.[1]

(*a*) *They determine that these should leave the town:* **Cōnstituunt ut hī oppidō excēdant.**

They determine that it is best to return: **Cōnstituunt optimum esse revertī.**

He determined what tribute Britain should pay: **Quid vectīgālis Britannia penderet, cōnstituit.**

(*b*) *Word was brought that they were not to attack the enemy:* **Nūntiātum est nē hostēs lacesserentur.** (Compare section 195, *c.*)

(*c*) *There was also the fact that they fought in small groups:* **Accēdēbat hūc ut rārī proeliārentur.** (Compare section 198, *a.*)

N.B.—It is important to distinguish carefully (*a*) between substantive clauses with *that* and the purely adverbial clauses of purpose and result also introduced by *that*, and (*b*) between substantive interrogative clauses and relative clauses with omitted antecedent (section 39, v.).

---

[1] Observe that the clause which follows verbs of *determining, announcing, telling*, etc., will be in the infinitive or subjunctive, according to the rules of indirect discourse (section 186, 1).

EXERCISE 29.

A.

1. It is best that we should announce to the soldiers that they are not to provoke the enemy to battle. 2. They made the complaint that the enemy were laying waste their lands. 3. The result was that it was quickly ascertained what tribes inhabited the island. 4. There was danger that it would be difficult to determine what should be done. 5. There was added the fact that (198, *a*) he had stated that Caesar had conferred the chief power upon him. 6. It happened that some of the soldiers were intercepted by the sudden approach of the cavalry. 7. It was reported that Caesar had given orders to the soldiers to storm the enemy's camp. 8. By means of messengers he informs Caesar what he thinks should be done. 9. He answered that he did not know why the soldiers had received orders that they were to attack the town. 10. There is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful. 11. He was of the opinion that it would be dangerous to the province that the enemy should become accustomed to cross the Rhine. 12. This report had been brought, that the Germans had betaken themselves to the woods. 13. He sent messengers to announce that Caesar had determined that (200, *a*) Labienus should not return.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 22-23.*)

1. There was added the fact that (198, *a*) some ships had been driven back. 2. This report had been brought (*nūntiō*) to Cassivellaunus that Caesar had determined to lead his forces back to the mainland. 3. When he had determined what should be done, he urged (*hortor*) that they should wait for the vessels. 4. There is danger (*perīculum*) that Caesar will determine that all the legions shall winter in Gaul. 5. It happened that the ships in which he had ordered that the army should be sent back had been lost in the storm. 6. Caesar complained (*queror*) that they had not paid the tribute. 7. He announced that the best (*optimus*) thing was for the envoys to fritter away the rest of the summer. 8. The result of this was (*quō factum est*) that Caesar was not aware how many

(*quot*) losses had been sustained. 9. It was announced that because it happened that the equinox was at hand, the army must be taken back at one trip. 10. He gave orders that they were not to harm the king. 11. They send messengers (stating) that their lands are being laid waste. 12. It was said (*dīcō*) that (18, vii.) four kings governed these states.

CONTINUOUS PROSE AND IDIOMATIC TRANSLATION.

201. Passages of continuous narrative set for translation into Latin prose may conveniently be arranged in three divisions of increasing complexity : *first*, those passages in which little more is required than in the detached sentences heretofore given for translation, namely proper choice of words, correct inflection and observance of the rules of Latin syntax ; *second*, those passages where, in addition, the phraseology requires alteration, either to adapt the passage to Latin idiom or to avoid difficulties arising from a limited vocabulary ; and *third*, those passages in which some alteration is necessary or desirable not merely in phraseology but also in the structure or relation of sentences.

N.B.—The same division holds of passages to be translated from Latin into English, and much of what follows may, with the necessary changes, be applied to the idiomatic translation of Latin into English.

The three following sections discuss the chief points to be observed in each of these divisions.

CONNECTION OF THOUGHT.

202. Even in the simplest kind of narrative passage it will not do to treat the component sentences as so many independent units. Latin differs very markedly from English in regard to the connection of sentences. If a modern book or newspaper be compared with such an author as Caesar, it will be found that in narrative English it is the exception rather than the rule to give formal expression to the connection of thought, while in narrative Latin the reverse holds true.

Hence the general rule that at the beginning of each new sentence in Latin care should be taken to make plain the connection in thought with the preceding words.

(*a*) The usual means of expressing the connection between sentences are as follows:

i. Particles such as *atque, and moreover ; neque, and not ; at, but ; autem, however ; vērō, but indeed ; itaque, therefore ; nam* or *enim, for.*

ii. Pronouns, especially the coordinating relative *quī* (section 172) and the demonstratives *hīc, is, ille, ipse* and *īdem* (sections 158-162).

iii. Words or phrases whose meaning suggests a reference to the preceding context, such as *interim, meanwhile ; ita, in this way ; tum, thereupon ; eō, to that place ; posterō diē, the next day ; eādem dē causā, for the same reason ; accēdit quod* or *ut, besides this.*

(*b*) Where the scene shifts and a new actor comes upon the stage, Latin is generally careful to mark the change of subject *early* in the sentence.

If the new subject has been mentioned in the preceding sentence, *quī, hīc, is* and (for emphatic contrast) *ille* are generally used ; if it has not been mentioned, a substantive is used, as, for instance, *Caesar, hostēs* or *nostrī.* In the latter case very often none of the connecting links mentioned above is used; apparently the contrast afforded by the change of subject is in such cases felt to be a sufficient mark of connection.

On the other hand, where the subject is not changed, it is seldom repeated, but is indicated in Latin merely by the personal ending of the main verb of the new sentence.

(*c*) It may be noticed here that Latin prefers as a connective *neque* (or *nec*) to *et* followed by *nōn ;* and similarly *nec quisquam, nec ūllus, nec umquam* are preferred to *et nēmō, et nūllus, et numquam.*

PHRASEOLOGY.

203. Before an English sentence can be turned into idiomatic Latin, it often requires remodelling and adaptation (in whole or part) because of differences in the form of expression preferred by each language. In our own language, as we know, the same thought may be expressed in many different ways, and of these some are sure to be more, some less, like the form of expression a Roman would choose. So it often happens that when at first it would seem impossible to turn an English sentence into Latin because it contains some words for which the student knows no Latin equivalent, the whole difficulty is easily solved by expressing the thought of the sentence in some other way. But again, even when the student does know a Latin equivalent for *each individual* word in an English sentence, he may yet fail to get a tolerable rendering, for the reason that Latin may put the *whole thought* into a form quite unlike the English.

To a certain extent differences of phraseology between Latin and English are matters of detail that the most complete vocabulary could not fully treat, but certain general rules may be given which have a very wide application. These rules are really illustrations of one great principle: that the genius of the Latin language is above all things *direct*, *definite* and *concrete*, like the Roman character itself, straightforward, business-like, practical and unimaginative.

Hence the general rule for narrative prose, first to see clearly what is the exact meaning of the English phrase, and then to express that meaning in the simplest and most direct manner. Some important special applications of this rule are as follows:—

(*a*) AVOID METAPHORICAL OR PICTURESQUE EXPRESSIONS.

Very little modern English prose is as simple and direct as Caesar's style; much even of our everyday language is in fact highly metaphorical. In narrative prose, the best plan is to avoid figurative language altogether ; translate the thoughts and not the words. So for example :

He took the field : **Ad bellum profectus est.**

He left no stone unturned : **Nihil praetermīsit.**

He turned a deaf ear to this advice : **Quod cōnsilium nōn probāvit.**

He sacrificed friendship on the altar of patriotism : **Amīcitiam reī pūblicae posthabuit.**

Where figurative language is used in Latin (as in Cicero's oratory and Livy's semi-poetical prose) we constantly find either that a simile is preferred to a metaphor or that the metaphor is quite different from the English one, and even then is apt to be toned down by *tamquam, quasi, quīdam*, etc.

(*b*) AVOID ABSTRACT FORMS OF EXPRESSION.

Latin has fewer abstract words than English, and those it does possess it uses much more sparingly than we do, many of them being found only in philosophical writings. The number of abstract words which can safely be ventured upon in narrative prose is very limited, such as *amīcitia, auctōritās, celeritās, māgnitūdō, studium.* Almost invariably the English abstract expression should be turned by a concrete Latin phrase ; as,

On the conclusion of this war : **Hōc bellō cōnfectō.**

On the receipt of this information : **Quod cum nūntiātum esset.**

They promised submission to his authority : **Ea quae imperāsset sē factūrōs pollicitī sunt.**

In Caesar's consulship : **Caesare cōnsule.**

His measures : **Ea quae faciēbat.**

In pursuance of his annual custom : **Ut quotannīs cōnsuēverat.**

So the indirect question furnishes an equivalent for many abstract words (see section 37), and the vague word *rēs* often affords a convenient translation for various kinds of *circumstances, situations, measures*, etc.

Similarly Latin is very deficient in class names which express the doer of an action, such as *fugitive, defender, combatant, discoverer, believer.* These can generally be expressed by the verb ; e.g., *fugientēs* or *quī fugiēbant.*

(*c*) AVOID THE PERSONIFICATION OF INANIMATE THINGS OR OF QUALITIES.

Latin seldom represents anything but a living thing as the doer of an action, while English so constantly makes inanimate objects or abstract nouns the subject of a verb of action that we scarcely notice the personification.

Caesar's sudden approach frightened them into submission: **Caesaris repentīnō adventū commōtī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mittunt.**

The darkness of the night hid us from the enemy: **Propter tenebrās, hostēs nostrōs nōn cōnspicātī sunt.**

Speed alone will save us: **Ūna est in celeritāte posita salūs.**

His dying words: **Ējus morientis verba.**

(*d*) THE CHIEF WEIGHT OF THE SENTENCE FALLS IN LATIN UPON THE VERB.

In English there is a tendency to make the noun the significant word. So for English phrases consisting of some unemphatic verb, such as *make*, *have*, *take*, *do*, etc., followed by a verbal noun which is the really significant word, Latin often has a verb which contains the meaning of the English noun within itself; as,

He made reply to me: **Mihi respondit.**

He has no hesitation: **Nōn dubitat.**

He took his departure: **Discessit.**

We have both the power and the daring to cross: **Et possumus et audēmus trānsīre.**

This verb is often accompanied by a cognate accusative (see section 72) in the form of a neuter pronoun or adjective; as,

They can do no harm to us: **Nihil nōbīs nocēre possunt.**

He made many promises: **Multa pollicitus est.**

They make the same attempt: **Idem cōnantur.**

This idiom is especially noticeable in the impersonal use of the passive voice of intransitive verbs (section 56); as,

Mention has been made of him: **Dē illō dictum est.**

There must be no delay: **Nōn cunctandum est.** (Compare also section 37.)

(*e*) THE ACTIVE VOICE IS PREFERRED TO THE PASSIVE IN THE LEADING VERBS.

This is because of the desire to state exactly and naturally what takes place. But as Latin prefers to keep the same subject throughout a period, the verbs in the subordinate clauses and in participial phrases will often be passive while the main verb is, according to rule, in the active voice. Two important and frequent examples of the use of the passive are the ablative absolute construction, and the impersonal passive construction.

(*f*) THE PRECISE MEANING OF BOTH ENGLISH AND LATIN WORDS MUST BE CLOSELY WATCHED.

It will seldom happen that a word in one language corresponds exactly in all its uses to any one word in the other.

i. For instance, in English very many transitive verbs may be used intransitively also, whereas in Latin this very seldom occurs. In such cases the intransitive use is expressed sometimes by the passive voice, sometimes by the active with the reflexive pronoun, and sometimes by a quite different verb; as,

move	(transitive), **movēre**;	(intransitive), **movērī**.
surrender	(transitive), **dēdere**;	(intransitive), **sē dēdere**.
increase	(transitive), **augēre**;	(intransitive), **crēscere** or **augērī**.

ii. Again, many English words have widely different meanings, according to the context; as,

weight (burden), **onus**; (influence), **auctōritās**.
Rome (the city), **Rōma**; (the nation), **populus Rōmānus**.
field (piece of land), **ager**; (battle), **aciēs** or **proelium**.
ask (make a request), **petō**; (put a question), **quaerō**.
command (give an order), **imperō**; (have authority over), **praesum**.

iii. An entirely different source of mistakes is the fact that many English words derived from Latin originals have in the course of time taken on a very different meaning. For instance:

obtineō = *hold, possess;* *obtain* = **cōnsequor, adipīscor**.
occupō = *seize;* *occupy* = **obtinēo**.
officium = *duty;* *office* = **magistrātus**.
recipiō = *recover, regain;* *receive* = **accipiō**.
sēcūrus = *free from anxiety;* *secure* = **tūtus**.

(*g*) OMIT UNNECESSARY AND MERELY ORNAMENTAL EPITHETS.

Some English writers are fond of heightening the effect by adding words or phrases that may adorn the style but add nothing to the meaning. These may safely be omitted ; as, *The enemy was awaiting the approach of our* (*gallant*) *leader. They aimed their weapons particularly at the horses* (*of the enemy's cavalry*).

(*h*) BE PRECISE IN THE USE OF THE TENSES.

Attention has already been called to the precision shown in the Latin use of the tenses, especially i. in subordinate clauses referring to an action prior to that of the main verb (sections 178, ii. and 187, *b*, i.) ; ii. in the tenses of the participle (section 41) ; iii. after verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, etc. (section 17). In one important respect only is Latin lest exact than English, namely, in the frequent use of primary sequence after secondary tenses (section 190, vi.).

STRUCTURE.

204. It may happen, however, that all the preceding rules about syntax, connection and phraseology have been carefully observed, and yet that the result is far from being good Latin prose. For it may be that the English passage is constructed in a way that is very unlike Latin usage.

Modern English narrative is apt to consist of a series of detached sentences, each comparatively simple in its structure, generally short, and containing very few verbs. Classical Latin narrative is more apt to group several of these crisp sentences into a longer and more complex sentence, making the verb which expresses the main idea the principal verb, and putting the others in various subordinate relations.

Again, even when English does have a long complex sentence, it is more loosely constructed than the Latin period (section 9). In the Latin period (as in the Latin short sentence) the main thought is, as a rule, not complete until the final words are given; the period is intended to be grasped as a whole; grammatically it may appear very involved, but the thoughts are marshalled in a perfectly logical order. But in the English long sentence (as often in the short sentence also) we seldom find the main thought left in suspense until the very end of the sentence; the final words are not the emphatic ones; the thought is intended to be grasped in detail.

Contrast the following passages:

Our men then marched back to camp. Not a man had been killed, and very few wounded. Yet they had expected a formidable campaign, for the enemy numbered four hundred and thirty thousand men. **Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trīgintā mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.**

In the elementary stages of the writing of continuous Latin prose, it is not necessary to study very closely the formation of the Latin period, which, after all, is by no means invariably employed by even the most careful Latin prose authors; the following suggestions, however, will be found of importance for even the beginner.[1]

(*a*) Arrange the various clauses of a sentence in the logical order of thought, which in narrative commonly means the order of time. Put all clauses or phrases expressing attendant circumstances before the main verb, and put last the clause on which the emphasis falls. This will generally be the principal clause, but see section 6, ii.

(*b*) Reduce the number of principal verbs by grouping short independent sentences that relate to a common topic into a complex sentence.

---

[1] On the other hand, it is of the utmost importance that the pupil in turning Latin into English should become accustomed to translating Latin periods and complex sentences into the simpler and looser structure characteristic of English, and especially should he familiarize himself, by practice, with the various ways suggested in sections 43 and 47 of translating participial clauses. Good examples for such practice may be found in Caesar, B. G., IV. 23, 6; 24, 1; 30, 1 and 2; 32, 4 and 5; V. 7, 6; 8, 1 and 2; 9, 1; and 15, 3 and 4.

(*c*) Within this complex sentence or period, avoid as far as possible changes of subject. The subject of the main verb should, if expressed at all (section 202, *b*), appear early in the sentence and be made, where possible, the subject of the dependent clauses also.

(*d*) Latin is very fond of inserting a subordinate clause in the middle of a clause on which it depends, but the loosely joined parenthesis should be carefully avoided.

(*e*) Even where there is no need for grouping short sentences into a period, it may often be convenient to readjust some of the clauses or phrases in the passage for translation, shifting them from one part of the sentence to another or even transferring them to the preceding or the following sentence. For instance, in the passage: *On receiving this news he led his forces against the enemy. His march, though rapid, was so conducted as to save the troops from all fatigue*, the translation is simplified by transferring the idea of *marching rapidly* to the preceding clause: **Quae cum audīvisset, cōpiās adversus hostēs quam celerrimē dūxit; ita tamen ut mīlitēs labōre et itinere nōn dēfatīgātī sint.** Similarly, instead of representing one action as the *result* of some preceding action it may be more convenient to represent the latter as the *cause* of the former.

205. Some miscellaneous differences of idiom also deserve notice.

(*a*) English often expresses emphasis by means of the verb *to be*, generally followed by the relative pronoun or adverb; as, *It was I who did it. Piso was the first to reach the camp.* Latin has nothing corresponding to this, but expresses emphasis by other means; as, **Ego fēcī. Prīmus ad castra pervēnit Pīsō.**

(*b*) Latin constantly tends to look upon an action as proceeding *from* a certain source or quarter, where in English it is considered as happening *in* that quarter; as, *He fought on horseback:* **Ex equō pūgnābat.** *They attack our troops on both flanks:* **Nostrōs ab utrōque latere aggrediuntur.** (See also section 127, v.)

(*c*) In Latin demonstrative and relative pronouns (especially *hīc*) referring to some previous noun or the substance of a previous clause are put in agreement with a noun, instead of in the objective genitive depending on it. English has frequently this same condensed form of expression; as, *Through fear of this circumstance* (or *through this fear*): **Hōc metū** (= *Hūjus reī metū*).

(*d*) In such expressions as *The shrewd Fabius*, *Your excellent father*, *So brave a man as you*, Latin uses an appositive with the superlative in agreement; as, **Fabius callidissimus imperātor,**

Pater tuus vir optimus, Tū vir fortissimus. When, however, such epithets have no bearing on the context, they should be omitted altogether (see section 203, *g*).

(*e*) *This great* is regularly in Latin **hīc tantus** not **hīc māgnus.**

(*f*) Latin frequently uses **et** or **-que** to join adjectives, where English omits the connective; so especially with **multī**; as, *Many great contests:* **Multae et māgnae contentiōnēs.**

(*g*) The Latin adjective or participle is frequently found where English would use a noun; as, *Our men:* **Nostrī.** *All their property:* **Omnia sua.** *Wise men, philosophers:* **Sapientēs.** *The retreating force:* **Fugientēs.**

(*h*) In many phrases the adjective is used in Latin where an adverb or adverbial clause would be found in English. Such cases are *primus, prior, medius, ultimus, invītus, imprūdēns, rārus, tōtus.* In all these cases the condition of what is expressed by the noun, not the manner of action expressed by the verb, is looked to; as, *They came unwillingly* (or *against their will*) *:* **Invītī vēnērunt.**

(*i*) Where in English a verbal or abstract noun is connected with another noun by the preposition *of*, in Latin this abstract noun is often represented by a perfect participle passive put in agreement with the Latin noun corresponding to the object of the preposition; as, *Before the founding of Rome:* **Ante Rōmam conditam.** *The news of the disaster:* **Nūntiāta clādēs.** (See also section 203, *b* and *d*.)

(*j*) Latin often uses the name of a tribe or people instead of the name of the country or city; as, *He marched through the territory of the Ligurians:* **Per Ligurēs iter fēcit.** *He came to Gortyna:* **Ad Gortyniōs vēnit.**

(*k*) In English a coordinating relative clause is often appended to the main clause of a sentence, containing an additional statement which might equally well have been expressed by an independent principal clause introduced by a conjunction (*who = and he*)*;* in Latin the coordinating relative should be placed only at the beginning of a new independent sentence; as, *Influenced by these events the Helvetians at once sent envoys, who threw themselves at Caesar's feet and in tears begged for peace:* **Hīs rēbus adductī, Helvētiī statim lēgātōs mittunt. Quī sē ad pedēs Caesarī prōjēcērunt flentēsque pācem petīvērunt.**

Other ways of translating such appended clauses into Latin are *(a)* by using coordinate principal clauses connected by a conjunction, or *(b)* by changing the main clause of the English sentence into a participial or subordinate clause, as; *He sends*

messengers to these kings, whom he orders to attack the naval camp: **Ad hōs rēgēs nūntiōs mittit, atque hīs imperat utī castra nāvālia oppūgnent.** *This fact was reported by scouts to Caesar, who sent in his legions and seized the town:* **Quā rē per explōrātōrēs nūntiātā, Caesar legiōnēs intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur.**

Ancient City Wall and Gate.
(The Porta Appia in the Aurelian Wall, Rome.)

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

[*For the principal parts of the verbs reference may be made to the Vocabulary to Caesar, page 101.*]

A

abandon, prōdō, ere.

ability, ingenium, ī, N.

able, be, possum, posse, potuī.

about (=*concerning*), dē, *with abl.;* (*with numerals*), circiter.

access, aditus, ūs, M.

accordance, in — with, prō, *with abl.*, or *abl. alone*.

account, on — of, propter, *with acc.*

accustomed, be, cōnsuēvī, isse (*perf. tense of* cōnsuēscō).

accustomed, become, consuēscō, ere.

acquit, absolvō, ere.

across, trāns, *with acc.*

added, be, accēdō, ere.

Aduatuci, Aduatucī, ōrum, M.

advance, *verb*, prōcēdō, ere ; prōgredior, ī.

advance, *noun*, adventus, ūs, M. ; **send in advance**, praemittō, ere.

advise, admoneō, ēre.

Aedui, Aeduī, ōrum, M.

after, *prep.*, post, *with acc. ; conj.*, postquam, cum ; *or use perfect participle.*

afraid, be, vereor, ērī ; (**of**, *express by acc.*).

against, in, contrā, *with acc.;* (*with* bellum gerō), cum, *with abl.*

ago, abhinc, *with acc.*

aid, auxilium, ī, N.; subsidium, ī, N. ; **bring aid to**, auxilium ferō, ferre, *with dat.*

alarm, permoveō, ēre ; commoveō, ēre.

all, omnis, e.

allegiance, officium, ī, N.

allow, patior, ī, passus sum.

allowed, be, licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal with dat.*

ally, socius, ī, M.

aloof, hold, absum, esse, āfuī.

already, jam.

also, he, *use* īdem.

although, etsī ; quamquam ; quamvīs ; *or by concessive relative.*

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, ī, M.

ambush, īnsidiae, ārum, F. *plur.*

among, inter, *with acc.*

ancestors, mājōrēs, um, M.

anchor, weigh, = *set sail.*

ancient, vetus, -eris.

and, et, -que, atque, ac.

announce, nūntiō, āre.

annoyed, be, graviter ferō, ferre.

another, alius, a, ud.

answer, give (*or* **make**) **answer**, respondeō, ēre.

any, ūllus, a, um ; *after* sī, *or* nē, quī (quis), qua, quod.

appearance, aspectus, ūs, M.

approach, *verb*, accēdō, ere ; appropinquō, āre, *with dat.*

approach, *noun*, adventus, ūs, M.

Ardennes, Arduenna, ae, F.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, M.

arise, coorior, īrī.

arms, arma, ōrum, N. *plur.*

army, exercitus, ūs, M.

around, circum, *with acc.*

arrival, adventus, ūs, M.

art of war, rēs mīlitāris, F.

as (=*since*), cum, *or use participle.*

as—as possible, quam, *with superl.*

as soon as, simul atque.

ascertain, cōgnōscō, ere.

ashamed, be, pudet, *impersonal.*

ask* (*of making a request*), petō, ere; rogō, āre.

ask* (*of asking a question*), quaerō, ere; rogō, āre.

ask for, petō, ere, *with acc.*

assemble (*intransitive*), conveniō, īre.

assembly, concilium, ī, N.

assist, subveniō, īre, *with dat.*; juvō, āre, *with acc.*

assistance, auxilium, ī, N.

assistance, go to—of, auxiliō eō, *with dat.*

at, *of time when, use abl.; of place where, use locative, or* in *and abl.; after* conjiciō, in, *with acc.; in phrase throw one's self at feet,* ad, *with acc.*

at once, statim, *adv.*

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, F. *plur.*

attack, *verb*, (*of places*), oppūgnō, āre; (*of men*), aggredior, ī; adorior, īrī; impetum facere in, *with acc.*

attack, *noun*, impetus, ūs, M.

attempt, make an, cōnor, ārī.

away, take, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum.

B

baggage, impedīmenta, ōrum, N. *plur.*

bank, rīpa, ae, F.

battle, proelium, ī, N.; pūgna, ae, F.

be, sum, esse, fuī; *to express distance, use* absum, abesse.

bear, ferō, ferre.

because, quod.

because of, propter, *with acc.*

before, *prep.* (*of time and place*), ante, *with acc.*

before, *adv.*, anteā.

before, *conj.*, antequam, priusquam.

beg, ōrō, āre.

begin, incipiō, ere; *for the perfect tenses, use* coepī, isse, coeptus sum.

begin battle, proelium committō, ere.

beginning, *use* prīmus.

behold, videō, ēre; cōnspicor, ārī.

Belgians, Belgae, ārum, M. *plur.*

believe, crēdō, ere, *with dat.*

beseech, ōrō, āre; obsecrō, āre.

best, optimus, a, um.

betake, recipiō, ere.

betake one's self to flight, sē fugae mandāre.

better, melior, ius.

better, it is, praestat, āre, *impersonal.*

betray, prōdō, ere.

beyond, trāns, *with acc.*

Bibracte, Bibracte, is, N.

boast of, glōrior, ārī, *with abl.*

boat, nāvis, is, F.

body (*of cavalry*), multitūdō, -dinis), F.

border (=*beginning, edge*), initium, ī, N.; **borders** (=*territories*), fīnēs, ium, M.

both . . . and, et . . . et.

both, *use* uterque, utraque, utrumque, =*each.*

brave, fortis, e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, virtūs, tūtis, F.; fortitūdō, -dinis, F.

break down, rescindō, ere.

break out, coorior, īrī.

bridge, pōns, pontis, M.

bring, ferō, ferre.

---

* The person who is asked is with *rogō* in the acc., with *petō* in the abl. with *ab*, with *quaerō* in the abl. with *ex* or *ab*.

bring (*followed by* **across**), trādūcō, ere; trānsportō, āre.
bring over, trādūcō, ere.
bring word, nūntiō, āre.
Britain, Britannia, ae, F.
Briton, Britannus, ī, M.
build, aedificō, āre; faciō, ere.
burn, incendō, ere.
burn up, combūrō, ere.
but, *conj.*, sed.
but (=*who—not*), quīn.
by, ā, ab, *with abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, M.
call, appellō, āre.
camp, castra, ōrum, N. *plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.
capture, capiō, ere.
carelessness, indīligentia, ae, F.
carry down, dējiciō, ere.
carry on, gerō, ere.
case, be the, ita esse (=*be so*).
Casticus, Casticus, ī, M.
cattle, pecus, -oris, N.
cause, cūrō, āre, *with gerundive.*
caution, with, cautē; **with the greatest caution**, cautissimē.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, M. (*in sing.*); equitēs, um, M. (*in plur.*).
cavalry-man, eques, -itis, M.
cease, dēsistō, ere, *with abl.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
certain, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* quoddam.
chain, catēna, ae, F.
chance, cāsus, ūs, M.
charge, be in—of, praesum, esse, *with dat.*
charge, place (put) in—of, praeficiō, ere, *with acc. and dat.*
charioteer, essedārius, ī, M.
chief, chief man, prīnceps, -cipis, M.
chief power, rēgnum, ī, N.; imperium, ī, N.
circumstance, rēs, reī, F.
citizen, cīvis, is, M.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
clemency, clēmentia, ae, F.
close, claudō, ere.
cohort, cohors, -hortis, F.
collect, cōgō, ere.
come, veniō, īre.
come up, accēdō, ere.
come up with, cōnsequor, ī, *with acc.*
come upon, occurrō, ere, *with dat.*
command, *verb*, (=*order*), imperō, āre, *with dat.*; (=*be in command*), praesum, esse, *with dat.*
command, *noun*, (=*military power*), imperium, ī, N.; (=*order given*), imperātum, ī, N.
command, be in, have—of, praesum, esse, *with dat.*
communication, hold, colloquor, ī.
compel, cōgō, ere.
complain, queror, ī.
complaint, make, queror, ī.
complete, cōnficiō, ere.
comrades, their, suī, ōrum, M. *plur.*
conceal, occultō, āre; cēlō, āre.
concern, object of, cūra, ae.
concerning, dē, *with abl.*
conclude (=*make*), faciō, ere.
confer, dēferō, -ferre; (**upon**, *express by dat.*).
conference, colloquium, ī, N.
confusion, throw into, perturbō, āre; **throw into great confusion**, māgnopere perturbō.
conquer, vincō, ere; superō, āre.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.
consulship, in the— of, *use* cōnsul *in the abl. absolute* (49).
consult welfare of, cōnsulō, ere, *with dat.*
consummate, summus, a, um.
continent, continēns, -entis, F.
corn, frūmentum, ī, N.

country (=*district*), loca, ōrum, N. *plur.*; regiō, ōnis, F.; (=*land*), ager, agrī, M.; fīnēs, ium, M. *plur.*; (=*state*), rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.; (=*native country*), patria, ae, F.; (=*rural districts*), rūs, rūris, N.

course, cursus, ūs, M.

coward, īgnāvus, ī, M.

Crassus, Crassus, ī, M.

cross, cross over, trānseō, īre.

crush, opprimō, ere.

custom, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F.; mōs, mōris, M.

cut off, interclūdō, ere.

D

danger, perīculum, ī, N.

dangerous, perīculōsus, a, um.

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

date, the—of, *use clause with* quandō (=*when*).

day, diēs, ēī, M.

day before, the, prīdiē, *adv.*

death, mors, mortis, F.

death, put to, interficiō, ere.

decide (=*form a resolve*), cōnstituō, ere; (=*form an opinion*), jūdicō, āre; (=*adjudicate*), dēcernō, ere.

declare (*with* bellum), indīcō, ere.

deep, altus, a, um.

defeat, repellō, ere; superō, āre.

defend, dēfendō, ere.

demand, imperō, āre; poscō, ere.

depart, discēdō, ere.

departure, discessus, ūs, M.; profectiō,-ōnis, F.; **take one's departure**, discēdō, ere; proficīscor, ī.

design, cōnsilium, ī, N.

despair, be in despair, dēspērō, āre; (**of**, dē, *with abl.*).

destination, reach, locum capiō.

destroy, rescindō, ere.

deter, dēterreō, ēre; impediō, īre.

determine, cōnstituō, ere.

devise, capiō, ere; ineō, īre.

die, morior, morī.

difficult, difficilis, e.

difficulty, with, vix, aegrē, *adv.*

direction, pars, partis, F.

directions, from all, undique, *adv.*; *or use* pars.

disaster, calamitās, -tātis, F.

discover, cōgnōscō, ere; reperiō, īre.

disembark, ē nāvibus ēgredior, ī.

dismay, permoveō, ēre.

dismiss, dīmittō, ere.

dispel, expellō, ere.

disperse, discēdō, ere.

disposition, animus, ī, M.

dispute, contrōversia, ae, F.

distant, be, absum, abesse.

distress, be in, labōrō, āre.

distribute, distribuō, ere; (**among**, *express by dat.*).

district, regiō, -ōnis, F.

distrust, diffīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *with dat.*

do, faciō, ere.

double, duplex, duplicis.

doubt, *verb*, dubitō, āre.

doubt, *noun*, dubitātiō, -ōnis, F.; **there is no doubt**, nōn est dubium.

draw (*with* gladius), dēstringō, ere.

draw near, =*approach*.

dread, vereor, ērī.

drive (=*urge on*), impellō, ere.

Druids, Druidēs, um, M. *plur.*

Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, M.

dwell, incolō, ere.

E

eagerly, cupidē.

eagerness, alacritās, -tātis, F.

eagle, aquila, ae, F.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis; **very easy**, perfacilis, e.

eat, vescor, ī (*with abl.*).

eight, octō.

embark, nāvēs cōnscendō, ere.

embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, F.

encamp, cōnsīdō, ere.

encourage, cohortor, ārī.

endure (=*tolerate*), patior, ī; (=*withstand*), perferō, -ferre.

enemy, hostis, is, M. (*usually in the plur.*).

engage in battle, proelium committō, ere.

engaged, occupātus, a, um.

engagement, proelium, ī, N.

enquiry, make, quaerō, ere.

enrol, cōnscrībō, ere.

envoy, lēgātus, ī, M.

especial, *use* praecipuē = *especially*.

even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem; **even if, even though**, etiam sī.

every, omnis, e; quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* quodque = *each*.

every one, omnēs, *plur.*; *or* quisque, *sing.*, =*each*.

everything, omnia; omnēs rēs.

exercise (=*show*), ūtor, ī, *with abl.*

exhibit, ūtor, ī, *with abl.*

exhort, hortor, ārī.

experience, ūsus, ūs, M.

extend, pertineō, ēre.

extremely, māximē (*or use the superl. degree*).

eyes, in the—of, *use the dat.*

F

farther, *adv.*, longius.

fate, fortūna, ae, F.

favorable, idōneus, a, um.

fear, *verb*, timeō, ēre; vereor, ērī.

fear, *noun*, timor, -ōris, M.; metus, ūs, M.

few, but few, paucī, ae, a; **a few**, nōnnūllī, ae, a; **very few**, perpaucī, ae, a.

field, ager, agrī, M.

fierce, *use* ācriter, =*fiercely*.

fight, pūgnō, āre.

fight a battle, proelium faciō, ere.

fighting, pūgna, ae, F.; *or use gerund of* pūgnō.

fill, fill up, compleō, ēre.

find, reperiō, īre; inveniō, īre.

find out, cōgnōscō, ere; comperiō, īre.

fire, īgnis, is, M.

fire, set—to, incendō, ere, *with acc.*

first, prīmus, a, um; **at first**, prīmō; (=*be the first to*) *use* prīmus.

five, quīnque.

fix (*with* diēs), dīcō, ere.

flank, latus, -eris, N.

flee, cōnfugiō, ere; fugiō, ere.

flesh, carō, carnis, F.

flight, fuga, ae, F.

flight, take to, sē fugae mandāre.

follow, sequor, ī.

follow up, persequor, ī.

following, posterus, a, um; īnsequēns, -entis.

follows, as, hīc, haec, hōc.

food, cibus, ī, M.

foot, pēs, pedis, M.; **on foot**, pedibus; (**at the foot of**), sub, *with abl.*

for (*of motion towards*), in, ad, *with acc.*; (=*with a view to*) ad.

forces, cōpiae, ārum, F. *plur.*

forest, silva, ae, F.

for ever, in perpetuum.

forget, oblīvīscor, ī, *with gen.*

form (*with* cōnsilium), capiō, ere.

former, prīstinus, a, um.

forsake, discēdō, ere, *with* ab *and abl.*

fortify, mūniō, īre.

forward, send, praemittō, ere.

four, quattuor.

fourth, quārtus, a, um; **three-fourths**, =*three parts*.

free (*verb*), līberō, āre.

free (*adj.*), līber, era, erum.

freedom, lībertās, -tātis, F.

friend, amīcus, ī, M.

friendship, amīcitia, ae, F.

frightful, horridus, a, um.

from, ā, ab (=*away from*), ex (=*out of*), *with abl.*

fugitives, fugientēs, = *those fleeing.*

furnish, order to, imperō, āre (*with dat. of persons ordered, acc. of that to be furnished*).

G

gain, potior, īrī, *with abl.*; adipīscor, ī, *with acc.*

gate, porta, ae, F.

gather, cōgō, ere.

Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, ae, F.

Gaul (*a native of Gaul*), Gallus, ī, M.

general, imperātor, -ōris, M.

Geneva, Genāva, ae, F.

German, *noun*, Germānus, ī, M.; *adj.*, Germānus, a, um.

give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.

go, eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum.

go forth, go out, exeō, īre.

going, be—on, fīō, fierī; geror, ī.

gone, be, discessī, isse.

grain, frūmentum, ī, N.

great, māgnus, a um; **how great**, quantus, a, um; **so great, as great**, tantus, a, um.

Greek, Graecus, ī, M.

grievance, dolor, -ōris, M.

ground (=*place*), locus, ī, M.; loca, ōrum, N.

ground, stand (hold) one's, cōnsistō, ere; sustineō, ēre.

ground, on the—that, quod, *conj.*

guard, praesidium, ī, N.

guilty, find, condemnō, āre.

H

halt, cōnsistō, ere.

hand, be at, adsum, -esse.

hands, at the—of, ā, ab, *with abl.*

happen, accidō, ere; fīō, fierī.

harass, lacessō, ere.

harbor, portus, ūs, M.

hard pressed, be, premor, ī.

have, habeō, ēre; (=*cause*), cūrō, āre.

he, is; sē.

head, be at the—of, praesum, esse, *with dat.*

hear, hear of, audiō, īre, *with acc.*

hearing, without a, indictā causā (*lit. the case being unpleaded*).

help, auxilium, ī, N.

Helvetian, *noun*, Helvētius, ī, M.; *adj.*, Helvētius, a, um.

hesitate, dubitō, āre.

hide, sē abdere; (**in**, in *with acc.*).

high, altus, a, um; (=*great*), māgnus, a, um.

higher (*of position*), superior, ius.

hill, collis, is, M.

himself, ipse, a, um; sē.

hinder, impediō, īre; prohibeō, ēre.

his, suus, a, um; ējus.

hold, teneō, ēre; (=*regard*), habeō, ēre.

hold out, sustineō, ēre.

home, domus, ūs, F.; **at home**, domī; *for motion towards use* domum *or* domōs.

hope, *verb*, spērō, āre; (**for**, *express by acc.*).

hope, *noun*, spēs, speī, F.

horseman, eques, -itis, M.

hostage, obses, -sidis, M.

how much, quantum.

however, quamvīs.

hunger, famēs, is, F.

hurl, conjiciō, ere; (**at**, in *with acc.*).

I

if (=*in case that*), sī; (=*whether*), num; **as if**, quasi, velut.

imagine, putō, āre.

immediately, statim.

impossible, be, *use* possum.

impress, commoveō, ēre.

in, in, *with abl.*; (=*into*), in, *with acc.*

incensed, be—at, exārdēscō, ere, *with abl.*

indulge, indulgeō, ēre, *with dat.*

indulgence, show, indulgeō, ēre.

inevitably, *use* necesse est.

inexperienced, imperītus, a, um.

inflict (*of punishment*), sūmō, ere; (**upon**, dē, *with abl.*); (of *injury*), īnferō, ferre; (**upon**, *express by dat.*).

influence, *verb*, addūcō, ere; permoveō, ēre; impellō, ere.

influence, *noun*, auctōritās, -tātis, F.

inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, ere; (**of**, dē, *with abl.*).

inhabit, incolō, ere.

injure, noceō, ēre, *with dat.*

injury, injūria, ae, F.

inquire, quaerō, ere; rogō, āre.

instruct, praecipiō, ere, *with dat.*; jubeō, ēre, *with acc.*

insult, contumēlia, ae, F.

insultingly, īnsolenter.

intend, *use future partic. in* -ūrus *with* sum.

intercept, intercipiō, ere.

interest, be of, interest; rēfert.

into, in, *with acc.*

island, īnsula, ae, F.

Italy, Ītalia, ae, F.

it, its, *use* is.

J

javelin, pīlum, ī, N.; tēlum, ī, N.

join battle, proelium committō.

judge, jūdicō, āre; arbitror, ārī.

K

keep from, prohibeō, ēre, *with infin., or with* ab *and abl.*

kill, interficiō, ere; occīdō, ere.

know, sciō, īre.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī, M.

lack, careō, ēre, *with abl.*

land (=*country*), ager, agrī, M.; fīnēs, ium, M.; (*opposed to water*), terra, ae, F.

land, on, pedester, tris, tre, *adj.*

land, *verb*, (nāvī) ēgredior, ī.

large, māgnus, a, um; **how large**, quantus, a, um; **so large, such a large**, tantus, a, um.

later (=*after*), post, *adv.*

law, lēx, lēgis, F.

lay waste, vāstō, āre.

lead, dūcō, ere; (=*influence*), addūcō, ere.

lead across, trānsdūcō, ere, *often with two accusatives.*

lead back, redūcō, ere.

lead out, ēdūcō, ere.

leader, dux, ducis, M.

leap down, dēsiliō, īre.

learn, cōgnōscō, ere.

leave (=*leave behind*), relinquō, ere; (=*go away from*), discēdō, ere, *with* ab *and abl.*; (=*go out of*), ēgredior, ī, *with* ex *and abl.*

legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.

lend (*with* auxilium), ferō, ferre (=*bring*).

less, minus, *adv.*

lest, nē.

let slip, dīmittō, ere.

lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, M.

like, similis, e, *with dat.*

like, I should, velim.

likely, be—to, *use future participle in* -ūrus *with* sum.

live, vīvō, ere; (**on**, *express by abl.*).

load, onerō, āre.

long, as—as, dum, *conj.*

longer, any longer, diūtius.

low, humilis, e.

lower (*of situation*), īnferior, ius.

loyalty, fidēs, eī, F.

M

make, faciō, ere.

make war, bellum īnferō, īnferre; (**on**, *express by dat.*).

man, vir, virī, M.; homō, hominis, M.; (*=soldier*), mīles, -itis, M., *or use the possessive pronoun.*

many, multī, ae, a.

march, *verb*, iter faciō, ere.

march, *noun*, iter, itineris, N.

marching, iter, itineris, N.

Marius, Marius, ī, M.

Massilia, Massilia, ae, F.

matter, rēs, reī, F.

matter, no—how, quamvīs.

mean, volō, velle, *with dat. of reflexive pronoun.*

means (*=measures*), rēs.

means of approach, aditus, ūs, M.

means, by—of, per, *with acc.*

meet, occurrō, ere, *with dat.*

meet with, nancīscor, ī, *with acc.*

mention, commemorō, āre.

merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.

merit, virtūs, -tūtis, F.

messenger, nūntius, ī, M.

middle, *use* medius, a, um, *adj.*

midnight, media nox (noctis, F.).

mile, *=a thousand paces.*

mistaken, be, errō, āre.

mode, genus, -eris, N.

Mona, Mona, ae, F.

month, mēnsis, is, M.

more, plūs, amplius.

mount, ascendō, ere.

mountain, mōns, montis, M.

move, moveō, ēre.

much, *adv.*, multum; multō.

my, meus, a, um.

N

nearer, propius, *adv.*

nearest, proximus, a, um.

neighborhood, in the—of, ad, *prep. with acc.*

Nervii, Nerviī, ōrum, M. *plur.*

new, novus, a, um.

next, posterus, a, um; proximus, a, um.

night, nox, noctis, F.

nine, novem.

ninety, nōnāgintā.

no, nūllus, a, um, *or use* nōn *or* nihil.

no one, nēmō; *gen.*, nūllīus; *acc.*, nēminem; *abl.*, nūllō; **that no one**, nē quis.

not, nōn (*in final and imperative clauses*, nē); **and not**, neque (*or in final clauses*, nēve, neu).

now (*=by this time*), jam; (*=at this present time*), nunc.

number, numerus, ī, M., *or use clause with* quot*=how many.*

number, great *or* **large**, multitūdō, -dinis, F.; māgnus numerus, ī, M. (*use only in sing.*).

numerous, crēber, bra, brum; multī, ae, a.

O

obey, pāreō, ēre, *with dat.*; obtemperō, āre, *with dat.*

object, with the—of, causā, *with gen.*

object, raise objections, recūsō, āre, *with* quōminus *and subjunctive.*

observe, videō, ēre.

occur, fīō, fierī.

of (*=about*), dē, *with abl.*; with verbs of asking see fn. page 310.

offer, prōpōnō, ere.

officer, lēgātus, ī, M.

old, vetus, -eris; (*so many years*) **old**, nātus, a, um.

on (*of place where*), in *with abl.*; (*of time when*), *use abl. only*; (*of making attack on*), in *with acc.*; (*of direction*), ab *or* ex *with abl.*; (*=concerning*), dē, *with abl.*

once, at, statim, *adv.*

one another, inter sē.

onset, impetus, ūs, M.

open, patefaciō, ere; *passive*, patefīō, -fierī.

opinion, sententia, ae, F.

opinion, be of the, exīstimō, āre.

opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, F.; facultās, -tātis, F.; potestās, -tātis, F.

opportunity, give, facultātem dare, *or* potestātem facere.

oppose (*=resist*), repūgnō, āre; resistō, ere, *with dat.*

oppose (*=set in opposition*), oppōnō, ere.

or, aut; (*in questions*), an; **or not** (*in questions*), annōn (*direct*), necne (*indirect*).

Orcynia, Orcynia, ae, F.

order, jubeō, ēre, *with acc.*; imperō, āre, *with dat.*

orders, receive, jubeor, ērī.

order, in—that, ut; (*with negative*), nē.

order, in—to, ut, causā, ad.

orders, give, imperō, āre.

orders, without his, injussū suō.

other, another, alius, a, ud.

other, the (*of two*), alter, era, erum; (*=the remaining*), reliquus, a, um.

others, the, reliquī, ae, a; cēterī, ae, a.

ought, *use gerundive passive with* sum; *or* dēbeō, ēre; oportet, ēre.

our, noster, tra, trum.

over (*of bridges over rivers*), in, *with abl.*

overwhelm, opprimō, ere.

P

pace, passus, ūs, M.

panic, timor, -ōris, M.

panic, throw into a, perterreō, ēre.

pardon, īgnōscō, ere, *with dat.*

part, pars, partis, F.

participate in, intersum, -esse, *with dat.*

pass the winter, hiemō, āre.

passage, iter, itineris, N.

pay, pendō, ere.

peace, pāx, pācis, F.

people (*=community*), populus, ī, M.; (*=persons*), hominēs, um, M.

perceive, cōnspiciō, ere; intellegō, ere.

peril, perīculum, ī, N.

permit, patior, ī.

person (*=a man*), *often untranslated.*

persuade, persuādeō, ēre, *with dat.*

pity, misereor, ērī, *with gen.*

place, *noun*, locus, ī, M. *sing.*; loca, ōrum, N. *plur.*

place, in that, ibi, *adv.*

plan, cōnsilium, ī, N.

plunder, praeda, ae, F.

point out, doceō, ēre; ostendō, ere.

point, be on the—of, *use fut. part. in* -ūrus *with* sum.

Pompey, Pompēius, ī, M.

port, portus, ūs, M.

portion, pars, partis, F.

position, locus, ī, M.; *or use clause with* ubi *or* quō in locō.

position, keep one's, cōnsistō, ere.

position, take up a, cōnsīdō, ere.

possession, gain—of, potior, īrī, *with abl.*

possession, take—of, occupō, āre, *with acc.*

possibility, potestās, -tātis, F.

power, potestās, -tātis, F.

power, sovereign, supreme, rēgnum, ī, N.; imperium, ī, N.

power, have, possum, posse.

powerful be, possum, posse.

praise, *verb*, laudō, āre.

praise, *noun*, laus, laudis, F.

prefer (*with nouns*), antepōnō, ere; (*with the infinitive*), mālō, mālle.

prepare, parō, āre.

preparations, make, comparō, āre.
present, this, hīc, haec, hōc.
press, press hard, urgeō, ēre ; premō, ere.
press forward, īnstō, āre.
prevent, prohibeō, ēre.
previous, superior, ius.
prisoner, captīvus, ī, M.
proceed, prōgredior, ī ; prōcēdō, ere.
proceedings, =*things*.
procure, parō, āre ; comparō, āre.
project, form a, cōnsilium capiō *or* ineō.
promise, make a promise, polliceor, ērī.
property, their, sua, ōrum, N.
protection, praesidium, ī, N.
prove, probō, āre.
provided that, dum.
province, prōvincia, ae, F.
provisions, commeātus, ūs, M. (*use the singular*).
provoke to battle, proeliō (*abl.*) lacessō, ere.
punishment, supplicium, ī, N.
purpose, for the—of, causā, *with gen. preceding*.
pursue, prōsequor, ī ; cōnsequor, ī ; sequor, ī.
put, collocō, āre ; pōnō, ere.
put to death, interficiō, ere.

Q

quickly, celeriter.
quickness, celeritās, -tātis, F.

R

rampart, vāllum, ī, N.
rashness, temeritās, -tātis, F.
rate, at any, certē.
rather, potius, magis.
reach, perveniō, īre, *with* ad *or* in *and acc.*
ready, parātus, a, um ; (**for** or **to**, ad, *with acc.*).
ready, make, comparō, āre.
ready, get, parō, āre.
rear, novissimum agmen (agminis, N.) ; **in the rear**, ā tergō.
reason, causa, ae, F. ; *or use clause with* cūr *or* quamobrem.
receive, accipiō, ere.
receive orders=*be ordered.*
recent, recēns, -entis.
recover (=*win back*), reciperō, āre; (=*regain courage*), sē recipere.
reinforcements, subsidium, ī, N.
relying on, frētus, a, um, *with abl.*
remain, remaneō, ēre ; maneō, ēre.
remember, meminī, isse (*imperative*, mementō, -tōte) ; reminīscor, ī.
remind, commonefaciō, ere.
remotest, ultimus, a, um.
renew, renovō, āre.
repair, reficiō, ere.
reply, respondeō, ēre.
report, bring report, nūntiō, āre ; renūntiō, āre.
reprove, reprehendō, ere.
require, imperō, āre, *with acc. and dat.*
resist, resistō, ere, *with dat.*
resources, opēs, opum, F. *plur.*
rest, *use* reliquus, a, um, *adj.*
result, be the result, fīō, fierī.
retainer, cliēns, -entis, M.
retire, sē recipere ; sē cōnferre.
retreat, pedem referō (-ferre) ; sē recipere.
return, *verb*, revertor, ī, -vertī ; redeō, -īre.
return, returning, *noun*, reditus, ūs, M. ; *or use clause with verb.*
revolt, dēficiō, ere.
reward, praemium, ī, N.
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, M.
Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, M.
right, dexter, tra, trum.
river, flūmen, -minis, N.
road, via, ae, F. ; iter, itineris, N.
roam about, vagor, ārī.

Roman, *noun*, Rōmānus, ī, M.; *adj.*, Rōmānus, a, um.

Rome, Rōma, ae, F.; **at Rome**, Rōmae.

rout, fuga, ae, F.

rule, imperium, ī, N.

rush out, sē ējicere; (**of**, ex *with abl.*).

S

Sabis, Sabis, is, M.

safe, tūtus, a, um.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.; **in safety**, *use* incolumis, e, *adj.*, =*safe.*

sail, nāvigō, āre; (**for**, in *with acc.*).

same, īdem, eadem, idem.

say, dīcō, ere; *if followed by negative, use* negō, āre, =*deny.*

scarcely, vix.

scatter, dispergō, ere.

scarcity, inopia, ae, F.

scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M.

search for, quaerō, ere, *with acc.*

secretly, clam.

see, videō, ēre.

seek, petō, ere.

seize (=*take possession of*), occupō, āre; (=*take prisoner*), comprehendō, ere.

senate, senātus, ūs, M.

send, mittō, ere.

send back, remittō, ere.

send forward, send in advance, praemittō, ere.

Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, M. *plur.*

seriously, graviter.

service, officium, ī, N.; **be of service**, ūsuī esse.

set fire to, incendō, ere, *with acc.*

set out, proficīscor, ī.

set sail, nāvēs solvō, ere, =*loose the ships.*

settle (=*decide*), cōnstituō, ere.

several, complūrēs, a.

severe, gravis, e.

ship, nāvis, is, F.

shore, lītus, -oris, N.

short, brevis, e; **in a short time**, brevī.

shortly, brevī.

should (=*ought*), *use gerundive with* sum; *for other values see* section 144.

side, latus, -eris, N.; pars, partis, F.; **from all sides**, undique, *adv.*

side, on this—of, cis *or* citrā, *prep. with acc.*

side, on the other—of, trāns, *prep. with acc.*

sight, cōnspectus, ūs, M.; **come in sight**, in cōnspectum veniō.

signal, sīgnum, ī, N.

silent, be *or* **keep**, taceō, ēre.

since, cum.

six hundred, sescentī, ae, a.

sixty, sexāgintā.

size, māgnitūdō, -dinis, F.; *or use clause with* quantus, a, um.

slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, F.

slay, interficiō, ere; occīdō, ere.

slinger, funditor, -ōris, M.

slip, let, dīmittō, ere.

so (=*to such an extent*), tam, ita, adeō.

soldier, mīles, -itis, M.

some (=*some or other*), aliquis (aliquī), -qua, -quid *or* -quod; (=*a few*), nōnnūllī, ae, a.

some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.

some one, aliquis.

some day, aliquandō.

soon, mox, brevī; **as soon as**, simul atque.

sorry, be, paenitet, *impersonal.*

sovereign power, imperium, ī, N.; rēgnum, ī, N.

spare, parcō, ere, *with dat.*

speak, dīcō, ere.

special, show—indulgence, = *indulge specially.*

specially, praecipuē.

spite, in—of, *use* quamquam (=*although*).

spring, vēr, vēris, N.

spy, speculātor, -ōris, M.

stain, īnficiō, ere.

start, ēgredior, ī; proficīscor, ī.

state, *verb*, dīcō, ere.

state, *noun*, cīvitās, -tātis, F.; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.

stay, moror, ārī.

still, tamen.

stone, lapis, -idis, M.

storm, *verb*, expūgnō, āre.

storm, *noun*, tempestās, -tātis, F.

storm, take by, expūgnō, āre.

strength, *use clause with* quot.

strengthen, firmō, āre; mūniō, īre.

strive, contendō, ere; nītor, ī.

successfully, bene; fēlīciter.

successive, continuus, a, um.

such (=**so great**), **such a large**, tantus, a, um.

sudden, repentīnus, a, um.

suddenly, subitō.

sue for, petō, ere, *with acc.*

suffer (=*receive*), accipiō, ere; (=*allow*, *endure*), patior, ī.

suitable, idōneus, a, um.

summer, aestās, -tātis, F.

summon (*of several persons*), convocō, āre; (*of one person*), vocō, āre.

supplies, commeātus, ūs, M. (*use the singular*).

suppose, arbitror, ārī; putō, āre.

supreme power, rēgnum, ī, N.; imperium, ī, N.

surrender, *transitive*, dēdō, ere; *intransitive*, sē dēdere.

surround (=*get round*), circumveniō, īre; (=*put round*), circumdō, -dare.

suspect, suspicor, ārī.

suspected, become, in suspīciōnem veniō.

swarm around, circumfundor, ī.

sway, diciō, ōnis, F.

swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, F.

sword, gladius, ī, M.

T

take, capiō, ere.

take away, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum.

take up a position, cōnsīdō, ere.

taught, be, discō, ere=*learn.*

tax, tribūtum, ī, N.

teach, *see be taught.*

tell, dīcō, ere, *with dat. of person.*

tempest, tempestās, -tātis, F.

tenth, decimus, a, um.

terms, condiciō, -ōnis, F. (*use the singular*).

terrify, terreō, ēre.

territory, ager, agrī, M.; fīnēs, -ium, M. *plur.*

Thames, Tamesis, is, M.; (*acc.* Tamesim).

than, quam, *or use abl.*

that, *pronoun*, is, ea, id; *emphatic*, ille, a, ud.

that, *conj.*, *with noun clauses untranslated; with clauses of purpose*, ut, nē; *with clauses of result*, ut; (=*because*), quod.

their, suus, a, um; *or* eōrum.

there (=*in that place*), ibi; (=*to that place*), eō; (*as introductory adverb*), *untranslated.*

they, eī, eae, ea; sē.

think, exīstimō, āre; arbitror, ārī.

this, hīc, haec, hōc; *or often the relative pronoun*, section 172.

though, =*although.*

thousand, mīlle; *plur.*, mīlia, ium, N.

three, trēs, tria.

three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.

through, per, *with acc.*

throw, conjiciō, ere.

throw one's self, sē prōjicere.

thus, itaque; *in Exercise 14, 4 use* hōc.

time, tempus, -oris, N.

to, ad, *with acc.;* in, *with acc.*

to-morrow, crās, *adv.*

top, *use* summus, a, um, *adj.*

towards, ad, *with acc.*
town, oppidum, ī, N.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, M.
treachery, perfidia, ae, F.
trench, fossa, ae, F.
tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, F.
tribune, tribūnus, ī, M.
tributary, vectīgālis, e.
trick, artificium, ī, N.
troops, mīlitēs, um, M.; cōpiae, ārum, F.
trust, cōnfīdō, ere, -fīsus sum, *with dat.*
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.
two hundred, ducentī, ae, a.

U

unable, be, *use* possum.
under, sub, *with abl.*
undertake, suscipiō, ere.
unfriendly, inimīcus, a, um.
unless, nisi.
until, *conj.*, dum, quoad.
unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle.
urge, hortor, ārī.
use, ūtor, ī, *with abl.*
useless, inūtilis, e; (**for**, ad *with acc.*).
usual, his, *use* suus, a, um.
utmost, summus, a, um.

V

valiantly, fortiter.
valid, perfectly, jūstissimus, a, um.
valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
value, of great, māgnī.
vanish, discēdō, ere.
vanquish, vincō, ere; superō, āre.
vehemence, vīs, F.
vengeance, supplicium, ī, N.
very (*as adjective*), ipse.
Vesontio, Vesontiō, ōnis, F.
vessel, nāvis, is, F.
victorious, victor, -ōris, M.
victory, victōria, ae, F.
village, vīcus, ī, M.

W

wage, gerō, ere.
wait, moror, ārī; (*with* sī), exspectō, āre.
wait for, exspectō, āre, *with acc.*
wall (*of town*), mūrus, ī, M.; (*of camp*), vāllum, ī, N.
wander, vagor, ārī.
war, bellum, ī, N.
warn, moneō, ēre.
waste (*=lose*), dīmittō, ere.
waste, lay, vāstō, āre; populor, ārī.
water, aqua, ae, F.
wave, fluctus, ūs, M.
weapon, tēlum, ī, N.
weary, dēfatīgō, āre.
weather, tempestās, -tātis, F.
weigh anchor, nāvēs solvō, ere, *=loose the ships.*
welfare, consult—of, cōnsulō, ere, *with dat.*
well known, nōtus, a, um.
west, sōlis occāsus, ūs, M.
what, quis, quae, quid.
whatever, *pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
whatever, *adv.* (*=at all*), omnīnō.
when (*relative*), ubi, cum; (*interrogative*), quandō.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum.
whereas, cum.
whether, num; **whether . . . or**, utrum . . . an; sīve . . . sīve.
which (*relative*), quī, quae, quod.
which (*of two*), uter, tra, trum.
while, dum; *or use pres. part.*
who (*relative*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quae, quid.
wholly, omnīnō.
why, cūr; quārē.
wide, lātus, a, um.

widely, lātē.

wife, conjūnx, -jugis, F.

will, against the, *use* invītus, a, um, *adj.* (=*unwilling*).

willing, be, volō, velle.

win, vincō, ere.

wing, cornū, ūs, N.

winter, pass (spend) the winter, hiemō, āre.

winter quarters, hīberna, ōrum, N. *plur.*

wish, volō, velle.

with, cum, *with abl.*; *or use abl. alone*; (=*among*), apud, *with acc.*

withdraw, withdraw one's self, sē recipere; discēdō, ere; (*if from a rampart*), dēcēdō, ere.

within (*of place*), intrā, *prep. with acc.*

within (*of time*), *use abl.*

without, sine, *with abl.*

withstand, sustineō, ēre.

woad, vitrum, ī, N.

wood, silva, ae, F.

wooded, silvestris, e.

word, bring, nūntiō, āre.

work, opus, -eris, N.

worthy, dīgnus, a, um, *with abl.*

would, *for the different values see* section 137.

wound, vulnus, -eris, N.

wrong, injūria, ae, F.; **wrongs done to . . . by . . .**, *use objective and subjective genitives.*

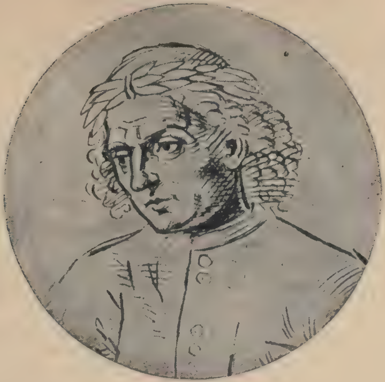
Y

year, annus, ī, M.

yesterday, herī.

your, tuus, a, um; vester, tra, trum.

War-ship.



Virgil.

INTRODUCTION TO VIRGIL'S AENEID.

I. THE STORY OF TROY.

In those olden days of Greece, when history had not yet begun and when as yet the gods mingled freely with mankind, appearing often upon earth and sometimes even marrying some favored mortal, there was a great city called Troy in the extreme north-western corner of Asia Minor, at the foot of Mount Ida. This was inhabited by a people akin to the Phrygians of Asia Minor, under the rule of a family of kings descended from Teucer. It was in the reign of the seventh king, Priam, that ruin fell upon the kingdom of Troy. He lived with Hecuba, his wife, in great splendor, and his many sons and daughters were growing up around him, until at the time of the birth of one of them, afterwards known as Paris, his mother dreamed that it was a firebrand that was born, which should destroy the city. So the child was cast forth on the slopes of Mount Ida and was there found and reared by a shepherd. When he grew up he was very beautiful, though rather effeminate, and was at last recognized and reinstated in his rights as the king's son.

But before this last event, a very notable thing had happened. At a certain wedding feast, at which most of the gods and goddesses were present, one who had not been invited, the goddess of Discord, avenged the slight by sending a golden apple inscribed "To the Fairest." Three goddesses claimed it, Juno, Minerva and Venus. The decision was referred to Paris, then a shepherd on Mount Ida. To win his verdict, Juno promised him power, Minerva wisdom, and Venus the fairest woman in Greece as his wife. Paris awarded the apple to Venus and not long after went to Greece. There he fell in love with the most beautiful woman of those days, Helen, the wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta. Her beauty had caused many princes to sue for her hand in marriage, and before a choice was made they had all sworn to avenge any wrong that might ever be done to her. So now when Paris induced her to flee with him to Troy, Menelaus had no difficulty in getting a large number of kings with their warriors to assist him in recovering Helen and punishing Paris.

Under the leadership of Agamemnon, brother of Menelaus and king of Mycenae, a fleet of nearly twelve hundred ships gathered at Aulis to set sail against Troy. Here they were long detained by calms or contrary winds sent by the goddess Artemis, whom king Agamemnon had once displeased. The oracles declared that only by sacrificing Iphigenia, the maiden daughter of the king, to Artemis, could the Greeks obtain favoring winds, and reluctantly at length Agamemnon sent for his daughter. Now at last the great host could set sail from Greece. The most famous among the Greeks, besides Agamemnon and Menelaus, were Achilles, the grandest warrior of the age, Ulysses who, while a great warrior, was specially noted for his shrewdness, and Diomedes and Ajax.

For nine long years the siege went on. Many cities in Asia sent forces to Troy to aid Priam, whose best warriors were his son Hector and Aeneas, the latter being the son of Venus and a Trojan prince, Anchises. The Greeks did not surround the city, but encamped on the shore near their ships, and many battles took place on the plain before Troy. In these nine years the Greeks succeeded in driving the Trojans within the walls and in gaining the surrounding towns.

In the tenth year a notable quarrel arose between Agamemnon and Achilles, and for a time, while Achilles held aloof from fighting, the Trojans had the better of it. Emboldened by success they fought their way to the Grecian fleet drawn up on the shore, and had well-nigh set the ships on fire when Patroclus, the bosom friend of Achilles, begged him, if he would not fight himself, at least to lend his armor and his warriors to repel the enemy. Achilles consented, and Patroclus, driving back the Trojans, saved the ships but was himself slain by Hector and stripped of Achilles' armor. Impelled by rage and grief, Achilles now returned to the battle to avenge the death of his friend. At his approach the Trojans, with the one exception of Hector, fled back to their walls; and him Achilles soon slew. Then tying Hector's body by the feet to his chariot he dragged him to the Grecian camp. It was not long, however, before Achilles himself was slain by Paris, and then, in obedience to the oracles, his son Pyrrhus (or Neoptolemus) was brought to the scene of war.

But when nothing seemed to bring them success, the Greeks tried stratagem, and pretended to sail away homewards, leaving a huge wooden horse as an offering to Minerva. This the Trojans drew, rejoicing, within their walls, but within it were concealed many of the bravest Greeks, who issued from the horse by night, seized the gates and, aided by the other Greeks, who had returned in the fleet, took the city and destroyed it.

In this war the gods took part, some, like Juno, Neptune, Pallas and Apollo, favoring the Greeks, others, like Venus and Mars, aiding Troy, though the latter were unable to prevail over the destiny decreed by fate for Priam and his city.

Aeneas escaped from the burning town and with some followers sailed away under the special protection of his mother, Venus, to found a new city. After many disappointments and wonderful adventures he landed in Italy, and from the settlement he planted there grew the great city of Rome, that in Virgil's day had become the mistress of the whole civilized world. The adventures and experiences of Aeneas form the subject of the poem called the Aeneid.

II.—LIFE OF VIRGIL.

Publius Vergilius* Maro was born B.C. 70 at the little village of Andes near Mantua, in the great northern plain of Italy, watered by the river Padus, the modern Po. The people of this country were of Gallic descent and not close kinsmen of the Romans or southern Italians, and it was not till Virgil was twenty-one years of age that they were made full Roman citizens. Virgil's father lived on a small farm, but was able to give his son all the advantages of education to be obtained in those days, perhaps seeing early in his boy some signs of future greatness. Except that Virgil studied in Cremona and Milan and at sixteen was sent to Rome to the best teachers there, we know practically nothing of his youth. This period fell between the two great civil wars of Rome, and from what we know of Virgil's nature, the comparative peace of his boyhood and youth was more congenial to him than the civil wars that raged from his twenty-second to his fortieth year.

---

* There seems to be no doubt that the correct spelling is Vergilius, and scarcely less doubt that to the English reader the poet will always be Virgil.

When in B.C. 41 peace for a time did come, the victorious Octavian confiscated large tracts of land in Italy and distributed them among his soldiers. Virgil's farm (his father being now dead) was thus seized on, but Virgil had become favorably known to Asinius Pollio, the governor of the district, and at his suggestion Virgil went to Rome and appealed to Augustus. Restitution was made by order of Augustus, though Virgil did not regain his farm, and soon we find Virgil living at Rome under the patronage of the court, and on terms of intimacy with the leading writers of the day. His first volume of poetry, the Eclogues, a collection of ten pastoral poems, commenced before he came to Rome, was completed in B.C. 37, and soon after he left Rome and for most of his remaining years lived in Campania near Naples. From B.C. 37 to 30 he worked at his second great poem, the Georgics, a series of four poems on husbandry as one of the glories of Italian life. The remaining eleven years of his life were devoted to his great epic poem, the Aeneid. We are told that in B.C. 23 he read Books II., IV. and VI. to Augustus at the latter's request. In B.C. 19 the poet had completed his epic, but intended to devote three years more to polishing and revising it. However, while on a voyage to Greece and Asia that year, he fell sick at Athens and returned, dying just as he reached Italy.

In his last illness, dissatisfied with the condition of the Aeneid, he asked his executors to burn it, but fortunately Augustus forbade their carrying out Virgil's last wish.

In person Virgil is said to have been tall and dark, of rustic even awkward appearance. He was gentle, shy and reserved in manner, and the purity of his life gained him the name of Parthenias, 'the maiden.' No authentic picture exists.

The tomb in which Virgil was buried near Naples long remained an object of veneration, and Virgil himself in the middle ages came to be looked upon as a sage, magician and prophet.

IV.—THE AENEID OF VIRGIL.

The Aeneid belongs to the class of poetry called Epic, that is, it is a narrative poem, of an elevated character, describing the exploits of heroes.

The following, condensed from Sellar, gives a general account of Virgil's position and excellence as a poet.

There was before Virgil's time but one Roman Epic, the Annals of Ennius, written two hundred years before, stirring but rugged; about the time when Virgil first came to Rome the poems of Lucretius and Catullus appeared, which were the most artistic in form yet written in Rome. A Roman epic was wanted which would satisfy the national imagination as Ennius did, and also the new sense of art, and the great expansion of national life since Ennius' day. The emperor Augustus was anxious that his exploits should be commemorated by some great poet, and Virgil had long been ambitious to treat the traditions of Alba Longa in heroic verse.

These objects then had to be kept in view—a work of art that could rival the great epics of Homer; a revival of interest in the heroic legends concerning the founding of Rome; the expression of the national feeling of an imperial city; the expression of the deeper feelings and thoughts of his age about the ideals and the problems of life; and the celebration of Augustus. All these Virgil combined by selecting the story of Aeneas, which enabled him to treat of the origin of Rome, to parallel Homer's tales of war and sea-wanderings, and to glorify the family of the Cæsars, the Julii, who boasted of their descent from Iulus the son of Aeneas.

As regards Rome itself, Virgil develops the conception entertained by the Romans themselves, that their city was ordained by Heaven to achieve world-wide dominion. Thus Virgil represents Aeneas as guided continually by the gods until he founds the city, destined by the fates to be the greatest in the world. Aeneas in ancient times and Augustus in his own day are regarded as instruments in the hands of fate, which is a great inscrutable power working out its purposes in the world through the agency of Rome.

With this idea of universal empire is combined a reverence for antiquity, for old customs, for the religious faith of early Italy, and an attachment to all places connected with the history of the nation.

The Aeneid then, as an epic describing the great part Rome played in the history of the world, as determined by the divine decrees, is partly a national and partly a religious epic. It has only a secondary interest as an epic of human action, as a portrayal of manners and character, and it has always been objected to the Aeneid that its central character is a failure—that while Aeneas is blameless, pious, and patient, he is uninteresting, weak, lacking in energy, that he is a passive tool in the hands of fate, not a great hero relying upon his own resources and stirred by ordinary human passions. It may be that Virgil was determined in this largely by his weariness of the civil wars that had been raging so long, and by the desire felt everywhere in his days for the restoration of peace, law, order and piety. This desire was met by Augustus' policy, and in this lay the security of Augustus' position.

Dido stands out as the most life-like and interesting character Virgil has drawn, and even if she does represent to the Roman the hated race of Carthaginians, and even if her desertion by Aeneas calls forth no hint of condemnation from the poet, we cannot but feel that Virgil sympathetically entered into the tragic nature of Dido's story.

Apart from character the main sources of human interest developed in the Aeneid are: the nobility and dignity of the story itself, apart from its connection with the national sentiment; the interest of two romantic legends, the destruction of Troy, and the foundation of Carthage; the scenes familiar, yet full of great memories and associations; the characters prominent in legend, or else representative of some nation; the interweaving of the old and ever new themes of war and sea-adventures, with the passion of love.

Virgil's restoration of the legendary past is not exact in all its details, or sometimes even in its spirit. There is a mixture of primitive simplicity and luxurious pomp, of the fierceness and roughness of an uncultured age and the courtesy, dignity and kindliness of more polished times. The most unreal of all his portrayals are the battle scenes of the later books, where the real interest lies generally, not in the stirring events of the combat, but in the pathetic death of some interesting character.

But if objection is taken to Virgil's character-drawing, the highest praise has always been given to the artistic excellence of his work, both in its arrangement and in the working out of details. Virgil (as Tennyson has it) 'could write ten lines, they say, at dawn, and lavish all the golden day to make them wealthier in his reader's eyes.' No poet surpasses him in finished execution, in stateliness and majesty of movement. His poetry shows a varied and continuous harmony, a rich, chastened and noble style nowhere else to be found in Latin.

Sellar regards Virgil as supreme among his countrymen in 'that subtle fusion of the music and the meaning of language which touches the deepest and most secret springs of emotion. He touches especially the emotions of reverence and of a yearning for a higher spiritual life, and the sense of nobleness in human affairs, in great institutions and great natures; the sense of the sanctity of human affections, of the imaginative spell exercised by the past, of the mystery of the unseen world.'

MacKail speaks of 'the majestic sadness, the serene and harmonious cadences, of poetry enriched with all the associations of art and learning, and wrought by patient labor into the most exquisite finish. But what Virgil has in a degree that no other poet has ever equalled is pity; the sense of "tears in things" to which in the most famous of his single verses

(Aen. I. 462) he has given imperishable expression, and which fills with strange insight and profound emotion those lonely words and pathetic half lines where he has sounded the depths of beauty and sorrow, of patience and magnanimity, of honor in life and hope beyond death.'

Perhaps nothing so completely expresses the modern view of Virgil as the lines of Tennyson (himself the most Virgilian of all our modern poets), written at the request of the people of Mantua for the nineteenth centenary of Virgil's death, 1881.

Roman Virgil, thou that singest Ilion's lofty temples robed in fire,
Ilion falling, Rome arising, wars, and filial faith, and Dido's pyre;
Landscape-lover, lord of language more than he that sang the Works and Days,
All the chosen coin of fancy flashing out from many a golden phrase;
Thou that singest wheat and woodland, tilth and vineyard, hive and horse and herd;
All the charm of all the Muses often flowering in a lonely word;
Poet of the happy Tityrus piping underneath his beechen bowers;
Poet of the poet-satyr whom the laughing shepherd bound with flowers;
Chanter of the Pollio, glorying in the blissful years again to be,
Summers of the snakeless meadow, unlaborious earth and oarless sea;
Thou that seest Universal Nature moved by Universal Mind;
Thou majestic in thy sadness at the doubtful doom of human kind;
Light among the vanished ages; star that gildest yet this phantom shore;
Golden branch amid the shadows, kings and realms that pass to rise no more;
Now thy Forum roars no longer; fallen every purple Cæsar's dome—
Tho' thine ocean-roll of rhythm sound for ever of Imperial Rome—
Now the Rome of slaves hath perish'd, and the Rome of freemen holds her place;
I, from out the Northern Island, sunder'd once from all the human race,
I salute thee, Mantovano, I that loved thee since my day began,
Wielder of the stateliest measure ever moulded by the lips of man.

V.—THE METRE OF THE AENEID.

The principle upon which rhythm is based in English poetry is a regular succession of accented and unaccented syllables. In Latin, accent has nothing to do with scansion, which depends rather on the regular succession of long and short syllables.

LONG AND SHORT SYLLABLES.

A long syllable is one containing a long vowel, or a diphthong,* or even a short vowel before two consonants, or *j*, *x*, or *z*; *e.g.* the first syllable in each of the following words is long: *primus*, *aedes*, *mentis*, *major*, *texo, gaza.* Even if one of the two consonants be at the beginning of another word this rule holds, *e.g.* the syllable *sub* is short in *sub ipsa*, but long in *sub montem.* But the rule does not always hold when the two consonants are *l* or *r* preceded by some other letter; *e.g.* the first syllable of *patris* may be short or long.

A short syllable is one containing a short vowel (except in the cases mentioned in the preceding paragraph), including regularly all cases where a vowel is followed by another vowel or diphthong, *e.g.* the first syllable in *tenet*, *deus*, *deae*, is short. But genitives in *ius* have *i* sometimes short sometimes long, and many proper names, borrowed from the Greek (in which this rule does not hold) have a long vowel before another vowel or diphthong, *e.g.* the second syllable of *Aeneas*, *Orion.*

In scansion *h* is not considered, so that the first syllable of *adhuc* is not long, while in *mihi* the first syllable is short as certainly as if it were spelled *mii.*

Syllables then may be short or long either by nature or by position.

---

* The only diphthongs in Latin are *ae*, *au*, *eu*, *ei*, *oe* and *ui*, the two first being far the commonest.

RHYTHM.

Virgil uses in the Aeneid the metre known as Dactylic Hexameter, that is a line containing six dactyls, each dactyl consisting of one long syllable followed by two short syllables. Two irregularities however are to be noticed ; first, the last foot has but two syllables (a long and a short, or two long) ; secondly, in any one, two, three or even four of the first four syllables a dactyl may be replaced by a spondee, that is a foot consisting of two long syllables.

This metre is generally represented thus

— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— ◡
— —	— —	— —	— —		— —

Thus sixteen different arrangements of the line are possible (apart from the variation in the last foot), viz. one with the first four feet dactyls, four with one spondee in the line, six with two spondees in the line, four with three spondees in the line, and one with four spondees in the first four feet. For examples see the lines indicated on page xxix.

ELISION.

But in a majority of the lines a further difficulty arises. Where the last syllable of a word ends in a vowel, or in *m*. and the first syllable of the next word begins with a vowel or *h*, these two syllables are elided or taken together and counted as one. Such a case is called elision.* For example *vera inquit*, counts as three syllables in scansion, so also *tegerem ut*, *divum humo*, *curru haeret*.

SCANSION.

Probably the best way for beginners to get the scansion of Virgil is as follows : Mark first all cases of elision ; then the two last feet, which uniformly consist of the last five syllables, may be marked off: then the quantity of syllables long or short by position, as determined by the preceding rules, can be marked; after which the first four feet can, in a large majority of cases, be easily settled. Finally (and this is all-important, if the student is ever to get beyond this rule of thumb and catch the rhythm of Virgil), the line when scanned should be read over according to the division made.

---

* Elision is usually marked thus : *ver(a) inquit* or *vera⁀inquit.*

CAESURA.

When a word ends within a foot, a *caesura* is said to occur, and in the dactylic hexameter, the *caesura* or *caesural pause*, when it coincides with a pause in the sense, constitutes much of the charm of the rhythm, the line thus falling into two unequal parts.

The favorite caesural pause occurs in the third foot, but sometimes it comes in the fourth foot, in which case there is often another pause in the second foot, the line thus being divided into three parts.

The pause is far more often after the long syllable of a dactylic foot than after the first short syllable.*

SPECIAL FEATURES AND IRREGULARITIES.

Because of the variety of rhythm possible, this metre affords great possibilities of imitative harmony; excited, or rapid action being often expressed in a line where dactyls abound, and solemn or gloomy ideas, stately or majestic movements, and slow or difficult actions brought out by a line abounding in spondees. It should be noticed, however, that the Latin language is naturally more spondaic than dactylic in its ordinary movement (stately and sonorous rather than lively), and a succession of spondees does not seem to be always

---

* The caesura is usually marked thus ‖, and the following will show the completed scansion of a line, with the length of syllables, elisions, feet and caesura indicated:

vēstr(um) hōc | āugŭrĭ | ūm ‖ vēs | trōqu(e) īn | nūmĭnĕ | Trōj(a) ēst expressive of something solemn or stately. Alliteration is also a very frequent device of Virgil's.

The following irregularities occur :

1. Many of Virgil's lines are unfinished, though conforming so far as they go to the regular metre. While in some cases these half lines may be intentional or very expressive of certain pathetic emotions, it is possible that Virgil in his final revision would have altered them. As it is, his finer taste preferred an incomplete line to one padded out with weak additions.

2. Occasionally, *i* before a vowel is given the sound of the semi-vowel *y* ; e.g., *abiete* is pronounced *abyete*, three syllables instead of four. In such cases the *y* sound counts as a consonant in making position. This shortening is called *Synaeresis*.

3. Syllables regularly long are sometimes shortened, chiefly in the ending *-erunt* of the perfect indic. active, and in the ending *-ius* of the gen. sing. This is called *Systole*.

4. A final syllable regularly short is sometimes lengthened. This lengthening (which is called *Diastole*) occurs only in the first syllable of a foot and generally at the caesural pause. In almost every case the syllable was originally long.

5. It is the exception for a line to end in a monosyllable. This occurs generally where some earlier Latin poet is imitated, or where the sense corresponds to the abrupt ending.

6. Sometimes the fifth foot is a spondee, chiefly to express a slow measured movement, or impressive act, or in Greek proper names. A line of this sort is called *Spondaic*.

7. In a few cases a superfluous syllable (generally *-que*) is found at the end of a line, regularly where there could be an elision with the first word of the next line. Such a case is called *Hypermeter* or *Synapheia*.

8. Sometimes where there is a decided pause in the sense, or with Greek proper names, elision does not occur. This non-elision is called *Hiatus*.

SCANSION OF BOOK II., 1–505.

Representative lines: 53; 17, 9, 123, 22; 3, 47, 28, 83, 35, 51; 405, 6, 18, 41; 133.

Imitative harmony and Alliteration; 9, 26, 53, 84, 124, 135, 209, 217, 237, 251, 301, 313, 324, 362, 418, 463–465, 494, 498.

Unfinished lines: 66, 233, 346, 468.

Synaeresis: 16, 442, 492.

Shortened syllable: 131.

Lengthened syllables: 369, 411.

Monosyllabic endings: 170, 355.

Spondaic line: 68.

Ancient Temple.

P. VERGILI MARONIS

AENEIDOS

LIBER SECUNDUS.

CONTICUERE omnes, intentique ora tenebant.
Inde toro pater Aeneas sic orsus ab alto:
'Infandum, regina, jubes renovare dolorem,
Trojanas ut opes et lamentabile regnum
Eruerint Danai, quaeque ipse miserrima vidi,
Et quorum pars magna fui. Quis talia fando
Myrmidonum, Dolopumve, aut duri miles Ulixi,
Temperet a lacrimis? et jam nox humida caelo
Praecipitat, suadentque cadentia sidera somnos.
Sed si tantus amor casus cognoscere nostros,
Et breviter Trojae supremum audire laborem,
Quamquam animus meminisse horret, luctuque refugit,
Incipiam.
Fracti bello, fatisque repulsi,
Ductores Danaum, tot jam labentibus annis,
Instar montis equum, divina Palladis arte,
Aedificant, sectaque intexunt abiete costas.
Votum pro reditu simulant: ea fama vagatur.

Huc delecta virum sortiti corpora furtim
Includunt caeco lateri, penitusque cavernas
Ingentes uterumque armato milite complent.
Est in conspectu Tenedos, notissima fama
Insula, dives opum, Priami dum regna manebant,
Nunc tantum sinus, et statio male fida carinis ;
Huc se provecti deserto in litore condunt.
Nos abiisse rati, et vento petiisse Mycenas.
Ergo omnis longo solvit se Teucria luctu :
Panduntur portae : juvat ire, et Dorica castra
Desertosque videre locos, litusque relictum.
Hic Dolopum manus, hic saevus tendebat Achilles :
Classibus hic locus : hic acie certare solebant.
Pars stupet innuptae donum exitiale Minervae.
Et molem mirantur equi : primusque Thymoetes
Duci intra muros hortatur, et arce locari ;
Sive dolo, seu jam Trojae sic fata ferebant.
At Capys, et quorum melior sententia menti,
Aut pelago Danaum insidias suspectaque dona
Praecipitare jubent subjectisque urere flammis,
Aut terebrare cavas uteri et tentare latebras.
Scinditur incertum studia in contraria vulgus.
Primus ibi ante omnes, magna comitante caterva,
Laocoon ardens summa decurrit ab arce,
Et procul : 'O miseri, quae tanta insania, cives?
Creditis avectos hostes? aut ulla putatis
Dona carere dolis Danaum? sic notus Ulixes?
Aut hoc inclusi ligno occultantur Achivi,
Aut haec in nostros fabricata est machina muros
Inspectura domos venturaque desuper urbi,
Aut aliquis latet error. Equo ne credite, Teucri.
Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentes.'

Sic fatus, validis ingentem viribus hastam 50
In latus inque feri curvam compagibus alvum
Contorsit. Stetit illa tremens, uteroque recusso
Insonuere cavae gemitumque dedere cavernae.
Et, si fata Deum, si mens non laeva fuisset,
Impulerat ferro Argolicas foedare latebras; 55
Trojaque nunc staret, Priamique arx alta, maneres.
Ecce, manus juvenem interea post terga revinctum
Pastores magno ad regem clamore trahebant
Dardanidae, qui se ignotum venientibus ultro,
Hoc ipsum ut strueret Trojamque aperiret Achivis, 60
Obtulerat, fidens animi, atque in utrumque paratus,
Seu versare dolos, seu certae occumbere morti.
Undique visendi studio Trojana juventus
Circumfusa ruit, certantque illudere capto.
Accipe nunc Danaum insidias, et crimine ab uno 65
Disce omnes.
Namque ut conspectu in medio turbatus, inermis,
Constitit, atque oculis Phrygia agmina circumspexit;
'Heu, quae nunc tellus,' inquit, 'quae me aequora possunt
Accipere? aut quid jam misero mihi denique restat? 70
Cui neque apud Danaos usquam locus; et super ipsi
Dardanidae infensi poenas cum sanguine poscunt.'
Quo gemitu conversi animi, compressus et omnis
Impetus. Hortamur fari, quo sanguine cretus,
Quidve ferat; memoret, quae sit fiducia capto. 75
Ille haec, deposita tandem formidine, fatur:
'Cuncta equidem tibi, rex, fuerit quodcumque, fatebor
Vera,' inquit: 'neque me Argolica de gente negabo.
Hoc primum: nec, si miserum fortuna Sinonem
Finxit, vanum etiam mendacemque improba finget. 80
Fando aliquod si forte tuas pervenit ad aures

Belidae nomen Palamedis, et incluta fama
Gloria, quem falsa sub proditione Pelasgi
Insontem, infando indicio, quia bella vetabat,
Demisere neci, nunc cassum lumine lugent;
Illi me comitem, et consanguinitate propinquum,
Pauper in arma pater primis huc misit ab annis.
Dum stabat regno incolumis, regumque vigebat
Conciliis, et nos aliquod nomenque decusque
Gessimus. Invidia postquam pellacis Ulixi
(Haud ignota loquor) superis concessit ab oris,
Afflictus vitam in tenebris luctuque trahebam,
Et casum insontis mecum indignabar amici.
Nec tacui demens: et me, fors si qua tulisset,
Si patrios unquam remeassem victor ad Argos,
Promisi ultorem, et verbis odia aspera movi.
Hinc mihi prima mali labes; hinc semper Ulixes
Criminibus terrere novis; hinc spargere voces
In vulgum ambiguas, et quaerere conscius arma.
Nec requievit enim, donec Calchante ministro—
Sed quid ego haec autem nequiquam ingrata revolvo?
Quidve moror? Si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos,
Idque audire sat est, jamdudum sumite poenas:
Hoc Ithacus velit, et magno mercentur Atridae.'
  Tum vero ardemus scitari et quaerere causas,
Ignari scelerum tantorum artisque Pelasgae.
Prosequitur pavitans, et ficto pectore fatur:
  'Saepe fugam Danai Troja cupiere relicta
Moliri, et longo fessi discedere bello.
Fecissentque utinam! Saepe illos aspera ponti
Interclusit hiems, et terruit Auster euntes.
Praecipue, cum jam hic trabibus contextus acernis
Staret equus, toto sonuerunt aethere nimbi.

Suspensi Eurypylum scitantem oracula Phoebi
Mittimus; isque adytis haec tristia dicta reportat: 115
"Sanguine placastis ventos et virgine caesa,
Cum primum Iliacas, Danai, venistis ad oras:
Sanguine quaerendi reditus, animaque litandum
Argolica." Vulgi quae vox ut venit ad aures,
Obstipuere animi, gelidusque per ima cucurrit 120
Ossa tremor, cui fata parent, quem poscat Apollo.
Hic Ithacus vatem magno Calchanta tumultu
Protrahit in medios; quae sint ea numina Divum
Flagitat. Et mihi jam multi crudele canebant
Artificis scelus, et taciti ventura videbant. 125
Bis quinos silet ille dies, tectusque recusat
Prodere voce sua quemquam, aut opponere morti.
Vix tandem, magnis Ithaci clamoribus actus,
Composito rumpit vocem, et me destinat arae.
Assensere omnes; et, quae sibi quisque timebat, 130
Unius in miseri exitium conversa tulere.
Jamque dies infanda aderat; mihi sacra parari,
Et salsae fruges, et circum tempora vittae.
Eripui (fateor) leto me, et vincula rupi;
Limosoque lacu per noctem obscurus in ulva 135
Delitui, dum vela darent, si forte dedissent.
Nec mihi jam patriam antiquam spes ulla videndi
Nec dulces natos exoptatumque parentem;
Quos illi fors et poenas ob nostra reposcent
Effugia, et culpam hanc miserorum morte piabunt. 140
Quod te, per superos et conscia numina veri,
Per, si qua est, quae restet adhuc mortalibus usquam
Intemerata fides, oro, miserere laborum
Tantorum, miserere animi non digna ferentis.'
His lacrimis vitam damus, et miserescimus ultro. 145

Ipse viro primus manicas atque arta levari
Vincla jubet Priamus, dictisque ita fatur amicis:
'Quisquis es, amissos hinc jam obliviscere Graios:
Noster eris: mihique haec edissere vera roganti.
Quo molem hanc immanis equi statuere? quis auctor? 150
Quidve petunt? quae religio? aut quae machina belli?'
Dixerat. Ille dolis instructus et arte Pelasga,
Sustulit exutas vinclis ad sidera palmas:
'Vos, aeterni ignes, et non violabile vestrum
Testor numen,' ait: 'vos, arae ensesque nefandi, 155
Quos fugi; vittaeque Deum, quas hostia gessi;
Fas mihi Graiorum sacrata resolvere jura;
Fas odisse viros, atque omnia ferre sub auras,
Si qua tegunt; teneor patriae nec legibus ullis.
Tu modo promissis maneas, servataque serves 160
Troja fidem, si vera feram, si magna rependam.
'Omnis spes Danaum et coepti fiducia belli
Palladis auxiliis semper stetit. Impius ex quo
Tydides sed enim scelerumque inventor Ulixes
Fatale aggressi sacrato avellere templo 165
Palladium, caesis summae custodibus arcis,
Corripuere sacram effigiem, manibusque cruentis
Virgineas ausi Divae contingere vittas;
Ex illo fluere ac retro sublapsa referri
Spes Danaum; fractae vires, aversa Deae mens. 170
Nec dubiis ea signa dedit Tritonia monstris.
Vix positum castris simulacrum; arsere coruscae
Luminibus flammae arrectis, salsusque per artus
Sudor iit, terque ipsa solo (mirabile dictu)
Emicuit, parmamque ferens hastamque trementem. 175
Extemplo tentanda fuga canit aequora Calchas,
Nec posse Argolicis exscindi Pergama telis,

Omina ni repetant Argis, numenque reducant,
Quod pelago et curvis secum avexere carinis.
Et nunc, quod patrias vento petiere Mycenas,
Arma Deosque parant comites, pelagoque remenso
Improvisi aderunt: ita digerit omina Calchas.
Hanc pro Palladio moniti, pro numine laeso,
Effigiem statuere, nefas quae triste piaret.
Hanc tamen immensam Calchas attollere molem
Roboribus textis, caeloque educere jussit,
Ne recipi portis aut duci in moenia posset,
Neu populum antiqua sub religione tueri.
Nam si vestra manus violasset dona Minervae,
Tum magnum exitium—quod Di prius omen in ipsum
Convertant!—Priami imperio Phrygibusque futurum:
Sin manibus vestris vestram ascendisset in urbem,
Ultro Asiam magno Pelopea ad moenia bello
Venturam, et nostros ea fata manere nepotes.'
  Talibus insidiis perjurique arte Sinonis
Credita res; captique dolis lacrimisque coactis,
Quos neque Tydides, nec Larissaeus Achilles,
Non anni domuere decem, non mille carinae.
  Hic aliud majus miseris multoque tremendum
Objicitur magis, atque improvida pectora turbat.
Laocoon, ductus Neptuno sorte sacerdos,
Sollemnes taurum ingentem mactabat ad aras.
Ecce autem gemini a Tenedo tranquilla per alta
(Horresco referens) immensis orbibus angues
Incumbunt pelago, pariterque ad litora tendunt:
Pectora quorum inter fluctus arrecta, jubaeque
Sanguineae superant undas; pars cetera pontum
Pone legit, sinuatque immensa volumine terga.
Fit sonitus spumante salo. Jamque arva tenebant,

Ardentesque oculos suffecti sanguine et igni,
Sibila lambebant linguis vibrantibus ora.
Diffugimus visu exsangues. Illi agmine certo
Laocoonta petunt: et primum parva duorum
Corpora natorum serpens amplexus uterque
Implicat, et miseros morsu depascitur artus.
Post ipsum auxilio subeuntem ac tela ferentem
Corripiunt, spirisque ligant ingentibus: et jam
Bis medium amplexi, bis collo squamea circum
Terga dati, superant capite et cervicibus altis.
Ille simul manibus tendit divellere nodos,
Perfusus sanie vittas atroque veneno;
Clamores simul horrendos ad sidera tollit:
Quales mugitus, fugit cum saucius aram
Taurus, et incertam excussit cervice securim.
At gemini lapsu delubra ad summa dracones
Effugiunt, saevaeque petunt Tritonidis arcem;
Sub pedibusque Deae clipeique sub orbe teguntur.
Tum vero tremefacta novus per pectora cunctis
Insinuat pavor; et scelus expendisse merentem
Laocoonta ferunt, sacrum qui cuspide robur
Laeserit, et tergo sceleratam intorserit hastam.
Ducendum ad sedes simulacrum, orandaque Divae
Numina conclamant.
Dividimus muros, et moenia pandimus urbis.
Accingunt omnes operi; pedibusque rotarum
Subjiciunt lapsus, et stuppea vincula collo
Intendunt. Scandit fatalis machina muros,
Feta armis. Pueri circum innuptaeque puellae
Sacra canunt, funemque manu contingere gaudent.
Illa subit, mediaeque minans illabitur urbi.
O patria, o Divum domus Ilium, et incluta bello

Moenia Dardanidum! quater ipso in limine portae
Substitit, atque utero sonitum quater arma dedere.
Instamus tamen immemores caecique furore,
Et monstrum infelix sacrata sistimus arce. 245
Tunc etiam fatis aperit Cassandra futuris
Ora, Dei jussu non unquam credita Teucris.
Nos delubra Deum miseri, quibus ultimus esset
Ille dies, festa velamus fronde per urbem.
Vertitur interea caelum, et ruit Oceano nox, 250
Involvens umbra magna terramque polumque
Myrmidonumque dolos: fusi per moenia Teucri
Conticuere: sopor fessos complectitur artus.
Et jam Argiva phalanx instructis navibus ibat
A Tenedo, tacitae per amica silentia lunae, 255
Litora nota petens: flammas cum regia puppis
Extulerat, fatisque Deum defensus iniquis,
Inclusos utero Danaos et pinea furtim
Laxat claustra Sinon. Illos patefactus ad auras
Reddit equus, laetique cavo se robore promunt 260
Thessandrus Sthenelusque duces, et dirus Ulixes,
Demissum lapsi per funem, Acamasque, Thoasque,
Pelidesque Neoptolemus, primusque Machaon,
Et Menelaus, et ipse doli fabricator Epeos.
Invadunt urbem somno vinoque sepultam; 265
Caeduntur vigiles, portisque patentibus omnes
Accipiunt socios, atque agmina conscia jungunt.
Tempus erat, quo prima quies mortalibus aegris
Incipit, et dono Divum gratissima serpit.
In somnis, ecce, ante oculos maestissimus Hector 270
Visus adesse mihi, largosque effundere fletus;
Raptatus bigis, ut quondam, aterque cruento
Pulvere, perque pedes trajectus lora tumentes.

Hei mihi, qualis erat! quantum mutatus ab illo
Hectore, qui redit exuvias indutus Achilli,
Vel Danaum Phrygios jaculatus puppibus ignes!
Squalentem barbam, et concretos sanguine crines,
Vulneraque illa gerens, quae circum plurima muros
Accepit patrios. Ultro flens ipse videbar
Compellare virum, et maestas expromere voces:
'O lux Dardaniae! spes o fidissima Teucrum!
Quae tantae tenuere morae? quibus Hector ab oris
Exspectate venis? ut te post multa tuorum
Funera, post varios hominumque urbisque labores,
Defessi aspicimus? quae causa indigna serenos
Foedavit vultus? aut cur haec vulnera cerno?'
Ille nihil; nec me quaerentem vana moratur;
Sed graviter gemitus imo de pectore ducens:
'Heu fuge, nate Dea, teque his 'ait' eripe flammis.
Hostis habet muros; ruit alta a culmine Troja
Sat patriae Priamoque datum: si Pergama dextra
Defendi possent, etiam hac defensa fuissent.
Sacra suosque tibi commendat Troja Penates:
Hos cape fatorum comites; his moenia quaere,
Magna pererrato statues quae denique ponto.'
Sic ait, et manibus vittas Vestamque potentem
Aeternumque adytis effert penetralibus ignem.
  Diverso interea miscentur moenia luctu;
Et magis atque magis (quamquam secreta parentis
Anchisae domus, arboribusque obtecta recessit)
Clarescunt sonitus, armorumque ingruit horror.
Excutior somno, et summi fastigia tecti
Ascensu supero, atque arrectis auribus asto.
In segetem veluti cum flamma furentibus Austris
Incidit; aut rapidus montano flumine torrens

Sternit agros, sternit sata laeta boumque labores,
Praecipitesque trahit silvas; stupet inscius alto
Accipiens sonitum saxi de vertice pastor.
Tum vero manifesta fides, Danaumque patescunt
Insidiae. Jam Deiphobi dedit ampla ruinam,
Vulcano superante, domus: jam proximus ardet
Ucalegon: Sigea igni freta lata relucent.
Exoritur clamorque virum clangorque tubarum.
Arma amens capio, nec sat rationis in armis;
Sed glomerare manum bello, et concurrere in arcem
Cum sociis ardent animi. Furor iraque mentem
Praecipitant; pulchrumque mori succurrit in armis.
  Ecce autem telis Panthus elapsus Achivum,
Panthus Othryades, arcis Phoebique sacerdos,
Sacra manu victosque Deos parvumque nepotem
Ipse trahit, cursuque amens ad limina tendit:
'Quo res summa loco, Panthu? quam prendimus arcem?'
Vix ea fatus eram, gemitu cum talia reddit:
'Venit summa dies et ineluctabile tempus
Dardaniae. Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium, et ingens
Gloria Teucrorum. Ferus omnia Jupiter Argos
Transtulit. Incensa Danai dominantur in urbe.
Arduus armatos mediis in moenibus astans
Fundit equus, victorque Sinon incendia miscet
Insultans. Portis alii bipatentibus adsunt,
Millia quot magnis umquam venere Mycenis.
Obsedere alii telis angusta viarum
Oppositi; stat ferri acies mucrone corusco
Stricta, parata neci: vix primi proelia tentant
Portarum vigiles, et caeco Marte resistunt.'
Talibus Othryadae dictis, et numine Divum
In flammas et in arma feror, quo tristis Erinys,

Quo fremitus vocat, et sublatus ad aethera clamor.
Addunt se socios Rhipeus et maximus armis
Epytus, oblati per lunam, Hypanisque, Dymasque,
Et lateri agglomerant nostro, juvenisque Coroebus
Mygdonides. Illis ad Trojam forte diebus
Venerat, insano Cassandrae incensus amore,
Et gener auxilium Priamo Phrygibusque ferebat:
Infelix, qui non sponsae praecepta furentis
Audierit.
Quos ubi confertos audere in proelia vidi,
Incipio super his: 'Juvenes, fortissima frustra
Pectora, si vobis audentem extrema cupido
Certa sequi, quae sit rebus fortuna videtis;
Excessere omnes adytis arisque relictis
Di, quibus imperium hoc steterat: succurritis urbi
Incensae: moriamur, et in media arma ruamus.
Una salus victis, nullam sperare salutem.'
Sic animis juvenum furor additus. Inde—lupi ceu
Raptores, atra in nebula, quos improba ventris
Exegit caecos rabies, catulique relicti
Faucibus exspectant siccis—per tela, per hostes
Vadimus haud dubiam in mortem, mediaeque tenemus
Urbis iter. Nox atra cava circumvolat umbra.
  Quis cladem illius noctis, quis funera fando
Explicet, aut possit lacrimis aequare labores?
Urbs antiqua ruit, multos dominata per annos;
Plurima perque vias sternuntur inertia passim
Corpora, perque domos, et religiosa deorum
Limina. Nec soli poenas dant sanguine Teucri:
Quondam etiam victis redit in praecordia virtus,
Victoresque cadunt Danai. Crudelis ubique
Luctus, ubique pavor, et plurima mortis imago.

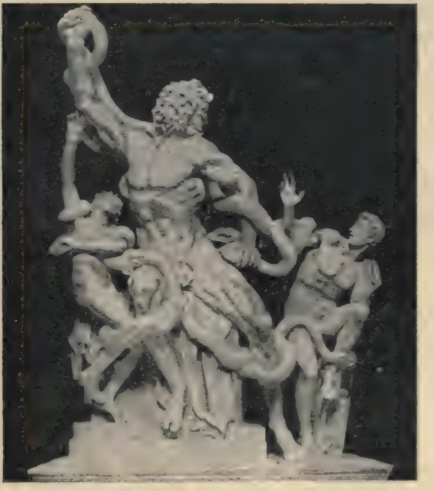
Primus se, Danaum magna comitante caterva,
Androgeos offert nobis, socia agmina credens
Inscius, atque ultro verbis compellat amicis:
'Festinate, viri; nam quae tam sera moratur
Segnities? Alii rapiunt incensa feruntque
Pergama: vos celsis nunc primum a navibus itis?'
Dixit: et extemplo (neque enim responsa dabantur
Fida satis) sensit medios delapsus in hostes.
Obstipuit, retroque pedem cum voce repressit.
Improvisum aspris veluti qui sentibus anguem
Pressit humi nitens, trepidusque repente refugit
Attollentem iras, et caerula colla tumentem;
Haud secus Androgeos visu tremefactus abibat.
Irruimus, densis et circumfundimur armis;
Ignarosque loci passim et formidine captos
Sternimus; aspirat primo fortuna labori.
Atque hic successu exsultans animisque Coroebus:
'O socii, qua prima,' inquit, 'fortuna salutis
Monstrat iter, quaque ostendit se dextra, sequamur.
Mutemus clipeos, Danaumque insignia nobis
Aptemus: dolus an virtus, quis in hoste requirat?
Arma dabunt ipsi.' Sic fatus, deinde comantem
Androgei galeam clipeique insigne decorum
Induitur, laterique Argivum accommodat ensem.
Hoc Rhipeus, hoc ipse Dymas, omnisque juventus
Laeta facit: spoliis se quisque recentibus armat.
Vadimus immixti Danais, haud numine nostro;
Multaque per caecam congressi proelia noctem
Conserimus, multos Danaum demittimus Orco.
Diffugiunt alii ad naves, et litora cursu
Fida petunt: pars ingentem formidine turpi
Scandunt rursus equum, et nota conduntur in alvo.

Heu, nihil invitis fas quemquam fidere Divis!
Ecce trahebatur passis Priameia virgo
Crinibus a templo Cassandra adytisque Minervae,
Ad caelum tendens ardentia lumina frustra:
Lumina, nam teneras arcebant vincula palmas.
Non tulit hanc speciem furiata mente Coroebus,
Et sese medium injecit periturus in agmen.
Consequimur cuncti, et densis incurrimus armis.
Hic primum ex alto delubri culmine telis
Nostrorum obruimur, oriturque miserrima caedes,
Armorum facie, et Graiarum errore jubarum.
Tum Danai gemitu atque ereptae virginis ira
Undique collecti invadunt, acerrimus Ajax,
Et gemini Atridae, Dolopumque exercitus omnis.
Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti
Confligunt, Zephyrusque Notusque et laetus Eois
Eurus equis: stridunt silvae, saevitque tridenti
Spumeus atque imo Nereus ciet aequora fundo.
Illi etiam, si quos obscura nocte per umbram
Fudimus insidiis, totaque agitavimus urbe,
Apparent: primi clipeos mentitaque tela
Agnoscunt, atque ora sono discordia signant.
Ilicet obruimur numero: primusque Coroebus
Penelei dextra Divae armipotentis ad aram
Procumbit: cadit et Rhipeus, justissimus unus
Qui fuit in Teucris, et servantissimus aequi;
Dis aliter visum. Pereunt Hypanisque Dymasque
Confixi a sociis; nec te tua plurima, Panthu,
Labentem pietas, nec Apollinis infula texit.
Iliaci cineres et flamma extrema meorum,
Testor in occasu vestro nec tela nec ullas
Vitavisse vices Danaum, et, si fata fuissent,

Ut caderem, meruisse manu. Divellimur inde,
Iphitus et Pelias mecum, quorum Iphitus aevo
Jam gravior, Pelias et vulnere tardus Ulixi,
Protinus ad sedes Priami clamore vocati.
Hic vero ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam
Bella forent, nulli tota morerentur in urbe
Sic Martem indomitum Danaosque ad tecta ruentes
Cernimus, obsessumque acta testudine limen.
Haerent parietibus scalae, postesque sub ipsos
Nituntur gradibus, clipeosque ad tela sinistris
Protecti objiciunt; prensant fastigia dextris.
Dardanidae contra turres ac tecta domorum
Culmina convellunt: his se, quando ultima cernunt,
Extrema jam in morte parant defendere telis;
Auratasque trabes, veterum decora alta parentum,
Devolvunt: alii strictis mucronibus imas
Obsedere fores; has servant agmine denso.
Instaurati animi regis succurrere tectis,
Auxilioque levare viros, vimque addere victis.
Limen erat caecaeque fores et pervius usus
Tectorum inter se Priami, postesque relicti
A tergo: infelix qua se, dum regna manebant,
Saepius Andromache ferre incomitata solebat
Ad soceros et avo puerum Astyanacta trahebat.
Evado ad summi fastigia culminis, unde
Tela manu miseri jactabant irrita Teucri.
Turrim in praecipiti stantem summisque sub astra
Eductam tectis, unde omnis Troja videri
Et Danaum solitae naves et Achaica castra,
Aggressi ferro circum, qua summa labantes
Juncturas tabulata dabant, convellimus altis
Sedibus impulimusque. Ea lapsa repente ruinam

Cum sonitu trahit, et Danaum super agmina late
Incidit. Ast alii subeunt; nec saxa nec ullum
Telorum interea cessat genus.
  Vestibulum ante ipsum primoque in limine Pyrrhus
Exultat, telis et luce coruscus aëna;
Qualis ubi in lucem coluber, mala gramina pastus,
Frigida sub terra tumidum quem bruma tegebat,
Nunc positis novus exuviis nitidusque juventa,
Lubrica convolvit sublato pectore terga,
Arduus ad solem, et linguis micat ore trisulcis.
Una ingens Periphas, et equorum agitator Achillis
Armiger Automedon, una omnis Scyria pubes
Succedunt tecto, et flammas ad culmina jactant.
Ipse inter primos correpta dura bipenni
Limina perrumpit, postesque a cardine vellit
Aeratos; jamque excisa trabe firma cavavit
Robora, et ingentem lato dedit ore fenestram.
Apparet domus intus, et atria longa patescunt;
Apparent Priami et veterum penetralia regum,
Armatosque vident stantes in limine primo.
  At domus interior gemitu miseroque tumultu
Miscetur, penitusque cavae plangoribus aedes
Femineis ululant: ferit aurea sidera clamor.
Tum pavidae tectis matres ingentibus errant,
Amplexaeque tenent postes, atque oscula figunt.
Instat vi patria Pyrrhus: nec claustra neque ipsi
Custodes sufferre valent: labat ariete crebro
Janua, et emoti procumbunt cardine postes.
Fit via vi: rumpunt aditus, primosque trucidant
Immissi Danai, et late loca milite complent.
Non sic, aggeribus ruptis cum spumeus amnis
Exiit oppositasque evicit gurgite moles,

Fertur in arva furens cumulo, camposque per omnes
Cum stabulis armenta trahit. Vidi ipse furentem
Caede Neoptolemum geminosque in limine Atridas: 500
Vidi Hecubam centumque nurus Priamumque per aras
Sanguine foedantem, quos ipse sacraverat, ignes.
Quinquaginta illi thalami, spes tanta nepotum,
Barbarico postes auro spoliisque superbi,
Procubuere: tenent Danai, qua deficit ignis. 505



The Laocoon Group.
(From the Vatican Museum.)

Ruins of Ancient Troy.

"O lamentable fall of famous towne,
Which raignd so many years victorious,
And of all Asie bore the soveraine crowne,
In one sad night consumd and throwen downe!
What stony hart, that heares thy haplesse fate,
Is not empierst with deep compassiowne,
And makes ensample of man's wretched state,
That flowers so fresh at morne, and fades at evening late!"
SPENSER, *Faerie Queene.*

NOTES ON VIRGIL, AENEID II. 1-505.

N.B.—The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning at page 169.

The following abbreviations are used: cf.=compare; fn.=footnote; l.=line; lit.=literally; sc.=supply or understand; trans.=translate or translation.

In the seventh year after the fall of Troy, Aeneas with his band of exiles is still wandering over the sea in search of his destined home. Driven by a storm to the coast of Africa, he comes to Carthage, which Queen Dido and a band of fugitives from Tyre had recently built. By her the Trojans are graciously welcomed, and in the evening a banquet is given in honor of Aeneas in Dido's palace. At this banquet the queen asks her guest to tell her the story of his country's fall and his long wanderings. Such is the substance of the first book of the Aeneid; the second and third books give the story told by Aeneas in answer to Queen Dido's request, while the remaining nine books contain the rest of Aeneas' adventures, from his coming to Carthage until his final settlement in Italy.

1-13.—*In spite of the pain with which Aeneas recalls the past, and of the lateness of the hour, he is willing to gratify the queen's desire.*

1. **Conticuere**: =*conticuerunt.* This ending is very rare in Caesar, but common in poetry, being often convenient for metrical purposes. **intenti**: with adverbial force (205, *h*). **ora tenebant**: 'kept their gaze fixed (upon him).' Note the change of tense, expressing the instant hush and the continued attention.

2. **toro . . . ab ălto**: in poetry words are more freely placed than in prose. The Greeks and Romans did not sit, but reclined, at their meals. **alto**: as a mark of honor to the guest. **orsus**:

for *orsus est* (from *ordior*). In prose *esse* is frequently omitted, especially in compound tenses; in poetry, *est* and *sunt* also (4, *g*).

3. **Infandum**: with predicative force; 'unutterable is the woe you bid me recall,' not 'you bid me recall an unutterable woe.' The subject accusative of the infin. with *jubeo* is often to be supplied from the context.

4. **Trojanas**: in sense belongs to *regnum* also. **ut**: 'how.' **lamentabile**: anticipates the effect of *eruerint*.

5. **eruerint**: subjunctive depending on the notion of telling, virtually implied in *renovare dolorem* (35; 191). **quaeque**: two words; *-que* = 'both,' better omitted in trans. *Quae* and *quorum* (l. 6) are relative not interrog. pronouns, hence the change of mood. The relative sentences are in loose apposition to the previous lines, whose meaning they extend; 'woes (lit. things) which are the most sorrowful I (ever) saw.' **miserrima**: emphatic, and placed in the relative sentence (173, *c*, iii.).

6. **et quorum**, etc.; 'and in which I bore no small part.' **talia**: 'such a tale.' **fando**: 'in telling' (103).

7. **Myrmidonum Dolopumve**: with *quis*, which is also to be taken (adjectively) with *miles*. These tribes are chosen because their leader, Achilles, was the fiercest, as well as the most famous, of the Greeks. **ve, aut**: the former being used to couple *Myrmidonum* and *Dolopum*, which are the most closely related. **Ulixi**: Greek proper names in **-es** of the third declension have the genitive in both **-is** and **-i**.

8. **temperet**: 'could refrain.' (136, *d.*) **et**: 'also,' 'too.' **humida**: 'dewy,' it being near dawn. **caelo**: in poetry the preposition is often omitted in phrases of *motion from*.

9. **praecipitat**: Night, like the sun, was regarded as rising out of the ocean, traversing the sky, and then sinking beneath the western waves. **cadentia**: another indication of the lateness of the hour. **somnos**: Latin often, especially in poetry, uses the plural where English would have the singular.

10. **amor**: supply *est;* cf. on l. 2. **cognoscere**: the infin. is used more freely in poetry than in prose, which here would have *cognoscendi.* (22, viii.) So *audire* in l. 11.

11. **supremum**: of time, not of degree.

12. **meminisse**: see 138, ii.; 22, viii. **refugit**: the quantity (*refŭgit*) shows that this is the perfect; lit. 'has shrunk back,' freely 'recoils.' The *act* of recoiling is finished, hence the perfect in Latin; English prefers the present, expressing the *state* of mind. **luctu**: 'in grief' (96).

13-20. *The Greeks pretend to make preparations for departing and build a wooden horse, which is filled with warriors.*

13. **fatis**: it was decreed by fate that Troy should not be taken for ten years.

14. **Danaum**: for *Danaorum.* In Virgil many nouns of the first or second declension have *-um* in the gen. plur. **labentibus**: abl. absolute; 'were gliding by'; picturesque for *lapsis*.

15. **instar**: an indeclinable noun, in apposition with *equum*, and taking the possessive genitive; 'huge as a mountain,' 'of mountainous bulk.' **Palladis**: the gods took sides in the Trojan war, favoring and actively aiding, some the Greeks, others the Trojans.

16. **aedificant**: expressive of the size of the structure; **secta abiete**: 'with sawn fir,' 'with planks of fir.'

17. **pro reditu**: 'for their return,' *i.e.*, to ensure a favorable voyage, and perhaps as a thank-offering for getting safely away. **ea**: see 205, *c*.

18. **huc**: 'herein,' 'in this,' lit. 'hereinto,' 'to this,' motion towards being implied in *includunt.* **caeco lateri**: explains *huc* more fully. For the dative (here to be translated by 'in'), see 78, v., *c*. **virum**: for *virorum;* see on *Danaum*, l. 14. **corpora virum**: a periphrasis seemingly expressive of the care taken to get the most stalwart men; notice also the repetition of the idea of selection; 'men of stalwart frame whom they have chosen.'

19. **penitus** : also suggests the immense size of the horse.

20. **uterumque** : *-que* here, as often, is used to give an explanation, not an additional detail. **milite** : 'soldiery'; the sing. is used collectively.

21-39. *After the Greeks have gone, the Trojans hasten to their camp and find the wooden horse, but are undecided what to do with it.*

21. **Est** : 'there is.' **notissima** : 'well-known'; nom. case. **fama** : 'in fame,' 'in reputation'; abl. case.

22. **dives opum** : 'rich of store,' 'rich in resources' (90, iii.). **regna** : see on *somnos*, l. 9. **manebant** : for the tense see 154.

23. **tantum** : an adverb. **male fida** : 'treacherous, untrustworthy'; *male* negatives words denoting good qualities.

24. **se** : with *condunt*; unnecessary in English (203, *f*, i.).

25. **abiisse** : from *abeo*; its subject *eos* is not expressed; for the forms *abiisse* and *petiisse* see page 67, fn. **rati** : for *rati sumus* (an unusual ellipsis), from *reor*. **Mycenas** : the city of the leader of the Greeks stands for Greece as a whole.

26. **longo** : intensifying the feeling of relief. **luctu** : see 93.

27. **Dorica** : 'Doric,' *i.e.*, 'Grecian'; Virgil uses the names of different prominent Greek tribes for the Greeks in general. The Dorians really became prominent only after the Trojan war.

28. **locos** : 'stations'; prose Latin would have used *loca*. **litusque** : *-que* explanatory; see on l. 20.

29. **hic** : an adverb in this line and the next, which represent the comments of the Trojans. Notice the corresponding shift of tense from the historic present. **manus** : subject of *tendebat*. **tendebat** : 'encamped.' The full phrase would be *tentoria tendebat*, 'stretched his tents.' According to Homer, huts not tents were used by the Greeks before Troy.

30. **classibus** : plur. of the different detachments. **hic locus** : supply *erat*.

31. **pars** : freely 'some.' **stupet donum** : see 69, ii. **exitiale** : as was afterwards found, not as was suspected at the time. **Minervae** : objective genitive; translate 'to Minerva.'

33. **duci**: 'that it be drawn.' In prose the subjunctive, not the infin., is used with *hortor* (28, vii.). **arce**: the preposition in phrases telling the *place where* (as also the *place to* or *from which*) is more often omitted in poetry than in prose. (127, ii.) cf. l. 8.

34. **sive. . . . seu**: 'whether. . . . or (that).' **dolo**: some color might be given to this suspicion by the fact that Priam had once had Thymoetes' wife and child put to death. **sic ferebant**: 'were tending thus.'

35. **quorum**: the antecedent is to be supplied; 'those, whose.' Supply also *erat*, as the verb of the clause, whose mind held,' lit. 'to whose mind was,' etc. (80, *e*).

36. **pelago**: 'into the sea.' In poetry, the dative often expresses the limit of motion. (125, ii.)

37. **subjectisque**: English would use 'or,' not 'and.' Two alternatives are given, to destroy or to explore, marked by *aut. . . . aut*; there are, further, two ways suggested of destroying the horse, connected by *-que*.

38. **cavas latebras**: depends on both *terebrare* and *tentare*; notice the appropriateness of placing *cavas* near *terebrare*, and *latebras* near *tentare*.

39. **incertum**: 'in its perplexity,' *i.e.*, on this occasion rather than a constant epithet 'fickle.' **studia**: 'factions,' indicating the heat of the controversy. "Is torn apart in high dispute." **vulgus**: opposed to the leaders.

40-56. *Laocoon urges the destruction of the horse, and boldly hurls his spear at it.*

40. **Primus ante omnes**: like *ardens*, l. 41 and *procul*, l. 42, indicating Laocoon's intense eagerness.

41. **arce**: Laocoon was a priest of Apollo, and had probably been engaged in his temple in the citadel.

42. **procul**: see on l. 40. Understand *dixit* or some such word, often omitted in poetry when the exact words are quoted. **tanta**: 'all this,' 'this great.' Here also a verb, *est*, is to be supplied.

43. **avectos**: sc. *esse.*

44. **Danaum**: with *dona.* **sic notus**: sc. *est.*

45. **ligno**: see on *arce*, l. 33. **Achivi**: see on *Dorica*, l. 27.

46. **in**: 'against,' of hostile intent.

47. **inspectura, ventura**: fut. part. denoting purpose (122); translate 'to look down,' etc. **urbi**: 'on the city,' see on *pelago*, l. 36. Virgil has in his mind the towers used by the Romans in sieges.

48. **ne credite**: 'do not trust.' (133, i. *c.*)

49. **quidquid**: from *quisquis.* **et ferentes**: 'even when bearing.'

50. **validis ingentem**: gain force from being placed close together.

51. **curvam compagibus**: 'with its curved frame-work,' lit. 'curved with its frame-work (or joints)'; abl. of manner or means. **inque. . . . alvum**: is an emphatic extension of *in latus.* Note the gender of *alvus.*

52. **illa**: as is common in Latin, marks the change of subject. (160, i.) **utero recusso**: 'with the jarring (*or* re-echoing) of the womb'; an abl. absol.

53. **cavae**: belongs to the predicate; 'sounded hollow.' **insonuere, dedere**; see on l. 1.

54. **deum**: see on *Danaum*, l. 14. **si fata deum**: is incomplete. Supply *non laeva fuissent*, making *laeva* mean 'unpropitious' with *fata*, and 'infatuated' with *mens.* [Others supply *non fuissent*, 'if it had not been the will of the gods.'] **fuisset**: see 61.

55. **impulerat**: more vivid than the regular *impulisset* (64, i. fn.); he had done his part to urge them. The regular construction is resumed in the subjunctives of l. 56.

56. **maneres**: 'wouldst (still) remain (*or* abide).' The change to the second person marks Aeneas' deep emotion. **alta**: in contrast with its present downfall. For the tense see 61.

57-76. *A Greek is brought in, who had allowed himself to be taken in order to deceive the Trojans.*

57. **manus revinctum**: 'with his hands bound,' more lit. 'having his hands bound.' (69, vii.)

59. **Dardanidae**: masc. gender though of the first declension, as are many words borrowed from the Greek. **qui**: subject of *obtulerat*, l. 61. **ultro**: with *obtulerat*, not with *venientibus*, for which latter see 205, *g*.

60. **hoc ipsum**: explained by *Trojamque aperiret Achivis*; see on *-que*, l. 28. Others make *hoc ipsum* refer to his being brought before the king.

61. **animi**: 'in heart,' 'of soul'; really a locative (127, vi.). **in utrumque**: 'for either fate'; explained by the infinitives of the next line (109).

62. **versare dolos**: much trickery might be needed to induce the Trojans first to spare him, then to introduce the horse into the city; hence the frequentative verb (p. 76, fn.) and the plural noun. **certae**: 'certain,' if his trickery did not succeed, for he was a Greek. **morti**: see 78, v. *c*.

63. **visendi studio**: 'in their eagerness to see.'

64. **ruit certantque**: the sing. *ruit*, because they rush as one mass, the plural *certant*, because they are regarded as acting individually. **illudere**: 'in jeering at' (22, viii.). **capto**: see 78, v. *c*.

65. **Accipe nunc**: Dido had said '*a prima dic, hospes, origine nobis insidias Danaum*,' 'tell us, O guest, from the beginning the treachery of the Greeks.' **crimine ab uno**: with much the same force as if it were *ab crimine unius*.

66. **omnes**: *crimina* must not be understood; it is masc. and refers to the Greeks. For the broken line see page 335.

67. **ut**: 'as' (152, *b*). **conspectu in medio**: 'in the midst of our gaze.' (86, iv. *b*.)

68. **agmina**: suggesting a contrast with *inermis* of l. 67. **circumspexit**: for the spondaic ending see page 335. It seems to be used here purposely for graphic effect.

70. **jam denique**: 'now at last,' 'finally now.' *nunc* of l. 69 = 'at this present moment.'

71. **cui** : supply *est*, 'for whom there is,' or 'who have' (80, *e*). **super** : adverb, 'besides.' **ipsi** : they might have been expected to welcome a deserter (for he had given himself up voluntarily).

72. **poenas cum sanguine** : 'punishment along with my blood,' 'the forfeit of my life'; in fact, his death was itself to be the punishment, not something additional.

73. **quo** : 'at this'; the coordinating use of the relative (172). **conversi, compressus** : sc. *sunt* and *est*. **et** : notice the unusual position.

74. **fari** : see on l. 33. **sanguine** : see 95. **cretus** : sc. *sit* (subj. of indirect question).

75. **quidve ferat** : 'or what (news) be brings.' **memoret** : 'to tell us;' the subj. representing the imperative of the actual words (186, 1, *c*). **quae sit fiducia capto** : 'what ground of confidence he has, now that he is a captive,' lit. 'what ground of confidence there is to (him) a captive.' He had voluntarily given himself up (l. 59), and had just spoken as though the Trojans might have been expected to shelter him (l. 71, 72); he is now asked on what hope of being spared he had been depending.

76. **ille** : see on *illa*, l. 52. **haec** : 'thus.' This line is not considered genuine, one reason being that it is inconsistent with l. 107.

77–104. *To win their sympathy, he tells how he is a victim of Ulysses' hate.*

77. **equidem** : to strengthen the assertion; notice too that *cuncta* is made emphatic by its position. **fuerit quodcumque** : 'happen what may,' 'come what will,' fut. perf. indic.

78. **vera** : 'truly, truthfully,' literally 'true,' predicative with *cuncta*. **me** : supply *esse*.

79. **hoc primum** : sc. *fateor*. **miserum** : see 69, v.

80. **improba** : emphatic, 'with all her malice,' 'malicious (*or* wanton) though she be,' not to be taken with the clause *si miserum . . . finxit*.

81. **fando**: 'in conversation,' 'by report,' see l. 6. **aliquod nomen**: 'any such name as that of Palamedes.' **pervenit**: by using the introductory 'there,' the two subjects *nomen* and *gloria* may be brought in later.

82. **Belidae**: descent and relationship may be indicated by *patronymics*, having the suffixes *-ades* or *-ides*. These are Greek masculine nouns of the first declension, of which the gen. sing. and nom. plur. end in *-ae*. **Palamedis**: Ulysses had feigned madness that he might escape taking part in the war. Palamedes by an adroit trick had shown that the madness was merely a pretence. This aroused Ulysses' resentment, and he compassed Palamedes' downfall by hiding a letter from Priam and some gold in Palamedes' tent and then falsely accusing him of treason to the Greeks. Palamedes was also a great inventor, and some think that Ulysses was jealous of his reputation for shrewdness. **incluta**: 'spread abroad;' nom. case, with *gloria*. **fama**: abl.

84. The recurrence of the syllable **in** is doubtless intentional. **vetabat**: the indicative shows that this was the real not the alleged reason (146). This crafty touch would all the more win the sympathy of the Trojans for Palamedes and his attendant Sinon. For the tense see 180, *b*.

85. **demisere**: see on l. 1. **neci**: see on l. 36. **cassum lumine**: 'bereft of light,' *i.e.*, dead (93); with *quem* repeated, 'but whom.'

86. **illi**: we here come to the main clause of the sentence beginning l. 81; *illi* is emphatic: 'to him,' or 'he it was to whom.'

87. **pauper**: seemingly to assign a reason for Sinon's being a dependant, and thus to show that he had not come against Troy of his own will. **in arma**: 'for warfare.' **primis ab annis**: 'from my (not the war's) earliest years.' Hence **huc misit** must be used in a pregnant sense, which may be expressed by using two verbs, 'to him my father *assigned* me, etc., from my earliest years, and *sent* me hither.' For one indication of Sinon's age, see l. 138. *Misit* can mean only *virtually* sent,—that was what his act led to. [Some think that Sinon was really a mere lad ten years before, and that Virgil in l. 138 is guilty of an inconsistency.]

88. **dum stabat**: 'so long as he remained'; for the tense cf. l. 22. **regno**: local abl.; so **consiliis,** l. 89. **regum**: the princes or leaders of contingents banded against Troy.

89. **et nos**: 'we also'; *nos* really refers to the narrator only (157, ii.). **nomenque**: *-que* is 'both,' but is better omitted in trans.

90. **invidia**: the abl. case. **pellacis**: suggests the means by which Ulysses brought about his death; see on l. 82.

91. **haud ignota**: 'what is well known'; litotes. **superis concessit ab oris:** a euphemism for 'he met his death.'

93. **mecum**: 'alone,' 'by myself.' **insontis**: gives the reason for the indignation.

94. **nec tacui**: referring to the previous line and implying 'nor was I contented with giving vent *by myself* to my indignation.' Notice the change of tense from *trahebam* and *indignabar* to *tacui.* **demens**: 'in my madness,' 'fool that I was.' **me**: with *promisi,* l. 96. **tulisset**: cf. *sic fata ferebant*, l. 34; trans. by 'should' or by Eng. past. For the mood and tense see 187, *b*, i.

95. **remeassem**: for *remeavissem;* see page 67, fn.

96. **promisi me ultorem**: 'I vowed I would avenge him,' 'I vowed myself his avenger.' **odia**: for the plur. see on l. 9.

97. **hinc**: supply *erat;* 'from this (came).'

98. **terrere**: the historical infinitive, translated as though it were the indicative (112.) So *spargere* and *quaerere.*

99. **vulgum**: usually *vulgus* is neuter, here masc. for metrical convenience. **in**: 'among.' **conscius**: 'conscious of guilt,' or, according to some, 'confederate (conspiring) with others.' **quaerere arma**: in order to prevent his own accusation and punishment.

100. **nec enim**: 'and indeed. . . not,' referring back in thought to *prima labes*, l. 97. **Calchante ministro**: 'with Calchas as his accomplice (tool),' the abl. absol. (49.)

101. Sinon artfully breaks off just when he has roused their interest and curiosity. **sed autem**: 'but yet,' a colloquial usage. **quid**: 'why?'

102. **moror**: transitive; supply '*vos*' as object. **uno ordine habetis**: local ablative; 'regard as of one class,' 'regard as alike.'

103. **id**: viz. that I am a Greek; see l. 78. **jamdudum**: 'at once,' lit. 'long since,' implying that it should have been done before this.

104. **velit**: 'would wish' (136, *c*); so *mercentur*. **magno**: 'at a great price' (100). **Atridae**: *i.e.*, Agamemnon and Menelaus; for the form cf. on l. 82.

105-144. *Having roused the interest of the Trojans, Sinon tells how, being condemned to death, he has escaped from the Greeks, and appeals to Priam for pity and mercy.*

105. **vero**: emphasizing *tum;* Sinon's plan of rousing his hearers' curiosity has succeeded. **scitari**: see 22, viii.

106. **tantorum**: 'so great,' as those of Sinon.

107. **ficto pectore**: 'with false heart.'

108. **relicta**: abl. absol.; trans. by infin. coordinate with *moliri.*

109. **longo fessi**: the juxtaposition lends force to the words.

110. **fecissentque utinam!** 'would that they had!' a parenthetic wish (135). **saepe**: '(but as) often,' echoing *saepe* of l. 108.

111. **euntes**: 'as they were (just) departing.'

112. **acernis**: Virgil speaks of different woods in connection with the timbers of the horse, cf. l. 16, l. 185 and l. 258. The particular kind of wood is unimportant, the idea of 'wooden' being chiefly aimed at.

113. **toto aethere**: place where, 'throughout.' See on l. 33; the omission of the prep. is very common with *totus* in prose also.

114. **scitantem**: here practically equal to the future part., 'to consult.' [Some editors read **scitatum**, the supine.] **oracula Phoebi**: the oracle of Phoebus or Apollo at Delphi was, in post-Homeric times, the most famous and influential in Greece.

115. **adytis**: see on l. 33.

116. **sanguine et virgine**: practically the same as *sanguine virginis;* a case of hendiadys (see on l. 319). For the sacrifice of Iphigenia, see page 324. **placastis**: = *placavistis* (page 67, fn.).

117. **quaerendi** : sc. *sunt* ; so with **litandum,** *est*. Trans. by the active voice, 'you must,' etc. ; for *litandum*, see 57 and 203, *d*.

119. **quae vox ut** : 'when this utterance' (172).

121. **parent, poscat** : subj. of indirect question after the idea of *wondering* implied in the *fear* of l. 120. We may supply 'as they wondered (*or* asked),' *or* 'in doubt.' **fata** : probably the subject of *parent* ; what they are making ready is too dreadful to be made definite.

122. **hic** : 'hereupon.' **magno tumultu** : to hide the fact that it was all arranged beforehand with Calchas. **Calchanta** : words of the third declension borrowed from the Greek have often the accus. sing. in *-a*.

123. **quae sint ea numina divum** : 'what is the will of heaven,' 'what mean those revelations of the gods.' Ulysses cautiously avoids asking explicitly 'who is the man ?'

125. **taciti** : 'in silence,' referring to other persons than those who *canebant scelus*. English would use 'or,' not 'and,' in such a case. **ventura** : 'what was to come' (205, *g*).

126. **bis quinos** : the distributive numerals are used in multiplication. **tectus** : either 'hidden (in his tent)' or 'hiding his thoughts.'

128. **vix tandem** : this delay also was to avoid suspicion of collusion with Ulysses.

129. **rumpit vocem** : 'he breaks forth,' 'he breaks into speech.'

130. **quae** : 'what.' **sibi** : see 79.

131. **unius** : in an emphatic position. **conversa tulere** : 'they endured when turned' ; *conversa* with *ea*, the unexpressed antecedent of *quae*.

132. **dies** : see on Caesar, B. G. IV., 36, 2. **parari** : historical inf. ; cf. l. 98.

133. **salsae fruges** : a sacrificial cake of coarse meal and salt was crumbled and sprinkled over the victim's head. **vittae** : white fillets or bands were bound round the heads both of the victims and of those sacrificing. As usual, Virgil refers to Roman, not to Greek, customs.

134. **fateor**: it was an act of sacrilege. **leto**: dative (80, *a*). **vincula rupi**: not to be taken literally, but as meaning merely, 'I made my escape.'

136. **dum vela darent**: 'till they should set sail'; the subj. conveys the idea of a purpose in view, here that of coming forth and making his way to some place of safety (155, *b*). **si forte dedissent**: 'if perchance they did set sail (*or* did so).' **si forte**: it was uncertain whether they would do so without having made the sacrifice appointed. **dedissent**: subj., because part of Sinon's thought in lying concealed (177); pluperf., because his purpose could be carried out only after the Greeks had sailed (187, *b*, i.).

137. **nec mihi . . spes**: 'nor have I . . hope'; sc. *est.* (80, *e*). **patriam**: see 114, i.

138. **exoptatum**: 'for whom I long.'

139. **quos, poenas**: double accus. after *reposcent* (69, vi.); trans. *quos* 'from whom' or 'and from them.' **nostra**: cf. on l. 89.

140. **miserorum**: 'of those hapless ones,' the same persons as *quos.*

141. **quod**: 'wherefore,' adverbial acc. (72). **te**: *i.e.*, Priam; governed by *oro.* **conscia veri**: 'who know the right,' with a double reference to the truth of Sinon's story and the justice of his case.

142. **per . . . quae restet . . . fides**: 'by whatever honor remains'; = *per eam fidem quae restet* (173, *c*). For the subj. see 32. **qua**: fem. of *quis*, indefinite, = 'any.' Sinon has been so badly treated that he doubts the good faith of all mankind.

143. **miserere**: imperative second sing. **laborum**: see 53, *a*.

144. **non digna ferentis**: 'suffering undeservedly.'

145-161. *Sinon's life is spared, and on his being asked the meaning of the wooden horse, he solemnly swears to reveal all out of gratitude.*

145. **lacrimis**: dative; with about the same meaning as 'because of these tears.' **miserescimus ultro**: 'give him our pity also.'

146. **primus**: 'foremost.' **manicas**: those referred to in l. 57, put on him by his Trojan captors. **viro**: dat.; see on *leto*, l. 134.

148. **amissos hinc obliviscere**: 'henceforth give up and forget' (50, iii.); *obliviscor* regularly takes the gen. of persons (53, *a*).

149. **mihique,** etc: freely, 'explain this truthfully that I ask.'

150. **quo**: 'for what purpose,' lit. 'whither,' 'to what end.' **hanc**: trans. as if *hujus*. **quis auctor**: sc. *est.*; 'on whose advice?'

151. **religio**: 'vow,' 'propitiation'; see l. 17.

154. **vos**: object of *testor*. **ignes**: *i.e.*, the sun, moon, and stars. **non violabile**: 'inviolable,' *i.e.*, which may not be sworn falsely by with impunity.

156. **deum**: =*deorum*; cf. on l. 14. The fillets were sacred to the god in honor of whom the offering was made. **hostia**: 'as a victim'; hence this was an oath especially sacred to him.

157. **fas**: sc. *est*. **sacrata jura**: 'the vows I have sworn to,' 'my solemn oaths'; Virgil has in mind probably the *sacramentum* or oath of allegiance of the Roman soldier. Sinon is thus to be no longer a Greek soldier, a friend or confidant of the Greeks, or a citizen of Greece.

158. **odisse**: a defective verb, used in the perfect system with the meaning of the present. **viros**: 'them,' emphatic; the *men* themselves are contrasted with their *plans*.

159. **qua**: neut. plur. acc. of indefinite pron. *quis*; *si qua* freely 'whatever.' **nec ullis**: =*nullis*. **patriae**: gen.; 'of country.'

160. **tu**: *i.e.*, *Troja*. **maneas, serves**: trans. by the imperative (134, i.); *promissis manere* = to abide by promises; local ablative. **servata**: 'when saved.'

161. **si**: 'as surely as'; lit. 'if.' **feram**: fut. indic. (62.) **magna**: acc. plur. (72); trans. freely, 'greatly.'

162-194. *The horse, he states, is a substitute for the Palladium stolen from Troy, but is purposely made too huge to enter the city, lest the Trojans be benefited by its protection.*

162. **coepti belli fiducia**; 'their confidence in beginning the war' or 'the confidence in which the war began.' **coepti**: lit. 'begun.'

163. **auxiliis**: 'in the aid'; local or instrumental abl. **ex quo**: supply *tempore;* 'from the time when,' 'after.' **impius**: a constant epithet, but used with special reference to this act of sacrilege, so *scelerum inventor.*

164. **sed enim**: unusually late in the sentence; *sed* implies that this hope had come to an end; *enim* gives the reason why. Trans. simply 'but.'

165. **fatale. . . Palladium**: the Palladium was a small statue of Pallas which had fallen from heaven in the early days of Troy. So long as the Trojans kept it safe, their city was secure, hence *fatale*, 'fateful.' **avellere**: with *aggressi;* see 22, viii.

166. **summae**: increasing our appreciation of their daring.

168. **virgineas**: indicating what an insult and desecration their touch was. **ausi**: sc. *sunt;* so with *fractae*, l. 170.

169. **ex illo**: referring to *ex quo*, l. 163. **fluere**, etc.: the figure seems to be that of an ebbing tide. For the historical infin. cf. on l. 98.

170. **mens**: on the monosyllabic ending see page 335. **aversa**: sc. *est;* so with *positum*, l. 172.

171. **ea signa**: 'signs of this,' lit. 'those signs.' (205, *c.*)

172. **arsere**: English would insert 'when' before this clause.

173. **arrectis**: 'staring,' lit. 'upraised,' out of indignation. **salsus**: merely a constant epithet of *sudor.* **per**: 'over.'

174. **ipsa**: 'she (*i.e.*, the goddess) herself,' as distinguished from the local indications of her anger just mentioned. **mirabile**: appositive adj. (acc.) modifying the sentence. **dictu**: 'to tell.' (117).

175. **ferens**: 'with,' lit. 'bearing.' **trementem**: *i.e.*, in her wrath.

176. **tentanda**: sc. *esse.*

178. **omina ni repetant**: 'unless they seek fresh omens,' referring to the Roman custom of returning to Rome to repeat the auspices in case of ill-success; for the mood (representing an original fut. ind.) see 187, *b.* **numen reducant quod . . . . avexere**: two interpretations are given, (1) to bring back the deity (*i.e.*, the Palladium) they had carried away (to

Greece); (2) to bring back the divine favor which (when they first came) they bore with them (from Greece). The first forces the meaning of *numen*, while it is unlikely if not impossible that the Palladium should have been already sent to Greece. The second makes both the mood and the tense of *arexere* hard to account for, as the indicative *arexere* cannot be a part of Calchas' prophecy, but is a parenthetic statement of Sinon's. (175, i.) It is possible that l. 179 is an interpolation. **Argis**: see on l. 193.

180. **quod petiere**: 'as to their making for' (198, *d*). **Mycenas**: see on l. 25.

181. **arma**: here with the force of **armatos**. **parant**: the principal verb; 'securing gods to attend them,' means 'winning the favor of the gods again.' **remenso**: with passive force, although deponent.

182. **improvisi**: see 205, *h*.

183. **pro**: lit. 'in behalf of,' *i.e.*, 'in place of' the Palladium, and 'in propitiation of' the offended deity.

184. **triste**: of its results. **quae piaret**: trans. by infin. (26).

185. **tamen**: implies that although a substitute was to be built, it was not to be taken into the city where the Palladium had been. **immensam**: has special emphasis.

186. **caelo**: see on l. 36.

187. **portis**: 'by (*or* at) the gates' (99, ii. *a*). **aut**: couples two similar ideas; **neu**, l. 188, introduces a new thought (28, ii.). **in**: 'within.'

188. **religione**: 'faith,' 'worship,' 'sanctity.' Sinon means that the substitute for the Palladium, if received within the city and honored by the Trojans, would protect them as the Palladium itself had.

189. **violasset**: for the form see p. 67, fn.; for the mood and tense see on *tulisset*, l. 94. Sinon is now quoting Calchas' prophecy; the idea of *saying* is involved in *jussit*, l. 186 (191). **Minervae**: see on l. 31.

190. **di**: contracted for *dei*. **prius**: 'rather,' more lit. 'first,' *i.e.*, before it can come upon you. **omen convertant**: as though a god's wrath, while it had to be satisfied, could be turned aside on others; for the subj. see 135. **ipsum**: *i.e.*, Calchas.

191. **futurum**: sc. *esse;* 'would come.' See on l. 189.

193. **ultro**: 'even,' 'further'; *i.e.*, Asia would not only be freed from a defensive war like the present, but would itself invade Greece; cf. l. 145. **Pelopea moenia**: *i.e.*, of Argos, one of the chief cities of the Peloponnesus, and often put for Greece generally. **bello**: see 103.

194. **ea fata**: referring to *magnum exitium* above. **manere**: notice the change of tense; the verb ('await') carries in itself the reference to the future.

195-233. *Any hesitation remaining after Sinon's artful story, is removed when two sea-serpents appear, destroy Laocoon who had hurled a spear at the wooden horse, and then take refuge in the temple of Pallas.*

195. **insidiis**: abl. of cause.

196. **credita**: sc. *est.* **capti**: sc. *sumus.* **coactis**: 'forced' (44, i. *b*).

197. **quos**: 'we whom.' **Larissaeus**: a stock epithet, without any special force or appropriateness here.

199. **majus**: 'a sight greater' than that of Sinon. **miseris**: 'to the ill-fated (Trojans).'

200. **magis**: with *tremendum.* **improvida**: either expecting no such occurrence, or generally so, cf. l. 54.

201. **ductus**: 'chosen,' lit. 'drawn.' **Neptuno**: dative (79).

202. **sollemnes**: 'wonted,' 'accustomed.' **ad**: 'at.'

203. **per alta**: 'over the deep'; they were first seen far out at sea.

205. **pelago**: 'on the sea'; for the dat. see 78, v. *c*.

206. **quorum**: 'their,' lit. 'whose' (172); in prose it would be the first word.

207. **pars cetera**: 'the rest.'

208. **sinuatque volumine**: freely, 'curving (wreathing) in coils.'

209. **fit**: 'rises'; the nature of the sound is indicated by the repetition of **s**. **salo**: abl. absolute. **tenebant**: 'they were gaining.'

210. **ardentes**: acc. case. **oculos suffecti**: 'their eyes suffused with blood and fire,' more freely, 'with eyes blood-shot and blazing with fire.' For the accusative *oculos*, see on l. 57.

211. **ora**: accusative.

212. **visu**: abl. of cause (96). **agmine**: suggesting the movement of a long column.

213. **Laocoonta**: see on l. 122.

215. **morsu depascitur**: 'biting, feeds upon'; as though the abl. of manner were a present participle. **miseros**: a transferred epithet.

216. **post**: an adverb. **auxilio**: 'to their aid'; dative (81).

218. **bis**: probably once each. **medium**: 'about the waist'; masc. with *Laocoonta* (86, iv. *b*). **collo circum terga dati**: 'encircling his neck with their bodies'; more literally, 'twining their bodies about his neck.' **collo**: dative (78, v. *c*). **circum dati**: =*circumdati*, a middle use (69, vii.).

219. **capite**: referring to both; the plural could not occur in this metre; for the case see 101. **altis**: having much the force of an adverb with *superant*.

220. **simul**: corresponding to *simul*, l. 222.

221. **perfusus vittas**: see on l. 57 and compare l. 210. The priestly office of Laocoon[1] is no protection.

---

[1] A cut of the celebrated Laocoon group by the Rhodian sculptors Agesander, Polydorus and Athenodorus, is given on page 353. Virgil's description should be compared with the sculptural treatment of the same subject.

"Now that we know the group of Laocoōn to have been made some fifty years before Virgil's description of the same subject was written, our comparison of the literary and the sculptural treatment of the same theme is freed from a good deal of vain speculation. The group cannot be intended as an illustration of Virgil's description; and although both are doubtless derived from a common tradition, what we know of Virgil's method in other cases will warn us against assuming any very close imitation of the original from which he copied, especially in the pictorial

223. **quales mugitus cum**: 'such bellowings as when,' for *tales mugitus tollit quales tollit taurus.* [Another reading is **qualis mugitus**, sc. *est.*] **fugit**: perfect (182, *c*).

224. **securim**: accusative; see note on Caesar, B. G. V., 18, 1.

225. **lapsu**: 'gliding'; cf. on l. 215. **summa**: the shrine was on the citadel; cf. l. 41.

227. **sub pedibus**: 'at the feet.' **deae**: evidently the Palladium was not the only statue of the goddess in the citadel. **teguntur**: 'find shelter' (164, iv.).

228. **tum vero**: cf. on l. 105. **novus**: 'new' [or according to some, 'strange']. In l. 212 the Trojans' fear is at the dreadful appearance of the serpents, now their fear is caused by the thought that the serpents are the instruments of the goddess. **cunctis**: dative, freely 'of all' (80, *b*, i.).

229. **merentem**: 'deservedly,' 'duly' (205, *h*).

230. **ferunt**: 'they say,' 'men say,' the subject being indefinite.

231. **qui . . . laeserit**: 'for having struck,' 'in that he pierced'; for the subj. see 171. **tergo**: dative, trans. by 'at.'

232. **ducendum**: sc. *esse.*

233. **numina**: for the plur. see on l. 9. For the broken line cf. l. 66.

---

realization of the scene which must have been in his mind. On the other hand, the description of Virgil does not appear to be derived directly from the group made by Agesander and his colleagues. It is by the succession of the narrative, as Lessing points out, that the poet attains his effect, not by an elaborate description of the pose of his subjects at any dramatic moment. The awful approach of the serpents across the sea, their first attack on the two children, and their turning to Laocoon himself, when he rushes to the aid of his sons, cannot find any expression in sculpture, though on these things the pathos and terror of the poetical description mainly depend. But when we turn to the group itself, we cannot help feeling that the object of the sculptor was not so much to express in marble the story of Laocoön as to make use of the theme as a pretext for a group of figures struggling in the agony of a cruel death."

—E. A. GARDNER.

234-249. *Believing this portent to indicate the goddess' will, we draw the horse within the walls with blind rejoicings.*

234. **dividimus**: the gates of ancient cities were narrow and low, so that the Trojans had to make a breach in the walls. **muros, moenia**: the former 'the walls,' the latter more general, 'the fortifications,' 'the fortified parts.'

235. **accingunt**; usually transitive, here 'gird themselves,' 'set to,' as if *se* were added.

236. **rotarum lapsus**: an abstract expression for 'gliding wheels.' **collo intendunt**: 'stretch on (*i.e.*, fasten to) its neck.' For the datives *pedibus* and *collo* see 78, v. *c*.

239. **contingere**: here 'to lay hold of'; see 22, viii.

240. **illa**: i.e., *machina*. **urbi**: with *illabitur* (78, v. *c*, and vii.).

241. This outburst is natural and effective at such a crisis. **divum**; see on *Danaum*, l. 14. **divum domus**: 'home of our gods'; to the ancients the gods of a city were local, rather than all-powerful, deities; Aeneas was now seeking a new home for the gods of his city, who were homeless like himself.

242. **Dardanidum**: for *Dardanidarum*; see on l. 14.

243. **substitit**: such a stoppage was ominous, according to ancient superstition. **utero**: 'from' not 'in.' **dedere**: see on l. 1.

244. **immemores**: here 'heedless' rather than 'forgetful.'

245. **arce**: see on l. 33.

246. **etiam**: 'too,' *i.e.*, in addition to the warnings just mentioned. **fatis**: either dat. 'for,' *i.e.*, to give utterance to, or abl. of manner 'with.' **Cassandra**: gifted with prophetic power by the god Apollo, who loved her. His love being unrequited, he ordained that her prophecies should never be believed.

247. **credita**: may be taken equally well with *Cassandra* or *ora*. The passive participle is irregularly used as if *credo* were transitive (57). **Teucris**: 'by the Trojans'; dat. not abl. (80, *d*, i.).

248. **deum**: see on l. 14. **quibus esset**: the subjunctive may be explained in two ways, (*a*) as causal, explaining *miseri*, 'in that this was our last day,' (*b*) as concessive, opposed to *festa velamus fronde*, 'although that was our last day' (171).

250-267. *At night the Greek fleet returns; the Greeks in the horse are let out by Sinon, seize the gates, and admit their friends.*

250. **vertitur**: Virgil's idea is that the sky is a hollow sphere, revolving around the earth and bringing darkness or light in its course. **ruit**; 'hastens up'; see on l. 9.

252. **Myrmidonum**: for the Greeks in general.

254. **ibat**: 'was advancing,' 'was on its way.' **navibus**: abl. absolute.

255. **silentia**: for the plural see on *somnos*, l. 9. The quiet of the night is given as much prominence as the moonlight. Both of these aided the Greeks on their way. [Others think that the moon had not yet risen, although it is moonlight in l. 340, and that it was the darkness, not the light, that favored the Greeks.]

256. **regia puppis**: *i.e.*, Agamemnon's, the leader of the Greeks. **cum extulerat. . . . laxat**: both verbs go with *cum*, the principal verb being *ibat*. For the indicative with *cum* see 151, iii. The shifting of tenses is due to the pluperf. (to be translated as if *extulit*) being used to express an instantaneous act, and to the historical pres. being used for vividness' sake.

257. **defensus**: *i.e.*, from discovery by the Trojans. **iniquis**: to the Trojans.

258. **utero**: cf. on l. 33; but see also *lateri*, on l. 19. **Danaos et claustra laxat**: the verb has a different meaning as applied to the two nouns, the peculiarity known as zeugma. The more regular meaning is that with *claustra*.

263. **primus**: 'foremost, *or* first of all' is a better rendering than 'princely,' though neither is satisfactory.

264. **Epeos**: a Greek nom. = *Epeus*.

266. **portis**: cf. on l. 187.

267. **conscia**: meaning that they were aware of the plan and working in harmony with those within.

268-297. *The spirit of Hector appears in a vision to Aeneas, tells him that Troy is doomed, and bids him flee, taking with him the gods of Troy, and seek a new home.*

268. **prima** : the first sleep is the deepest, hence the sweetest (*gratissima*). **mortalibus aegris** : Virgil has always a deep sense of the mystery and sadness of human life, which is here brought into relation with the graciousness of the gods. The phrase also heightens our sympathy for the Trojans.

269. **dono** : ablative (103).

270. **maestissimus** : 'in the deepest grief' ; used appositively. It is rarely, even in poetry, that Latin joins an attributive adjective to a proper name (205, *d*).

272. **ut quondam** : belongs to all the details of this line and the next ; hence to be rendered before *raptatus bigis.* The words imply that his present appearance was exactly that presented by him when dragged at Achilles' chariot. For the events referred to in lines 272-278 see page 325.

273. **trajectus lora** : trans. freely, 'his feet pierced with the thongs,' see 69, vii. **tumentes** : indicating that he was still alive, as the limbs of a dead body would not swell from violence.

274. **mihi** : dat. (80, *b*, iv.). **qualis** : 'in what guise.' **illo** : 'that' or 'the,' with much the force of 'that other' or 'the one we knew.'

275. **redit** : historical pres. ; the scene comes vividly before him. **indutus** : 'clad in,' literally 'having put on himself' (69, vii.). **Achilli** : for the genitive ending, see on *Ulixi*, l. 7.

276. **puppibus** : dat., see on l. 36. Vessels in ancient times, when not in active use, were hauled up on shore, with the prows towards the sea ; the sterns would thus be the part first attacked from land.

277. **barbam, crines** : with *gerens*, to be translated 'with.'

278. **vulnera** : those received when he was dragged around the walls by Achilles. Homer says of the Greeks who crowded round the dead body : "Nor did any stand by but wounded him." **plurima** : 'many' ; trans. with **vulnera** ; see 173, *c*, iii.

279. **ultro**: with *compellare;* 'first,' *i.e.*, of his own motion, without waiting to be addressed. **flens ipse**: with reference to l. 271.

280. **expromere**: implying that the words came with difficulty.

281. **lux**: a common metaphor, here meaning 'defence' or 'safety' rather than 'glory.' **Teucrum**: see on l. 14.

282. **tantae**: 'long' (205, *e*). **tenuere**: understand *te* as its object. Aeneas seems in his dream to have forgotten Hector's death, and to think of him as merely long absent.

283. **exspectate**: to be taken closely with *venis*, but attracted by *Hector* from nom. to voc. **ut**: 'how,' 'with what feelings,' with *aspicimus*, not with *defessi.*

285. **serenos**: of his usual appearance. For the plur. see on l. 9.

287. **ille nihil**: sc. *respondit;* see on l. 42. **me . . moratur**: 'heeds my idle questions,' lit. 'lingers over me,' etc. (203, *b*).

288. **imo**: see 86, iv. *b.*

289. **nate dea**: 'goddess-born'; see p. 325; for *dea*, abl. see 95. **his**: indicating them; for the case cf. on l. 134.

290. **muros**: more forcible than *urbem.* **alta**: with *Troja;* another reading is *alto*, with *culmine.*

291. **sat datum**: sc. *est;* a legal term, used of giving security for a debt; freely 'have had their due.' **dextra**: abl.

292. **possent, defensa fuissent**: for subj. see 61. The difference in tense is caused by the former verb implying *at any time* (past or present). For *fuissent* in place of *essent* see 182, i. **etiam**: 'also,' *i.e.*, as well as by yours; or perhaps 'even.'

293. **Penates**: the guardian spirits of Troy, conceived as protectors of the national hearth; hence associated with Vesta (l. 297), whose 'undying fire' ensured the safety of the city.

294. **comites**: predicative (69, v.); 'as companions'; freely 'to share thy destiny.'

295. **magna**: trans. either 'the mighty city thou shalt build' (173, *c.*, iii.), or 'which thou shalt build in might' (69, v.).

296. **vittas Vestamque**: by hendiadys for 'Vesta with her fillets.'

297. **effert**: it would seem that Hector actually gives these sacred things to Aeneas, and does not merely appear in the dream to do so. The appearance was thus more than a dream.

298-317. *Aeneas awakes, and, finding the city in flames, rushes forth to gather his comrades.*

298. **diverso luctu**: either 'various sounds of grief,' or 'sounds of grief from various parts of the city.'

299. **secreta**: in the predicate; so *obtecta*.

302. **excutior**: 'I rouse myself'; pass. used reflexively (164, iv.).

303. **ascensu supero**: 'climb to,' lit. 'gain by climbing.'

304. **veluti cum**: the comparison instituted is between the bewilderment of Aeneas and of the shepherd, but a further comparison is implied between the din of battle and the sounds of destruction heard by the shepherd.

305. **montano flumine**: 'with its mountain flood (*or* stream)'; the genitive might have been expected.

306. **laeta**: 'glad,' *i.e.*, 'luxuriant.' **boum labores**: a phrase taken from Homer and meaning 'the ploughed fields'; *boum* is the regular form of the gen. plur. of *bos*.

307. **stupet**: with *veluti*, l. 304. **inscius**: 'bewildered,' 'dazed,' *i.e.*, not comprehending it all. **alto vertice**: to harmonize with Aeneas' position, see l. 302.

309. **manifesta fides**: 'the truth (*or* proof) is clear,' *i.e.*, of what was told him in the dream. [Another interpretation supplies *Danaum* with *fides*, meaning 'bad faith.']

310. **dedit ruinam**: 'fell crashing,' lit. 'gave a fall.' Notice how the position of *ampla* heightens the effect of *dedit ruinam*. Deiphobus had married Helen after Paris' death, and his house was the first attacked.

311. **Vulcano superante**: 'as the flames gained the mastery'; a case of metonymy, like *Ucalegon*, l. 312.

312. **Ucalegon** : put for his house. **Sigea freta** : the Hellespont, so called from Sigeum, a promontory at the entrance of the strait. **lata** : expressive of the vastness of the conflagration.

313. **exoritur** : see 12, *a*, ii. *b*. **virum** : see on l. 14.

314. **nec sat rationis** : 'nor yet is there much (lit. sufficient) purpose (*or* sense)' (86. i.). His action is due to passion not to reflection ; cf. *amens*, *ardent animi*, *furor iraque mentem praecipitant*, all expressing the same idea.

315. **glomerare** : see 22, viii. **bello** : 'for war' (81) ; in prose *ad bellum*.

316. **animi** : 'my spirit,' poetic plural, see on l. 9. **mentem praecipitant** : 'drive my reason headlong.'

317. **succurrit** : 'it occurs to me,' 'the thought comes to me' ; its subject is the clause *pulchrum mori in armis*, in which *mori* is the subject of *esse* supplied (110), 'that it is a noble thing to die,' etc. Compare Horace's line, *dulce et decorum est pro patria mori*.

318-369. *Aeneas, learning from Panthus that all is lost, gathers a band of Trojans with whom to make a last desperate resistance. As they advance, they find everywhere grief, terror and death.*

318. **ecce autem** : 'but lo.' **Panthus** : a Greek name, hence the nom. in *-ūs* and the voc. in *-ū*, l. 322. **Achivum** : see on l. 14.

319. **Othryades** : see on l. 82. **arcis** : etc., 'the priest of Phoebus in the citadel,' where several gods had their shrines. By a figure of speech (hendiadys) one idea is presented by means of two ideas connected by *and*.

320. **sacra** : either 'sacred vessels' or perhaps 'the sacred image,' the same as *deos*, by which Phoebus alone is meant.

321. **ipse** : to be taken closely with *manu* ; an indication of the extremity of his peril. **trahit** : another case of zeugma (see on l. 259). Taken literally with *nepotem*, it is very expressive of his rapid flight ; with the other objects it can mean only 'bears.' **cursu** : 'rapidly, hurriedly' (103). **limina** : of the house which Aeneas was just leaving.

322. **quo . . . loco** ; 'how stands the welfare of the state?' lit. 'in what position (is) the chief interest?' **prendimus** : 'are

we seizing,' a remonstrance more lively than 'are we to seize,' implying that if the citadel is being given up, no stand can be made elsewhere against the enemy. [A less likely explanation is to take the line as an inquiry where the Trojans are rallying, 'where is the chief contest? what stronghold are we seizing?']

323. **talia reddit**: 'answered thus'; for the indic. cf. on l. 256.

324. **summa**: 'the crowning,' *i.e.*, 'the last.' **dies**: cf. on l. 132. **ineluctabile tempus**: 'the inevitable hour.'

325. **fuimus**: the verb is emphatic, 'have been,' *i.e.*, 'have had our day,' 'are no more.' **Troes**: is not predicate (10, ii.).

326. **ferus**: emphatic, giving the reason for the action. **omnia**: 'all power.' **Argos**: 'to Argos,' see on l. 193; for the acc. see 125.

327. **incensa**: 'burning': lit. 'fired, *or* set on fire'; its position would warrant our making it a separate clause in translating.

328. **arduus**: predicate with *astans.*

329. **miscet**: 'spreads,' 'scatters.'

330. **portis**: 'at the gates' (78, v. *c*).

331. **milia quot**: for *tot milia quot* (174, ii.); the exaggeration is natural in Panthus' excitement. **magnis**: heightens the effect of *quot milia.* **Mycenis**: see 126.

332. **angusta viarum**: 'the narrow streets,' lit. 'the narrows of the streets'; a peculiar extension of the partitive gen.

333. **ferri acies**: 'keen edge of the sword,' 'the sharp steel.'

334. **neci**: 'for slaughter,' actively not passively (81). **primi**: 'the foremost,' who at least might be expected to offer resistance.

335. **caeco Marte**: 'in the blind fight' (103), *i.e.* 'fighting blindly'; because of the surprise and the absence of any prospect of success.

336. **talibus dictis**: 'at these words.' **numine**: as revealed in Panthus' words. The news of the loss of the citadel has changed the purpose of Aeneas (l. 315).

338. **aethera**: see on *Calchanta*, l. 122.

339. **maximus**: 'most mighty.'

340. **per lunam** : 'in the moonlight.' **oblati** ; see 164, iv.

341. **agglomerant** : understand *se* from l. 339.

342. **illis diebus** : 'during those last days' (131). **forte** : 'as it happened.'

343. **insano** : of its disastrous effect.

344. **gener** : anticipating the relationship he sought.

345. **qui non audierit** : 'in that he did not heed'; cf. on l. 231.

347. **quos**: 'these' (172). **audere in proelia**: '(be) bold for battle.'

348. **super** : adv., 'further;' they had courage already, but Aeneas still further incites them. **his** : sc. *dictis;* 'with these words,' 'thus'.

349. **si vobis**, etc. : 'if your desire is fixed to follow one who dares the utmost.' With *vobis* (dat. of possessor) sc. *est.*

350. **sequi** : cf. on l. 10. **sit** : see 35. **rebus** : 'of affairs'; for the dat. see 80, *e.*

351. **excessere** : alluding to the belief that its gods abandoned a city on the point of capture. See on l. 241.

352. **di** : cf. on l. 190. **quibus** : 'by means of whom.' **steterat** : notice the tense.

353. **incensae** : gains emphasis from being the first word of the line, before a pause ; see on l. 327. **moriamur, ruamus** : *moriamur* is put first (although second in order of time), because it gives the general idea, which is made more definite by *in . . ruamus.*

354. **una** : 'only,' 'one only'; sc. *est.*

355. **animis** : they were filled with courage already, see l. 347 ; Aeneas' words rouse them to fury.

357. **caecos** : 'blindly,' 'recklessly'; cf. l. 335.

358. **siccis** : *i.e.*, thirsting for blood.

359. **in** : 'to meet' or 'to.' **mediaeque**, etc. : 'hold our course through the midst of the city,' seemingly to the citadel. For the gen. see 87.

360. **cava** : 'encircling,' 'enfolding,' abl. with *umbra.* The darkness that, in spite of the moonlight, prevails through the city, increases the horror of the struggle and seems to intensify the sadness of the Trojans' position.

361. **fando** : 'in words'; cf. on l. 6.

362. **explicet, possit** : for the subj. see on *temperet*, l. 8.

364. **plurima** : 'thick,' lit. 'abundant.' **inertia** : 'lifeless'; though many prefer to take it as meaning 'helpless,' with reference to the women and children.

365. **religiosa** : emphasizing the fact that nowhere was refuge found from the slaughter.

366. **dant** : 'pay.' To the Romans a punishment inflicted or suffered is a penalty exacted or paid.

367. **quondam** : 'at times.' **victis** : for the dat. see 80, *b*, i.

369. **luctus** : sc. *est*. **plurima imago** : the sing., like our 'many a sight' ; more freely 'the sight of death at every turn.'

370-401. *Meeting a body of Greeks, Aeneas' followers cut them down, and dressing themselves in the Grecian armor, advance spreading destruction among their enemies.*

371. **Androgeos** : cf. on l. 264. **credens inscius** : 'believing us, in his ignorance,' 'ignorantly deeming us' ; sc. *nos esse*. *Inscius* is emphatic ; see on l. 353.

372. **ultro** : as in l. 279.

373. **nam** : 'why,' remonstrating. **sera** : 'sluggish,' 'laggard,' the effect ascribed to the cause. **tam** : omit in trans. ; cf. l. 282.

374. **rapiunt feruntque** : 'pillage and plunder' ; an echo of the common phrase *ferre et agere*, denoting complete spoliation.

375. **celsis** : a stock epithet without special force here. Others read this line without an interrogation.

376. **dabantur** : note the tense, indicating a suspicious hesitation where an immediate answer was expected.

377. **sensit delapsus** : 'perceived that he had fallen.' If this be the literal translation, then *delapsus* is for *se delapsum esse* ; the omission of *se* and *esse* is common, but the attraction of case rather rare and probably due to Greek influence. [Some take *sensit* absolutely, and *delapsus* as a participle used quite regularly, lit. 'having fallen, he was aware (of it).']

378. **retro** : unnecessary to the sense but adding emphasis. **cum voce** : equivalent to 'and his voice as well.'

379. **aspris** : contracted for *asperis*. **qui** : 'one who.'

380. **humi** : better taken with *pressit* than with *nitens*. **nitens** : 'as he struggles on,' *i.e.*, because of the brambles. **pressit, refugit** : the perf. tense in the former is due to its being prior to *refugit* (178, ii.); in the latter it is similar to the usage in l. 12 (see note) and pictures the man just as the convulsive act of recoiling is finished and he is full of agitation (*trepidus*).

381. **iras** : 'its angry head'; abstract for concrete. For the plur. *vias* and *colla* see on l. 9. **colla** : see 73; not the object of *tumentem*, which is intrans.; but we may translate freely 'puffing out.'

382. **abibat** : notice the tense; 'was making off' (180, *d*).

383. **et** : in prose would come before *densis*. **circumfundimur armis** : 'encircle (them) with arms'; the passive used reflexively; cf. on l. 302.

385. **labori** : 'effort'; for the dat. see 52.

386. **hic** : adverb.

387. **qua** : adverb. **fortuna** : referring to l. 385.

388. **dextra** : agreeing by attraction with the subject (*fortuna*), not with the reflexive. **sequamur** : see 134, *a*; so for *mutemus*, l. 389, and *aptemus*, l. 390.

389. **insignia** : especially the armor of the Greeks (such as helmets and shields), which was different from that of the Trojans.

390. **dolus an virtus** : understand *sit*; 'whether it be craft or courage'; (38; 39, ii.) **in** : 'in the case of,' 'in dealing with.' **requirat** : see 136, *d*.

391. **deinde** : with reference to the time of *sic fatus*.

392. **clipei insigne decorum** : 'the beautifully blazoned shield'; lit. 'the beautiful device of the shield'; *insigne* refers to the device (usually some animal) embossed on the shield. For the acc. see 69, vii.

394. **ipse** : seems here to have the force of 'too.'

395. **laeta** : see 205, *h*. **recentibus** : 'fresh-won.'

396. **Danais** : dative (78, v. *c*). **haud numine nostro** : 'under auspices (lit. divine favor) not our own.' The Trojans had been abandoned by their own gods (l. 351), and now by putting on

Greek armor they seemed to be enjoying the protection of alien gods, but only for a time (l. 402).

398. **Orco** : 'to Pluto,' *i.e.*, 'to death' ; for the dat. see on l. 36.

399. **alii** : followed by *pars = alii.* **cursu** : 'in haste.'

401. **scandunt** : for the plural verb with the sing. subject (*pars*) compare l. 32 (p. 176, N.B.). **nota** : suggesting that it is from unknown evils and the uncertainty of the night they are fleeing. **conduntur** : see 164, iv.

402-437. *At last, while attempting to rescue Cassandra, Aeneas' band is overwhelmed by the Greeks ; Aeneas himself escapes and goes to Priam's palace.*

402. **Heu . . divis** : 'Alas, none may trust at all to the gods against their will.' See on l. 396. **nihil** : adverbial (72). **fas fidere** : sc. *est* (110). **divis** : dative (52).

403. **Priameia** : 'daughter of Priam.'

404. **templo adytisque** : the latter is the inner sanctuary. Aeneas evidently had now reached the citadel.

405. **tendens** : 'straining' ; common in the strength of stretching out the hands, and here put in place of *tollens* because looking forward to *palmas*, l. 406. **ardentia** ; in indignant protest.

406. **arcebant** : so that she could not raise them ; hence 'confined, *or* restrained,' rather than 'bound.'

407. **non tulit** : 'could not brook (*or* bear).' Coroebus was betrothed to her, see lines 342-344. **furiata specie** : abl. absol. ; 'his mind in a frenzy.'

408. **periturus** : 'to die' (122) ; cf. l. 47. **in** : see 78, v. *b*.

409. **densis armis** : abl. ; compare l. 383. [According to some, dat., 'into the thick of the fight' (78, v. *c*).]

410. **hic primum** : implying that this was the beginning of their reverses ; notice *tum*, l. 413, and *etiam*, l. 420, answering to *primum*. **delubri** : the same as the *templo* of l. 404.

411. **nostrorum** : 'of our own people (*or* friends).' **miserrima** : because caused by their own countrymen.

412. **facie** : 'because of,' etc. (96). **errore jubarum** : 'the mistake caused by,' etc.

413. **gemitu . . . ira** : 'with a cry of rage at the loss of the maiden'; another case of hendiadys. For the partic. suggesting an abstract idea see 205, *i*. For the gen. see 85, ii.

414. **acerrimus** : 'fiercest (of all)'; it was he who was seeking to carry off Cassandra as his prize.

416. **adversi** : in the predicate with *confligunt*. **quondam** : as in l. 367. **rupto** : 'when . . . bursts forth,' the middle use.

418. **equis** : with *laetus* 'exulting in' (107, iii.); the winds are often spoken of fancifully as borne by horses or in chariots.

420. **si quos** : 'all whom,' 'whomsoever,' lit. 'if any.'

421. **tota urbe** : trans. by 'throughout' (127, ii.).

422. **primi** : see 205, *a*. The Greeks with Ajax and the Atridae seemingly had taken Aeneas' followers for another band of plundering Greeks, disputing with them for the spoils.

423. **ora . . . signant** : 'mark the different accent on our lips'; lit. 'the lips differing in tone.' A different dialect rather than a different language seems to be meant.

425. **Divae** : that is, Pallas or Minerva; compare l. 404.

426. **unus** : intensive, with the superlative, like our 'very' or 'by far.'

428. **dis aliter visum** : sc. *est*, 'the gods willed otherwise' than one would expect from his uprightness. Compare 'Heaven's ways are not as our ways.' This is another instance of that quality of Virgil spoken of on l. 268.

429. **sociis** : the *nostrorum* of l. 411. **plurima pietas** : 'all thy goodness.'

430. **labentem texit** : 'protect in thy fall,' meaning 'save from falling'; cf. *euntes*, l. 110. **infula** : cf. on l. 221.

431. **extrema flamma** : 'death flames'; the burning city is to his friends a funeral pyre. This appeal by Aeneas is far more impressive than one to the Trojans now listening to his story would have been.

433. **vitavisse**: the subject, *me*, left to be gathered from the context, as often in poetry (18, x.). **vices**: 'encounters' (*i.e.*, changing blows), or 'chances of war,' are both possible renderings. **Danaum**: with both *tela* and *vices* (84).

434. **ut caderem**: better taken with *si fata fuissent* (equivalent to a verb of determining) than with *meruisse* (196, *b*). **divellimur**: 'we tear ourselves,' middle or reflexive use.

436. **gravior**: 'burdened,' the comparative having really an intensive force (98, vi.). **tardus**: 'stiff,' 'crippled.' **Ulixi**: subjective genitive, 'dealt by.'

437. **vocati**: agreeing with the subject of *divellimur*. **clamore**: 'by the shouting' not 'with shouts.'

438-452. *At Priam's palace Aeneas finds a fierce struggle going on, the Greeks trying to scale the battlements and to force the doors, the Trojans resisting.*

438. **vero**: indicating that something important is to be told, that some crisis has been reached; cf. ll. 105 and 309. **pugnam**: depending on *cernimus*, l. 441. **nusquam**: 'no where else,' that is, the struggle here is so intense that it seems impossible there should be any left to fight elsewhere.

439. **forent**: the imperf. subj. of *sum* has also *forem, fores, foret* and *forent* for *essem*, etc. For the mood see 68. **nulli**: 'no others.'

440. **sic**: looking back to *ceu . . . urbe*; omit in trans. **Martem indomitum**: 'a stubborn fight,' repeating the idea of *ingentem pugnam*, after the parenthesis.

441. **acta testudine**: 'under cover of a roof of shields,' lit. 'the *testudo* being advanced.' For the *testudo* see on Caesar, B. G. V., 9, 7, page 86. Tennyson probably had this passage in mind when he wrote:

> "Heroes tall,
> Dislodging pinnacle and parapet,
> Upon the tortoise creeping to the wall."

The assault is two-fold: an attempt to scale the walls, 442-449, 458-468; and an attempt to force the gates, 449-450, 469-485. The former is referred to in the words *ad tecta ruentes*, the latter in the words *obsessum . . limen*.

442. **parietibus**: local abl. or dat. **sub**: 'hard by,' 'close to'; the daring Greeks do not seek out weak parts to attack, but assail the wall where it is strongest.

443. **gradibus**: see 107, ii. **ad tela**: 'against (*or* to ward off) the weapons.'

444. **protecti**; 'to protect themselves,' 'for protection'; lit. 'thus protected,' with proleptic force. **prensant**: see p. 76, fn.

445. **contra**: an adverb. **tecta domorum culmina**: 'the covered roof of the house,' 'the covering of the house roof'; for the plural see on l. 9.

446. **quando**: 'since.' **ultima**: 'the end', 'the last extremity.'

447. **extrema in morte**: 'on the point of death' (86, iv. *b*). **his telis**: 'with these as weapons,' predicative (cf. 55, v.).

448. **veterum,** etc.: emphasizing the sadness of the position, where all that is glorious or dear to the Trojans is lost.

449. **alii**: *i.e.*, of the Trojans. **imas**: 'beneath,' *i.e.*, at the foot of the walls, on top of which are the defenders just mentioned.

450. **obsedere**: 'block, *or* beset,' to prevent their being forced in. In l. 441 the same word is used of the besiegers.

451. **instaurati**: sc. *sunt*. **animi**: 'our spirit.' Aeneas returns to his original purpose (l. 315) from which he had been diverted (l. 337). **succurrere**: depending on *instaurati animi* (22, viii.). **tectis**: dative (52).

452. **vim**: 'force,' 'might.'

453-468. *Entering by a secret postern, Aeneas mounts to the roof. A tower is overturned upon the Greeks below, but without checking their attack.*

453. **limen erat,** etc.: 'there was an entrance by (lit. and) a secret door; a wonted passage connecting, one with another, the parts of Priam's palace, and a postern gate,' or 'a gate secluded in the rear.' The fourfold terms describe one and the same entrance. *Pervius usus*, lit. 'the custom of a thoroughfare,'

a Virgilian way of saying 'an accustomed thoroughfare.' [*Relicti* is also taken as 'left at the time of building,' or 'overlooked by the enemy.']

455. **infelix**: she was the widow of Hector. **dum regna manebant**: as in l. 22.

456. **saepius**: 'often and often,' 'time and again,' stronger than *saepe*. **incomitata**: it would not have been proper for her to go forth without her attendants, had not this secret passage made Priam's and Hector's palaces practically one.

457. **soceros**: Hector's parents, Priam and Hecuba. **avo**: cf. on l. 36. **trahebat**: he was too small to take equal steps with her.

460. **turrim**: depending on *aggressi*, l. 463. The tower stood flush with the front of the wall, not back from it. **summis tectis**: 'from the top of the roof,' or perhaps 'with its lofty roof.'

461. **eductam**: 'rising.'

462. **solitae**: sc. *sunt*, a semi-deponent; it agrees with the nearest of its three subjects, *Troja*, *naves*, *castra*.

463. **ferro**: here meaning 'iron bars *or* levers.' **qua**: etc.,—'where the high floor afforded feeble joinings,' referring probably to the place where the tower was built into the roof of the palace.

464. **convellimus**: present tense of a labored action, taking time.

465. **impulimus**: perfect tense of a single sudden act. **ruinam trahit**: 'comes crashing down'; cf. *ruinam dedit*, l. 310.

469-505. *Pyrrhus at last cuts his way through the doors into the palace, where all is confusion, and where the Greeks rushing in have at their mercy Priam and his household.*

469. **vestibulum**: the space before the door. **primo**: freely 'very' (86, iv. *b*). **Pyrrhus**: Achilles' son, who, on his father's death, was brought to Troy from Scyros, his mother's home.

470. **exsultat**: probably referring to both his actions and his state of mind. **telis et luce aena**: hendiadys (see on l. 319) for 'weapons of gleaming bronze.'

471. **in lucem**: grammatically with *convolvit*, l. 474, but so far from this word that it practically is independent, 'coming to the light.' **pastus**: from *pasco;* 'that has fed upon,' middle use (69, vii.). Virgil's idea is that the poison of the serpent is derived from noxious plants it eats, and that in spring it is most venomous.

472. **frigida**: with *bruma* not *terra.* **tumidum**: 'swollen,' apparently with the poison accumulated during its torpor.

473. **juventa**: 'with youth (renewed).'

475. **arduus ad solem**: 'uprising to the sun.' This is not the same as *in lucem*, l. 471, which refers to its coming out from beneath the earth. **linguis micat trisulcis**: cf. Tennyson,

> "Nor cared the serpent at thy side
> To flicker with his double (*first edition*, treble) tongue."

ore: 'in his mouth' (127, ii.).

477. **Scyria**: see on l. 469.

478. **succedunt tecto**: 'they climb to the roof.'

479. **dura**: emphasizing the resistance to be overcome.

480. **limina**: here the doors themselves. **perrumpit, vellit**: present of an action in progress, *i.e.*, an attempted action (179, *d*). **cavavit**: l. 481, the perf. of the finished act, the act succeeded in. **cardine**: the ancient door swung on a post inserted in sockets in the lintel and threshold.

481. **aeratos**: notice the emphatic position (see on l. 353); so *robora*, l. 482.

482. **dedit fenestram**: 'has made an opening.' **lato ore**: 'wide-mouthed' (105).

483. **atria longa**: the usual plan of the ancient Greek or Roman house was a succession of large courts or halls with smaller rooms lying on each side.

484. **veterum penetralia**: the pathos is heightened by the suggestion that this privacy, now ruthlessly violated, had been respected by a loyal people for so many generations.

485. **armatos**: the guards of the palace; see ll. 449, 450.

487. **miscetur**: 'is all in confusion with.' **cavae aedes**: the inner chambers where the women of the household lived.

488. **aurea**: if this is not a constant epithet, its force must lie in the contrast between the distracted house of Priam and the bright stars where dwelt the ever-blessed gods.

490. **oscula figunt**: by way of farewell.

491. **vi patria**: 'with his father's might.' Achilles was the greatest warrior of the Greeks. **claustra**: the bars that still remained after an opening had been cut in the door.

492. **ariete crebro**: 'with incessant blows of the ram. As a matter of fact the battering ram belongs to a later age.

494. **fit via vi**: 'force makes a way.' **aditus**: the object of *rumpunt*. (69, i. *b*).

496. **non sic**: 'not so (furiously),' implying that the simile is not quite adequate.

497. **exiit, evicit**: for the tense cf. *fugit*, l. 223.

498. **cumulo**: 'in a towering mass' (103). **in**: 'over.'

501. **nurus**: must here include the fifty daughters of Priam; see on l. 503. **per**: 'among.'

502. **foedantem**: of Priam alone. That these were the altars of Priam's own hearth makes his death more pitiful.

503. **illi**: Homer tells of the fifty chambers in Priam's house for his fifty sons and their wives, and fifty for his fifty daughters and their husbands. **spes tanta**: 'that large hope'; cf. 205, *e*.

504. **barbarico**: to the Greeks (whom the Roman writers imitated) all not Greek were barbarians, and Aeneas here is made to speak from Virgil's point of view. **postes**: in restrictive apposition to *thalami*.

Spear.

VOCABULARY TO VIRGIL, AENEID, II.

1–505.

A

ā, **ab**, (**abs**), prep. with abl., *from, away from; on the side of, on; after, since; by.*

ab-eō, **-īre**, **-iī** (**-īvī**), **-itum**, *go from, go away, depart, vanish.*

abi-ēs, **-etis**, f., *fir-tree; fir.*

ac, *and, and further.*

Acamās, **antis**, m., a Greek.

ac-cingō, **ere**, **-cīnxī**, **-cīnctum**, *gird on;* reflex., *gird one's self.*

ac-cipiō, **ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, *receive, take; hear; welcome.*

accommodō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *fit.*

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, *sharp; eager, violent, fierce, keen, bitter.*

acernus, **a**, **um**, *of maple, maple.*

Achāicus, **a**, **um**, *Achaean, Grecian.*

Achillēs, **is**, m., the bravest of the Greeks against Troy.

Achīvus, **a**, **um**, *Achaean, Grecian;* plur., as subst., *the Greeks.*

aciēs, **ēī**, f., *edge* (of a sword); *line of battle, line, battle.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards; against; at, on; according to.*

ad-dō, **ere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, *add, give, attach, join.*

adhūc, adv., *hither; hitherto, as yet; still, yet.*

aditus, **ūs**, m., *entrance, approach.*

adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, *be present, be at hand, be near, be at.*

adversus, **a**, **um**, *facing, face to face, opposing, in opposition.*

adytum, **ī**, n., *the innermost part of a temple, sanctuary, shrine.*

aedēs, **is**, f. (sing.), *temple;* (plur.), *house, court.*

aedificō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *build, construct.*

aeger, **gra**, **grum**, *ill, weary, sad.*

Aenēās, **ae**, m., *Aeneas*, the hero of the Aeneid.

aēnus, **a**, **um**, *of bronze.*

aequō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *make equal; measure, match, equal.*

aequor, **oris**, n., *sea.*

aequus, **a**, **um**, *level; impartial, righteous;* the neut. as subst., **aequum**, **ī**, n., *justice, right.*

aerātus, **a**, **um**, *of bronze; bronze-plated; bronze-clad.*

aeternus, **a**, **um**, *eternal, everlasting, undying.*

aether, **eris**, m., *the upper air, the heavens, the sky; heaven.*

aevum, **ī**, n., *age, years.*

afflīctus, **a**, **um**, *cast down; wretched.*

ager, **agrī**, m., *land; field, country.*

agger, **eris**, m., *mound, bank, embankment, dyke.*

agglomerō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *attach, join.*

ag-gredior, **ī**, **-gressus sum**, *attack; attempt, essay, undertake.*

agitātor, **ōris**, m., *driver, charioteer.*

agitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *drive, hunt.*

agmen, **minis**, n., *train, course; throng, column, band, array.*

a-gnōscō, **ere**, **-gnōvī**, **-gnitum**, *recognize.*

agō, **ere**, **ēgī**, **āctum**, *drive, impel, urge; bring up.*

āiō, defective vb. (chiefly in the forms *āit, āiunt*), *say, speak.*

Ājāx, **ācis**, m., a Greek warrior.

aliquī, **qua**, **quod**, indef. adj., *some.*

aliquis, **qua**, **quid**, indef. pron., *some one;* also as adj., *some.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise;* **haud aliter**, *just so.*

alius, **a**, **ud**, *another, other;* in plur., *others; some . . others.*

altus, **a**, **um**, *high, lofty, stately; deep;* neut. as subst., **altum**, **ī**, n., *the deep, the sea.*

alvus, **ī**, f., *belly, body.*

ambiguus, **a**, **um**, *doubtful; obscure, dark, mysterious.*

āmēns, **entis**, *beside one's self, distracted, frantic; amazed.*

amīcus, **a**, **um**, *friendly, kindly,* favoring.

amīcus, **ī**, m., *friend.*

ā-mittō, **ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, *let go, give up; lose.*

amnis, **is**, m., *stream, river.*

amor, **ōris**, m., *love, longing, desire.*

am-plector, **ī**, **-plexus sum**, *wind around, encircle; embrace, cling.*

amplus, **a**, **um**, *large, spacious; splendid, glorious, lordly.*

an, conj., *or; whether.*

Anchīsēs, **ae**, m., the father of Aeneas.

Androgeōs, **ō**, m., a Greek.

Andromachē, **ēs**, f., wife of Hector.

anguis, **is**, m., *snake, serpent.*

angustus, **a**, **um**, *narrow;* neut. as subst., **angustum**, **ī**, n., *a narrow place.*

anima, **ae**, f., *air, wind, blast; breath, life; spirit, shade.*

animus, **ī**, m., *soul, mind, will, heart, impulse, feeling, inclination; courage; passion, wrath.*

annus, **ī**, m., *year; season.*

ante, prep. with acc., *before;* adv., *before, formerly, sooner.*

antīquus, **a**, **um**, *old, ancient, belonging to ancient times; former.*

aper-iō, **īre**, **-uī**, **-tum**, *lay open, open up, open.*

Apoll-ō, **-inis**, m., the god *Apollo.*

appāreō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, *appear, come in sight, be visible, be open to sight.*

aptō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *fit, put on.*

apud, prep. with acc., *with, among, by, near, at.*

āra, **ae**, f., *altar.*

arbor, **-oris**, f., *tree, wood.*

arceō, **ēre**, **uī**, *confine, bind.*

ārdēns, **entis**, *burning, glowing, gleaming, flashing; fiery, eager.*

ārdeō, **ēre**, **ārsī**, **ārsum**, *burn, be ablaze, blaze; be eager, long*

arduus, **a**, **um**, *high, aloft.*

Argīvus, **a**, **um**, *of Argos, Argive; Grecian;* masc. plur. as subst., **Argīvī**, *the Argives, the Greeks.*

Argolicus, **a**, **um**, *of Argos, Argolic; Grecian.*

Argos, n. (only nom. and acc.), also plur., **Argī**, **ōrum**, m., *Argos,* a city in the Peloponnesus.

ari-ēs, **-etis**, m., *battering-ram.*

arma, **ōrum**, n., plur., *arms, weapons, armor; armed men.*

armātus, **a**, **um**, part. of **armō**, *armed;* masc. as subst., **armātus**, **ī**, m., *an armed man, soldier.*

armentum, **ī**, n., *cattle; herd.*

armi-ger, **-gerī**, m., *armor-bearer.*

armipot-ēns, **-entis**, *powerful in arms, warlike.*

armō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *arm, equip.*

arrēctus, **a**, **um**, part. of **arrigō**, *erect, rising, lifted up; pricked up, attentive, listening.*

ars, **artis**, f., *art, skill; artifice, craft, cunning, trick, guile.*

arti-fex, **-ficis**, m., *craftsman, artist; schemer, plotter, trickster.*

artus, **ūs**, m., *joint; limb.*

artus, **a**, **um**, part. of **arceō**, *confined; close, tight, close-fitting.*

arvum, **ī**, n., *field; land; shore.*

arx, **arcis**, f., *citadel, stronghold; height, summit.*

a-scendō, **ere**, **-scendī**, **-scēnsum**, *climb, mount, ascend.*

ascēnsus, ūs, m., *climbing, ascent.*

Asia, ae, f., *Asia Minor; Asia.*

asper, era, erum, *rough, thorny; harsh, bitter, fierce, cruel.*

a-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *behold, see.*

aspīrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *breathe upon; favor, smile on.*

as-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *agree, consent, approve.*

ast, conj., another form of **at**.

a-stō, -stāre, -stitī, *stand.*

astrum, ī, n., *a star;* **sub astra**, *to heaven.*

Astyan-ax, -actis, m., the son of Hector.

at or **ast**, conj., *but, yet, still, however, moreover; now.*

āter, tra, trum, *black, dark, sad, gloomy.*

atque or **ac**, conj., *and, and also, and further, and in fact.*

Atrīdēs, ae, m., *a son of Atreus.*

ātrium, ī, n., *hall, court.*

attollō, ere, *lift up, raise; build.*

auctor, ōris, m., *adviser, counsellor.*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture; be bold* or *daring.*

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear, listen* or *hearken to; heed.*

aura, ae, f., *air, breeze; sky, upper world, open air; light;* **ferre sub auras**, *bring to light.*

aurātus, a, um, *gilded, adorned with gold.*

aureus, a, um, *golden; glittering.*

auris, is, f., *ear.*

aurum, ī, n., *gold.*

Auster, trī, m., *the south wind;* in general, *a gale.*

aut, *or;* **aut—aut**, *either—or.*

autem, *but, however; now, again.*

Automedōn, ontis, m., the charioteer of Achilles.

auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help, assistance; resources.*

ā-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry away;* in pass., *be gone, depart.*

ā-vellō, ere, -vellī (-vulsī), -vulsum, *tear from* or *away.*

āversus, a, um, *turned away; estranged, alienated, hostile.*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

B

barba, ae, f., *beard.*

barbaricus, a, um, *barbaric.*

Bēlīdēs, ae, m., *son of Belus.*

bellum, ī, n., *war, warfare; combat.*

bīgae, ārum, f. plur., *pair of horses, span; (two-horse) chariot.*

bipatēns, entis, *opening two ways, double; wide open.*

bipennis, e, *two-edged;* as subst., **bipennis, is**, f., *battle-axe, axe.*

bis, adv., *twice.*

bōs, bovis, m.

breviter, adv., *briefly.*

brūma, ae, f., *winter solstice; winter.*

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall; set, sink; perish, die.*

caecus, a, um, *blind, blinded; aimless, confused; hidden, secret.*

caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesum, *cut; cut down; slay, slaughter.*

caelum, ī, n., *the sky, heavens.*

caerulus, a, um, *dark, dark green.*

Calchās, antis, m., a seer among the Greeks before Troy.

campus, ī, m., *plain, field.*

canō, ere, cecinī, *sing; foretell, forebode; tell of, proclaim, spread abroad.*

capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, *take, seize, lay hold of; ensnare, delude.*

captus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*

cap-ut, -itis, n., *head.*

Capys, yos, m., one of the Trojans.

card-ō, -inis, m., *hinge.*

careō, ēre, uī, itum, *be without, be free from.*

carīna, **ae**, f., *keel; ship, vessel.*

Cassandra, **ae**, f., a daughter of Priam.

cassus, **a**, **um**, *deprived, bereft.*

castra, **ōrum**, n. plur., *camp, encampment.*

cāsus, **ūs**, m., *fall, downfall, ruin; misfortune, calamity, mishap.*

caterva, **ae**, f., *crowd, train, throng.*

catulus, **ī**, m., *whelp, cub.*

causa, **ae**, f., *cause, reason.*

caverna, **ae**, f., *cavern, cavity.*

cavō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *hollow out, make an opening in.*

cavus, **a**, **um**, *hollow; empty, vain.*

celsus, **a**, **um**, *lofty, high.*

centum, indecl. num. adj., *hundred.*

cernō, **ere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *see, behold, perceive.*

certō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *contend, strive, vie with, rival.*

certus, **a**, **um**, perf. part. pass. of **cernō**, *resolved; certain, fixed, assured; steady, unfaltering.*

cervīx, **īcis**, f., *neck.*

cessō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *stop, cease, slacken, abate; be idle.*

cēterus, **a**, **um**, *the rest of, other.*

ceu, adv., *as, like; as if.*

cieō, **ciēre**, **cīvī**, **citum**, *move, stir; rouse.*

cin-is, **-eris**, m., *ashes.*

circum, adv. and prep. with acc., *around, about, near.*

circum-dō, **-dare**, **-dedī**, **-datum**, *put around, encircle.*

circum-fundō, **ere**, **-fūdī**, **-fūsum**, *pour around;* in pass., *surround, encompass, encircle.*

circumfūsus, **a**, **um**, part. of **circumfundō**, *encircling, gathered round, thronging about.*

circum-spiciō, **ere**, **-spexī**, **-spectum**, *look about upon, survey.*

circumvolō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *fly* or *flutter around, hover around.*

cīvis, **is**, m. and f., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*

clādēs, **is**, f., *slaughter, havoc, carnage; disaster.*

clāmor, **ōris**, m., *shout, shouting; cry, shriek; applause; noise, din.*

clangor, **ōris**, m., *clang, clash, blare; noise, din.*

clārēscō, **ere**, **clāruī**, *grow clearer; grow louder.*

clāssis, **is**, f., *fleet, squadron.*

claustra, **ōrum**, n. plur., *barriers, bars.*

clipeus, **ī**, m., *shield.*

coepī, **isse**, **coeptus sum**, *begin.*

cō-gnōscō, **ere**, **-gnōvī**, **-gnitum**, *learn, hear of, recognize; understand, know.*

cōgō, **ere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, *collect; compel, force.*

col-ligō, **ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctum**, *bring together, collect, assemble.*

collum, **ī**, n., *neck.*

coluber, **brī**, m., *serpent, snake.*

comāns, **antis**, *plumed, crested.*

com-es, **-itis**, m. and f., *companion, comrade; attendant.*

comitor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *accompany, attend, follow.*

commendō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *commend, entrust.*

compāgēs, **is**, f., *joint, seam, fastening.*

compellō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *address, accost, speak to.*

com-plector, **ī**, **-plexus sum**, *enfold, embrace.*

compleō, **ēre**, **ēvī**, **ētum**, *fill.*

compositō, adv., *according to agreement, as was agreed.*

com-primō, **ere**, **-pressī**, **-pressum**, *check, repress, stay.*

con-cēdō, **ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, *depart, withdraw, leave.*

concilium, **ī**, n., *council.*

conclāmō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *cry out; shout aloud.*

concrētus, **a**, **um**, part. of **concrēscō**, *matted, clotted.*

con-currō, **ere**, **-currī** (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum**, *run* or *rush together.*

con-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide, conceal, bury.*

cōnfertus, a, um, part. of **cōnferciō**, *crowded together, in close array.*

cōn-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *pierce.*

cōn-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *clash together, contend, struggle.*

con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *encounter, meet, be matched with.*

cōnsanguinitās, tātis, f., *kinship, blood relationship.*

cōnscius, a, um, *conscious, confederate ; conscious of guilt.*

cōn-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow, follow up, pursue.*

cōn-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *fasten ; weave ;* with **proelium**, *join, engage in.*

cōnsilium, ī, n., *plan, purpose, design ; counsel, advice ; council.*

cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, *take one's stand, halt, stop ; stand.*

cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*

con-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, *weave together ; build, frame, construct.*

con-ticēscō, ere, -ticuī, *become silent, be hushed, hold one's peace.*

con-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *touch ; defile, pollute.*

con-torqueō, ēre, -torsī, -tortum, *turn, twist, hurl.*

contrā, adv., *opposite, over against ; on the other hand.*

contrārius, a, um, *contrary, opposing.*

con-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tear away, tear down, wrench off.*

conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn ; turn around ; direct ; change.*

Coroebus, ī, m., a Phrygian.

corpus, oris, n., *body, frame ; figure, form ; dead body, corpse.*

cor-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *seize, snatch up, grasp.*

coruscus, a, um, *waving, flickering ; flashing, sparkling.*

costa, ae, f., *rib ; side.*

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, incessant, numerous.*

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *believe, trust, put faith in ; suppose.*

crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *be born, arise, grow ;* **crētus**, *sprung from, descended from.*

crīmen, minis, n., *charge, accusation ; crime, fault, offence, guilt.*

crīnis, is, m., *hair, locks, tresses.*

crūdēlis, e, *cruel, hard-hearted ; bitter, violent.*

cruentus, a, um, *bloody, bloodstained, gory.*

culmen, minis, n., *top, summit, roof, house-top ; height, pinnacle.*

culpa, ae, f., *fault, guilt, offence.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

cum, conj. *when, since, while, although.*

cumulus, ī, m., *heap, mass, pile.*

cūnctus, a, um, *all, the whole.*

cupīdō, -inis, f., *desire, longing.*

cupio, ere, īvī (iī), ītum, *desire, be eager, wish, long.*

cūr, adv., *why ?*

currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run, hasten ; flow ; skim, glide over.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running, course, speed.*

curvus, a, um, *curved, winding.*

cusp-is, -idis, f., *point ; spear-point, spear.*

cust-ōs, -ōdis, m., *guard.*

D

Danaus, a, um, *of Danaus*, an ancient king of Argos, hence, *Grecian ;* as subst., **Danaī, ōrum**, m. plur., *the Greeks.*

Dardania, ae, f., a poetic name for Troy.

Dardanidēs, ae, m., *a son* or *descendant of Dardanus ; Trojan ;* the plur., *Trojans.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, down from ; of, out of ; concerning.*

dea, ae, f., *goddess.*

decem, *ten.*

decōrus, a, um, *beautiful.*

dē-currō, ere, -cucurrī or **currī, -cursum**, *run down, hasten.*

decus, oris, n., *ornament, adornment; glory, honor.*

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *defend, guard, protect.*

dēfessus, a, um, part. of **dēfetiscor**, *worn out, weary, fatigued.*

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, be wanting.*

deinde, adv., *thence; thereupon, then; next, after that.*

Dēiphobus, ī, m., a son of Priam.

dē-lābor, ī, -lāpsus sum, *fall.*

dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, select.*

dē-litēscō, ere, -lituī, *hide, lie hidden, lurk.*

dēlūbrum, ī, n., *shrine, temple.*

dēmēns, entis, *out of one's senses, mad, distracted.*

dē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send down, send; let fall.*

dēnique, adv., *at length, at last, finally.*

dēnsus, a, um, *dense, crowded; serried.*

dē-pascō, ere, -pāvī, -pastum, (also dep.), **dē-pascor, ī, -pastus sum**, *feed upon, devour.*

dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside, put away.*

dēsertus, a, um, part. of **deserō**, *deserted, forsaken, abandoned; desert, uninhabited, solitary.*

dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make fast; design, destine, appoint.*

dēsuper, adv., *from above; above.*

deus, ī, m., *god, deity.*

dē-volvō, ere, -volvī, -volūtum, *roll down.*

dexter, tra, trum, *right, on the right; favorable, propitious;* fem. as subst., *the right hand.*

dicō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, speak.*

dictum, ī, n., *word, utterance.*

diēs, ēī, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), *day, daytime; time.*

dif-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, *flee in different directions, scatter.*

dī-gerō, ere, -gessī, -gestum, *sort, arrange; explain, interpret, expound.*

dignus, a, um, *worthy, deserving; suitable, fit, meet, proper.*

dīrus, a, um, *dreadful, awful, horrible; ill-omened, dire.*

dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *depart, withdraw from, go away, leave.*

discō, ere, didicī, *learn, find out.*

discors, cordis, *discordant; different, differing.*

dīva, ae, f., *goddess.*

dī-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, *rend asunder, tear apart, tear away.*

dīversus, a, um, part. of **dīvertō**, *apart; different, various.*

dīv-es, -itis (**dītior, dītissimus**), *rich, wealthy, abounding in.*

dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, break, open; sunder.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine, sacred, of deity; inspired, prophetic.*

dīvus, a, um, *divine, godlike;* as subst., **dīvus, ī**, m., *god.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, grant, offer; give forth, utter; cause;* with **vela**, *spread* or *set* (*sail*); with **poenās**, *pay.*

Dolopes, um, m. plur., a people of Thessaly.

dolor, ōris, m., *sorrow, pain, grief, woe; resentment, vexation.*

dolus, ī, m., *trick, wile, stratagem, craft, treachery, deception.*

dominor, ārī, ātus sum, *be master, be lord; rule, hold sway.*

dom-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *tame, conquer, subdue, overcome.*

domus, ūs, and **ī**, f., *house, home, abode; house, family, race.*

dōnec, conj., *as long as, while; till, until.*

dōnum, ī, n., *gift, present; offering.*

Dōricus, a, um, *Doric;* hence, *Grecian, Greek.*

dracō, ōnis, m., *serpent, dragon.*

dubius, a, um, *uncertain, doubtful.*

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead, draw; heave.*

ductor, ōris, m., *leader.*

dūdum, adv., *a while ago, but now, lately.*

dulcis, e, *sweet; charming; dear.*

dum, conj., *while, as long as; until.*

duo, ae, o, *two.*

dūrus, a, um, *hard, stubborn; stern, cruel, unfeeling.*

dux, ducis, m. and f., *leader, guide, conductor, captain.*

Dymās, antis, m., a Trojan.

E

ecce, interj., *lo! behold! see!*

ēdis-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *set forth, explain, unfold.*

ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead out; build up, raise.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *bring forth; put forth; raise.*

effigiēs, ēī, f., *image, statue.*

ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, *flee away, escape; fly from, avoid, shun.*

effugium, ī, n., *flight, escape.*

ef-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour forth, shed; utter.*

ego, meī, pron., *I.*

ē-lābor, ī, -lāpsus sum, *slip away, glide forth; elude, dodge.*

ē-micō, āre, -micuī, -micātum, *spring, leap up.*

ē-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, force, rend, wrench.*

enim, conj., *for, indeed.*

ēnsis, is, m., *sword.*

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go; pour forth, flow; advance; resort to.*

Eōus, a, um, *of the dawn.*

Epēos, ī, m., the builder of the wooden horse.

Ēpytus, ī, m., a Trojan.

equidem, adv., *truly, indeed, in fact, by all means.*

equus, ī, m., *horse, steed.*

ergō, adv., *therefore, so, then.*

Erīnys, yos, f., *a Fury.*

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch away, wrest; rescue;* with reflex. pron., *break away.*

errō, āre, āvī, ātum, *wander, rove; stray; linger, hover.*

error, ōris, m., *wandering; error, mistake; delusion, trick, deceit.*

ē-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tear up; overturn, overthrow.*

et, conj., *and; also, too, even;* **et....et**, *both....and.*

etiam, conj., *and also, likewise; and even, still, yet.*

Eurus, ī, m., *the southeast* or *east wind; wind* in general.

Eurypylus, ī, m., a Greek.

ē-vādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *go forth, come out; mount, ascend.*

ē-vincō, ere, -vīcī, -victum, *overcome, vanquish, beat down.*

ex (or **ē** sometimes before a cons.), prep. with abl., *out of, from; of; after, since; in accordance with.*

ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forth, depart, withdraw.*

ex-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut out, hew out; destroy.*

ex-cutiō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, *shake off, throw off; rouse.*

ex-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go forth, issue forth; escape, avoid, parry.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army, host; band.*

ex-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *drive forth.*

exitiālis, e, *deadly, fatal.*

exitium, ī, n., *destruction, ruin, disaster.*

exoptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *desire, long for.*

ex-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *rise, arise.*

ex-pendō, **-ere**, **pendī**, **-pēnsum**, *weigh out; pay for, expiate.*

explicō, **āre**, **āvī** and **uī**, **ātum** and **itum**, *unfold, set forth, describe.*

ex-prōmō, **ere**, **-prōmpsī**, **-prōmptum**, *bring forth, utter.*

exsanguis, **e**, *bloodless, pallid, pale.*

ex-scindō, **ere**, **-scidī**, **-scissum**, *overthrow, destroy; extirpate, root out.*

exspectō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *await, wait for; loiter, linger.*

exsultō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *leap; rejoice, exult.*

extemplō, adv., *at once, immediately.*

extrēmus, **a**, **um** (superlative of **exterus**), *farthest; last; final;* neut. as subst., **extrēma**, **ōrum**, n. plur., *the utmost, the worst.*

exultō, see **exsultō**.

ex-uō, **ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, *put off, lay aside; free.*

exuviae, **ārum**, f. plur., anything stripped off, hence, *spoils; cast-off skin, slough.*

F

fabricātor, **ōris**, m., *contriver, maker.*

fabricō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *build, make, fashion.*

faciēs, **ēī**, f., *appearance, fashion.*

faciō, **ere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, *do, make, cause.*

falsus, **a**, **um**, part. of **fallo**, *false.*

fāma, **ae**, f., *rumor, report; fame.*

fās, indecl. n., *divine law; right;* **fās est**, *it is right, lawful, proper.*

fastīgium, **i**, n., *top, roof, gable, pinnacle, battlement.*

fātālis, **e**, *fated; fateful, fatal.*

fateor, **ērī**, **fassus sum**, *confess, own, admit.*

fātum, **ī**, n., *prophecy, oracle; destiny, fate; doom, death,*

faucēs, **ium**, f., plur., *throat, jaws.*

fēmineus, **a**, **um**, *of women, women's.*

fenestra, **ae**, f., *window; opening, hole, breach.*

ferio, **īre**, *strike, smite, slay.*

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, *bear; bring, carry; offer,* with reflex. pron. or in pass., *be borne, be driven; go, rush, glide,* pass., *carry off, plunder; endure, suffer, brook; say, tell.*

ferrum, **ī**, n., *iron; sword, steel.*

ferus, **a**, **um**, *cruel, fierce; wrathful, angry;* masc. as subst., **ferus**, **ī**, m., *beast, creature, monster.*

fessus, **a**, **um**, *weary, worn out, exhausted.*

festīnō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *make haste, hasten.*

festus, **a**, **um**, *festal, festive.*

fētus, **a**, **um**, *teeming, laden, filled.*

fictus, **a**, **um**, part. of **fingo**, *false, feigned.*

fīdēns, **entis**, part. of **fido**, *confident, bold.*

fidēs, **eī**, f., *faith; honor; pledge; truth.*

fīdō, **ere**, **fīsus sum**, *trust.*

fīdūcia, **ae**, f., *confidence, trust, reliance, assurance.*

fīdus, **a**, **um**, *trusty, trustworthy, faithful, sure.*

fīgō, **ere**, **fīxī**, **fīxum**, *fix, fasten; imprint; impress.*

fingō, **ere**, **fīnxī**, **fictum**, *mould, make; devise, feign.*

fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum** (pass. of **faciō**), *be made; take place, happen; become.*

fīrmus, **a**, **um**, *strong, stout.*

flāgitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *demand.*

flamma, **ae**, f., *flame, fire.*

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētum**, *weep.*

flētus, **ūs**, m., *weeping, wail, tears.*

fluctus, **ūs**, m., *wave, billow.*

flūmen, **minis**, n., *river, stream, flood.*

fluō, **ere**, **flūxī**, **fluxum**, *flow, ebb.*

foedō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *defile, pollute ; mar, disfigure ; desecrate.*

for, **fārī**, **fātus sum**, *speak, say.*

foris, **is**, f., *door.*

formīdō, **inis**, f., *dread, fear, terror.*

fors, **fortis**, f., *chance, fortune ;* **fors** (sc. **est**, and **forte**, as adv., *perhaps, perchance.*

fortis, **e**, *brave, bold, valiant ; stout, strong.*

fortūna, **ae**, f., *fortune, fate, success ; lot, condition, state.*

frangō, **ere**, **frēgī**, **frāctum**, *break, crush.*

fremitus, **ūs**, m., *uproar, din.*

fretum, **ī**, n., *strait, channel ; sea.*

frīgidus, **a**, **um**, *cold, chill, icy.*

frōns, **frondis**, f., *leaf, leaves, foliage ; bough.*

frustrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose, uselessly.*

frūx, **frūgis**, f. (generally plur.), *fruit, grain ; meal.*

fuga, **ae**, f., *flight ; speed ; exile.*

fugiō, **ere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum**, *flee, escape, fly ; flee* or *fly from, avoid.*

fundō, **ere**, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, *pour forth, rout.*

fundus, **ī**, m., *bottom, depths.*

fūnis, **is**, m., *rope, cord, cable.*

fūnus, **eris**, n., *death ; disaster.*

furiō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *madden, infuriate.*

fur-ō, **ere**, **-uī**, *rage, rave, be furious, be frenzied, be mad.*

furor, **ōris**, m., *fury, madness, rage, frenzy ; passion ; infatuation.*

fūrtim, adv., *secretly, by stealth.*

fūsus, **a**, **um**, part. of **fundo**, *spread out, scattered, stretched.*

G

galea, **ae**, f., *helmet.*

gaudeō, **ēre**, **gāvīsus sum**, *rejoice, be glad, delight in.*

gelidus, **a**, **um**, *icy, cold, chill.*

geminus, **a**, **um**, *twin, two.*

gemitus, **ūs**, m., *groan, groaning, sigh, moan, cry.*

gener, **erī**, m., *son-in-law.*

gēns, **gentis**, f., *race, nation, birth.*

genus, **eris**, n., *kind, sort.*

gerō, **ere**, **gessī**, **gestum**, *bear, carry, wear ; have, possess ; show.*

glomerō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *roll up ; gather, collect.*

glōria, **ae**, f., *glory, fame, renown.*

gradus, **ūs**, m., *step, pace ; rung* or *round* (of a ladder).

Grāius, **a**, **um**, *Greek, Grecian ;* masc. as subst., **Grāius**, **ī**, m., *a Greek*, (plur. **Graī** or **Graiī**).

grāmen, **minis**, n., *grass, herb.*

grātus, **a**, **um**, *pleasing ; grateful.*

gravis, **e**, *heavy ; weighed down, burdened.*

graviter, adv., *heavily ; deeply.*

gurg-es, **-itis**, m., *whirlpool ; whirling waters, flood.*

H

habeō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, *have, hold, possess ; consider, regard.*

haereō, **ēre**, **haesī**, **haesum**, *cling, be fixed.*

hasta, **ae**, f., *lance, spear.*

haud, adv., *not, by no means.*

Hector, **oris**, m., the eldest son of Priam, and bravest of the Trojans.

Hecuba, **ae**, f., the wife of Priam.

hei, interj., *ah, alas ;* **hei mihi !** *ah me !*

heu, interj., *ah ! alas ! ah me !*

hīc, **haec**, **hōc**, *this.*

hīc, adv., *here, hereupon.*

hiems, **hiemis**, f., *winter ; storm, tempest.*

hinc, adv., *from this place, hence ; from this time, henceforth.*

hom-ō, **-inis**, m., *man.*

horrendus, **a**, **um**, gerundive of **horreō**, *dreadful, awful.*

horreō, **ēre**, **uī**, *shudder, tremble ; shudder at.*

horrēscō, **ere**, **horruī**, *tremble, shudder; shudder at, dread.*

horror, **ōris**, m., *horror, terror, dread; dread sound, din, clash.*

hortor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *encourage, urge, incite.*

hostia, **ae**, f., *victim, sacrifice.*

hostis, **is**, m., *enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this place, hither, here.*

hūmidus, **a**, **um**, *damp, dewy.*

humus, **ī**, f., *earth, ground, soil;* **humī**, locative, *on the ground.*

Hypanis, **is**, m., a Trojan.

I

ibi, adv., *there, then, thereupon.*

īgnārus, **a**, **um**, *ignorant, unsuspecting.*

īgnis, **is**, m., *fire, flame.*

īgnōtus, **a**, **um**, *unknown.*

Īliacus, **a**, **um**, *of Ilium, Trojan.*

īlicet, adv., *at once, straightway.*

Īlium, **ī**, n., a name of Troy.

il-lābor, **ī**, **-lāpsus sum**, *glide in, enter.*

ille, **a**, **ud**, *that yonder, the famous;* as subst., *he, she, it.*

il-lūdō, **ere**, **-lūsī**, **-lūsum**, *jeer at, mock at, make sport.*

imāgō, **inis**, f., *likeness, form; appearance, sight.*

immānis, **e**, *huge, vast.*

immemor, **oris**, *unmindful, heedless, forgetful.*

immēnsus, **a**, **um**, *immeasurable, immense, enormous, vast.*

im-misceō, **ēre**, **-miscuī**, **-mixtum** or **-mistum**, *mingle in* or *with.*

im-mittō, **ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, *send into; let in, admit;* in pass., *rush* or *pour in.*

im-pellō, **ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsum**, *drive on, move, push forward; urge, incite; overturn.*

imperium, **ī**, n., *sway, dominion, empire.*

impetus, **ūs**, m., *assault, violence; speed, force.*

impius, **a**, **um**, *impious, wicked.*

implicō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, or **uī**, **itum**, *enfold, encircle, grasp.*

improbus, **a**, **um**, *malicious, shameless, wanton; ravenous.*

imprōvidus, **a**, **um**, *unforeseeing, heedless, blind.*

imprōvīsus, **a**, **um**, *unforeseen, unexpected, sudden.*

īmus, **a**, **um**, (superlative of **īnferus**), *lowest, deepest; the bottom of, the depths of, inmost.*

in, prep. (1) with abl., *in, within, among, on, at; considering, in the case of, in regard to;* (2) with acc., *into, to, upon, against, towards; until; according to, with a view to, for.*

incendium, **ī**, n., *fire.*

in-cendō, **ere**, **-cendī**, **-cēnsum**, *burn, set on fire; inflame, fire.*

incertus, **a**, **um**, *uncertain, wavering; unsteady, ill-aimed.*

in-cidō, **ere**, **-cidī**, **-cāsum**, *fall upon, rush upon.*

in-cipiō, **ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, *begin, undertake, essay.*

in-clūdō, **ere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum**, *shut in, enclose, confine.*

inclutus, **a**, **um**, *illustrious, renowned, famous.*

incolumis e, *unharmed, safe; unshaken, firm.*

incomitātus, **a**, **um**, *unattended.*

in-cumbō, **ere**, **-cubuī**, **-cubitum**, *rest* or *lie upon.*

in-currō, **ere**, **-currī** (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum**, *rush in, charge.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; then, after that, afterwards.*

indicium, **ī**, n., *evidence, charge.*

indīgnor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *be indignant at, chafe at.*

indīgnus, **a**, **um**, *unworthy; undeserved, shameful, unjust.*

indomitus, **a**, **um**, *unsubdued; unconquerable, fierce, stubborn.*

ind-uō, **ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, *put on.*

indūtus, a, um, part. of **induō**, *clad, arrayed.*

inēluctābilis, e, *inevitable.*

inermis, e, *unarmed, defenceless.*

in-ers, -ertis, *spiritless; lifeless.*

īnfandus, a, um, *unspeakable, unutterable; dreadful, monstrous.*

īnfēlīx, īcis, *luckless, unfortunate; ill-boding, ill-omened.*

īnfēnsus, a, um, *hostile, enraged.*

īnfula, ae, f., *fillet.*

ingēns, entis, *huge, vast, massive, enormous; great, mighty.*

ingrātus, a, um, *unwelcome, painful.*

ingru-ō, ere, -ī, *rush upon, burst forth, roll on.*

inīquus, a, um, *unfair, unjust; hostile, unfriendly, unfavorable.*

in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw, cast, hurl at;* with **sē**, *fling one's self, rush.*

innūptus, a, um, *unmarried;* in fem., *maiden, virgin.*

inquam, inquit, defective verb, *say.*

īnsānia, ae, f., *madness.*

īnsānus, a, um, *mad; inspired.*

īnscius, a, um, *not knowing, ignorant, unconscious.*

īnsidiae, ārum, f. plur., *ambush; stratagem, trick, wiles, snares.*

īnsīgne, is, n., *decoration, device, ornament;* in plur., *trappings, equipments.*

īnsinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, *steal, creep.*

īn-sonō, āre, -sonuī, *sound, resound.*

īn-sōns, -sontis, *guiltless, innocent.*

īn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look upon, overlook.*

īnstar, indeclinable, n., *image, likeness;* in apposition as adj., *like.*

īnstaurō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew, revive.*

īn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *press on, urge forward, push on.*

īn-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *arrange, array; set in order;* **īnstrūctus**, *furnished, versed.*

īnsula, ae, f., *island.*

īnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *leap upon; exult, be insolent.*

intemerātus, a, um, *pure, unstained, unsullied.*

in-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum or **-tēnsum**, *stretch, strain.*

intentus, a, um, part. of **intendō**, *strained; eager, intent, attentive.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among, in the midst of; during;* with reflexive, *each one* or *one another.*

inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *cut off, prevent, bar the way.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile, meantime.*

interior, ius, comparative, *interior, inner, within.*

in-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, *weave; frame.*

in-torqueō, ēre, -torsī, -tortum, *hurl.*

intrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *within.*

intus, adv., *within.*

in-vādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *rush upon, attack, assail.*

in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come upon, find; discover, devise.*

invidia, ae, f., *envy, grudge, hatred, ill-will.*

invītus, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant, against the will.*

in-volvō, ere, -volvī, -volūtum, *wrap, enfold; cover, engulf.*

Īphitus, ī, m., a Trojan.

ipse, a, um, *self; the very, even.*

īra, ae, f., *anger, wrath.*

irritus, a, um, *useless, unavailing, ineffective; to no purpose.*

ir-ruō, ere, -ruī, *rush in,* or *upon.*

is, ea, id, *he, she, it; that, this, such.*

ita, adv., *thus, so.*

iter, itineris, n., *way, march, road, course, path, passage.*

Ithacus, a, um, *of Ithaca, Ithacan;* as subst., **Ithacus, ī**, m., *the Ithacan*, i.e., Ulysses.

J

jactō, āre, āvī, ātum, *throw, cast, hurl, fling.*

jaculor, ārī, ātus sum, *hurl.*

jam, adv., *now, already, at length; but now, just now;* **jam dūdum**, *long since.*

jānua, ae, f., *door, entrance.*

juba, ae, f., *mane; crest.*

jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, *order, bid, command.*

jūnctūra, ae, f., *joint.*

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join, unite.*

Juppiter (or **Jūpiter**), **Jovis**, m., the supreme deity of the Romans.

jūs, jūris, n., *right, justice, law.*

jussus, ūs, m., (used only in abl. sing.) *order, bidding, command.*

jūstus, a, um, *just, upright.*

juvenis, is, m., *young man, youth.*

juventa, ae, f., *youth.*

juventūs, tūtis, f., *youth;* collectively, *the youth, the young men.*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *aid; give pleasure, be pleasant, delight.*

L

lābēs, is, f., *stroke, blow.*

labō, āre, āvī, ātum, *totter, give way, yield.*

lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *slide, slide down; glide away, pass away; sink, fall, perish.*

labor, ōris, m., *labor, toil, work; hardship, misfortune; woe, agony.*

lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*

lacus, ūs, m., *lake, pool.*

laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, *strike, pierce; offend, violate.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful; rejoicing, exulting.*

laevus, a, um, *on the left hand; unpropitious; infatuated.*

lamb-ō, ere, -ī, -itum, *lick, lap; play around.*

lāmentābilis, e, *lamentable, pitiable.*

Lāoco-ōn, -ontis, m., a priest of Apollo.

lāpsus, ūs, m., *gliding motion, gliding.*

largus, a, um, *copious, abundant.*

Lārissaeus, a, um, *of Larissa*, a town of Thessaly, the supposed abode of Achilles.

lātē, adv., *broadly, widely, far and wide.*

latebra, ae, f., *hiding-place.*

lateō, ēre, uī, *lie concealed, lurk.*

lātus, a, um, *broad, wide, widespread.*

latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*

laxō, āre, āvī, ātum, *loosen, undo, open; let loose, set free.*

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, *glide over, skim.*

lētum, ī, n., *death.*

levō, āre, āvī, ātum, *lift up; undo, release; aid, support.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law; bond.*

līgnum, ī, n., *wood.*

ligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bind, fasten, pinion.*

līmen, minis, n., *threshold; door, portal, entrance; courts, temple.*

līmōsus, a, um, *miry, marshy.*

lingua, ae, f., *tongue.*

litō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sacrifice; make atonement.*

lītus, oris, n., *shore, beach, coast; bank.*

locō, āre, āvī, ātum, *place, set.*

locus, ī, m., *place, spot; room;* (plur. **loca**), *places, space, ground.*

longus, a, um, *long; long-continued, prolonged.*

loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak, say.*

lōrum, ī, n., *thong; rein.*

lūceō, ēre, lūxī, *shine, glitter, gleam, be bright.*

lūctus, ūs, m., *sorrow, grief.*

lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctum, *mourn.*

lūmen, minis, n., *light ; eye.*

lūna, ae, f., *moon ; moonlight.*

lupus, ī, m., *wolf.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*

M

Machāōn, onis, m., a Greek.

māchina, ae, f., *machine, engine.*

mactō, āre, āvī, ātum, *offer, sacrifice.*

maestus, a, um, *sad, mournful, sorrowful, gloomy, anxious.*

magis, adv., *more, rather.*

māgnus, a, um (mājor, māximus), *great, large, mighty, loud.*

mājor, comparative of **māgnus.**

male, adv., *badly, ill ;* giving to adjectives an opposite meaning.

malum, ī, n., *evil ; ill, woe.*

malus, a, um, *evil, bad, wicked ; false, crafty; poisonous, noxious.*

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain, stand, abide ; abide by ; await.*

manicae, ārum, f. plur., *manacles, chains* (for the hands).

manifestus, a, um, *clear, evident, plain.*

manus, ūs, f., *hand ; band, troop ; valor, brave deeds.*

Mārs, Mārtis, m., the god of war ; hence, *war, battle, warfare.*

māter, mātris, f., *mother, matron.*

māximus, superlative of **māgnus.**

medius, a, um, *in the middle, the midst, mid ;* neut. as subst., **medium, ī,** n., *middle, midst.*

melior, ius, comparative of **bonus,** *better.*

meminī, isse (perf. system with force of pres.), *remember, recall.*

memorō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mention, tell, recount.*

mendāx, ācis, *false, deceitful, untruthful.*

Menelāus, ī, m., king of Sparta, husband of Helen, and brother of Agamemnon.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, reason.*

mentior, īrī, ītus sum, *lie.*

mentītus, a, um, part. of **mentior,** *lying, counterfeiting.*

mercor, ārī, ātus sum, *buy, purchase.*

mereō, ēre, uī, itum, *deserve, merit, earn, gain.*

meus, a, um, *my ;* m. plur., **meī** as subst., *my people.*

mic-ō, āre, -uī, *flash, flicker.*

mīl-es, -itis, m., *soldier ;* collectively, *soldiery, soldiers.*

mīlle, plur. **mīlia** (or **mīllia**), *thousand.*

Minerva, ae, f., the goddess of wisdom.

minister, trī, m., *servant, attendant ; accomplice.*

minor, ārī, ātus sum, *threaten, menace.*

mīrābilis, e, *wonderful.*

mīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, marvel, admire.*

misceō, ēre, miscuī, mixtum, *mix ; disturb, throw into confusion ; spread, scatter.*

miser, era, erum, *sad, wretched, pitiable ; hapless, ill-fated.*

misereor, ērī, itus sum, *pity, take pity on.*

miserēscō, ere, *pity, feel pity, have compassion.*

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send.*

modō, adv., *only, merely, but ; but now, a moment ago.*

moenia, ium, n. plur., *walls ; city.*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass, bulk ; massive pile* or *structure ; dam, dyke.*

mōlior, īrī, ītus sum, *plan, prepare.*

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill.*

mōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *show, point out.*

mōnstrum, ī, n., *warning, sign, omen, portent; monster, monstrous thing.*

montānus, a, um, *of a mountain, mountain.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die, perish.*

moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay; detain; stay for.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

morsus, ūs, m., *bite, biting.*

mortālis, e, *mortal, human;* m. as subst., *a mortal.*

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move, stir, arouse, excite.*

mucrō, ōnis, m., *point, sword-point, sword.*

mūgītus, ūs, m., *bellowing.*

multō, adv., *much, far.*

multus, a, um (**plūs, plūrimus**), *much, many.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, *change, alter; exchange.*

Mycēnae, ārum, f., the city of Agamemnon in Greece.

Mygdonidēs, ae, m., *the son of Mygdon.*

Myrmidonēs, um, m. plur., *the Myrmidons,* a Thessalian tribe, ruled by Achilles.

N

nam, conj., *for;* in questions, *why.*

namque, conj., *for, for in truth.*

nātus, ī, m., *son, child.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship, vessel.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest.*

nebula, ae, f., *cloud, mist, fog.*

nec, conj., see **neque**.

nefandus, a, um, *impious, accursed, wicked.*

nefās, n. indeclinable, *sin, crime, sacrilege, impiety, impious deed.*

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deny.*

Neoptolemus, ī, m., a name of Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles.

nep-ōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson, grandchild;* in plur., *descendants, posterity.*

Neptūnus, ī, m., *Neptune,* the god of the sea.

neque or **nec**, conj., *and not, nor;* **neque—neque**, *neither—nor.*

nēquīquam, adv., *vainly, to no purpose.*

Nēreus, eī and **eos**, m., a sea-god.

neu or **nēve**, conj., *and not, nor.*

nex, necis, f., *death, slaughter.*

nī, conj. (=**nisi**), *if not, unless.*

nihil or **nīl**, n., indeclinable, *nothing;* as adv., *not at all, in no respect.*

nimbus, ī, m., *storm-cloud, cloud.*

nitidus, a, um, *bright, shining, sleek.*

nītor, ī, nīsus and **nīxus sum**, *rest on; struggle; mount, climb.*

nōdus, ī, m., *knot; fold, coil.*

nōmen, minis, n., *name; renown, glory.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

noster, tra, trum, *our, ours;* m. plur. as subst., *our friends, our own people.*

nōtus, a, um, part. of **nōscō**, *known, well-known.*

Notus, ī, m., *south wind;* less exactly, *wind.*

novus, a, um, *new, fresh; strange*

nox, noctis, f., *night; darkness.*

nūllus, a, um, *no, none.*

nūmen, minis, n., *divine will, divine purpose; divine presence, divine favor; sanctity; deity.*

numerus, ī, m., *number* (often = *numbers*); *multitude, throng.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nurus, ūs, f., *daughter-in-law.*

nusquam, adv., *nowhere.*

O

ō, interj., *O! oh! ah!*

ob, prep. with acc., *towards; at, about, near; on account of, for.*

ob-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *put before, present; hold up, oppose.*

oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, *forget.*

ob-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, *overwhelm.*

obscūrus, a, um, *dark, dim; unseen, concealed.*

ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *blockade, beset; occupy.*

ob-stipēscō, ere, -stipuī, *be astonished, amazed, thunderstruck.*

ob-tegō, ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover, conceal, screen.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *ruin, fall, destruction.*

occultus, a, um, *hidden, secret.*

oc-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *meet; fall, die.*

ōceanus, ī, m., *ocean.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsus, defective, *hate.*

odium, ī, n., *hatred, hate.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *present, offer;* with reflexive or in pass., *meet.*

ōmen, minis, n., *omen.*

omnis, e, *all, every, whole.*

op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *put in front, throw in way; expose.*

oppositus, a, um, part. of **oppōnō,** *opposite, opposing, resisting.*

(ops), opis, f., *power, aid;* in plur., *wealth, resources.*

opus, eris, n., *work, task.*

ōra, ae, f., *border, coast, shore.*

ōrāculum, ī, n., *oracle.*

orbis, is, m., *circle, coil.*

Orcus, ī, m., the lower world; *Pluto,* the god of the lower world.

ōrdior, īrī, ōrsus sum, *begin.*

ōrdō, inis, m., *order; class, rank.*

orior, īrī, ortus sum, *rise, appear, spring up, begin; be born.*

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *plead, beg, entreat, beseech, implore.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth; face, countenance; lips, voice, words.*

os, ossis, n., *bone;* plur., *frame.*

ōsculum, ī, n., *mouth, lip; kiss.*

os-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tēnsum and **-tentum,** *show; display.*

Othryadēs, ae, m., *son of Othrys.*

P

Palamēdēs, is, m., king of Euboea, one of the Greeks at Troy.

Palladium, ī, n., *statue of Pallas, Palladium.*

Pallas, adis, f., the Greek goddess of wisdom and war, corresponding to the Roman Minerva.

palma, ae, f., *palm; hand.*

pandō, ere, pandī, pānsum or **passum,** *spread; throw open.*

Panthūs, ī, m., a Trojan.

parātus, a, um, part. of **parō,** *ready, prepared, equipped.*

parēns, entis, m. and f., *parent, father, mother; sire, forefather.*

pari-ēs, -etis, m., *wall.*

pariter, adv., *equally, together, side by side.*

parma, ae, f., *shield.*

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare, make ready; provide, secure, procure, get, enlist.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share; side, direction.*

parvus, a, um, *small, little, slight.*

pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstum, *feed.*

passim, adv., *in every direction, all about, everywhere.*

passus, a, um, part. of **pandō,** *dishevelled.*

pāstor, ōris, m., *shepherd.*

pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *open, throw open.*

pateō, ēre, uī, *be open, lie open.*

pater, tris, m., *father; parent; forefather, ancestor;* as a title of honor, *father, sire, lord.*

patēscō, ere, patuī, *lie open; be revealed, become manifest.*

patria, ae, f., *father-land, native country, home.*

patrius, a, um, *of one's father; of one's country; native.*

pauper, **eris**, *poor*, *humble*.

pavidus, **a**, **um**, *trembling*, *affrighted*, *frightened*.

pavitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tremble*.

pavor, **ōris**, m., *dread*, *fear*, *terror*.

pectus, **oris**, n., *breast*; *heart*.

pelagus, **ī**, n., *sea*.

Pelasgus, **a**, **um**, *Pelasgian*; *Grecian*; m. plur. as subst., *the Greeks*.

Peliās, **ae**, m., a Trojan.

Pēlīdēs, **ae**, m., *son* or *descendant of Peleus*.

pellāx, **ācis**, *crafty*, *artful*, *subtle*.

Pelopēus, **a**, **um**, *of Pelops*, once the chief ruler of the southern part of Greece, which was called after him the Peloponnesus.

Penātēs, **ium**, m. plur., *the Penates*, *the household gods*.

Pēneleus, **eī**, m., a Greek.

penetrālis, **e**, *inner*, *inmost*; n. plur. as subst., **penetrālia**, **ium**, *inner* or *secret chambers*.

penitus, adv., *far within*, *deep*.

per, prep. with acc.; *through*, *throughout*, *during*; *by means of*, *on account of*; in oaths or appeals, *by*.

per-eō, **-īre**, **-iī** (**-īvī**), **-itum**, *perish*, *die*.

pererrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *wander* or *roam over*, *traverse*.

per-fundō, **ere**, **-fūdī**, **fūsum**, *bespatter*, *drench*.

Pergamum, **ī**, n., and f., **Pergama**, **ōrum**, n. plur., *the citadel of Troy*; *Troy*.

Periphās, **antis**, m., a Greek.

perjūrus, **a**, **um**, *perjured*, *false*.

per-rumpō, **ere**, **-rūpī**, **-ruptum**, *break* or *burst through*.

per-veniō, **īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *come*, *reach*.

pervius, **a**, **um**, *making a thoroughfare*.

pēs, **pedis**, m., *foot*; *step*.

pet-ō, **ere**, **-īvī** (**-iī**), **-ītum**, *attack*, *aim*, *aim at*; *seek*, *make for*; *ask*, *request*, *desire*.

phal-anx, **-angis**, f., *a band of soldiers*; *force*, *fleet*, *squadron*.

Phoebus, **ī**, m., a name of Apollo.

Phrygēs, **um**, m. plur., *the Phrygians*; generally, *the Trojans*.

Phrygius, **a**, **um**, *Phrygian*; *Trojan*.

pietās, **tātis**, f., *dutiful conduct*; *piety*, *devotion*, *goodness*.

pīneus, **a**, **um**, *of pine*.

piō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *expiate*, *atone for*; *punish*, *avenge*.

plācō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *calm*, *appease*.

plangor, **ōris**, m., *cry*, *wailing*.

plūrimus, **a**, **um**, superlative of **multus**.

poena, **ae**, f., *punishment*, *penalty*, *vengeance*.

polus, **ī**, m., *the pole*; hence, *the heavens*.

pōne, adv., *behind*.

pōnō, **ere**, **posuī**, **positum**, *put*, *place*, *set*; *lay aside*, *cast aside*.

pontus, **ī**, m., *sea*.

populus, **ī**, m., *people*.

porta, **ae**, f., *gate*, *passage*.

poscō, **ere**, **poposcī**, *ask*, *demand*.

possum, **posse**, **potuī**, *be able*, *can*.

post, adv., *after*, *afterwards*; prep. with acc., *behind*; *after*.

postis, **is**, m., *door-post*; *door*.

postquam, conj., *after*, *when*.

potēns, **entis**, part. of **possum**, *mighty*, *powerful*.

prae-ceps, **-cipitis**, *headlong*; *in haste*; n. as subst., *brink*, *edge*.

praeceptum, **ī**, n., *counsel*, *warning*.

praecipitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *hurl headlong*, *hurl*; *drive headlong*; *fall swiftly*, *fall*.

praecipuē, adv., *especially*.

praecordia, **ōrum**, n. plur., *breast*, *heart*.

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press; tread upon.*

prendō, ere, prendī, prēnsum, *seize, occupy.*

prēnsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *grasp at, lay hold of, clutch.*

Priamēius, a, um, *of Priam.*

Priamus, ī, m., *Priam,* king of Troy.

prīmum, adv., *first.*

prīmus, a, um, superlative of **prior,** *first, foremost, earliest.*

prius, adv., *before, sooner.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; for, in behalf of, in defence of; in return for; instead of.*

procul, adv., *at a distance, far off, afar.*

prō-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *fall, fall slain; fall in.*

prōditiō, ōnis, f., *treason; treacherous charge* or *accusation.*

prō-dō ere, -didī, -ditum, *give up; denounce.*

proelium, ī, n., *battle, fight.*

prōmissum, ī, n., *promise.*

prō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *promise; vow.*

prōmō, ere, prōmpsī, prōmptum, *bring forth;* with **sē,** *come forth, issue forth.*

propinquus, a, um, *near, at hand; akin, related.*

prō-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *attend, follow after; proceed.*

prō-tegō, ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover, protect.*

prōtinus, adv., *forward, on.*

prō-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *drag forth.*

prō-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *bear forward;* in pass., *go, sail.*

proximus, a, um, superlative of **prope, propior,** *nearest, next.*

pūbēs, is, f., *youth, young men.*

puella, ae, f., *girl, maiden.*

puer, erī, m., *child, boy, lad.*

pūgna, ae, f., *battle, fight, combat.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, *fair, beautiful; noble; glorious.*

pulv-is, -eris, m., *dust.*

puppis, is, f., *stern; ship, vessel.*

putō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, suppose.*

Pyrrhus, ī, m., the son of Achilles.

Q

quā, adv. rel., *where, as;* interrog., *where? how?* indef., *in any way.*

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī (quaesiī), quaesītum, *seek, search for, search out; ask, inquire; miss.*

quālis, e, rel., *of such sort, such as, as, like;* interrog., *of what sort.*

quamquam, conj., *although.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever;* conj., *since, because.*

quantum, adv., *how much, how.*

quantus, a, um, rel., *as great, as much as;* interrog., *how great, how much.*

quater, adv., *four times.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and;* **-que . . . . -que,** *both . . . . and.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that;* interrog. adj., *who? which? what?* indef. adj., *any.*

quia, conj., *because.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*

quiēs, ētis, f., *rest, slumber.*

quīnī, ae, a, *five each;* loosely, *five.*

quīnquāgintā, *fifty.*

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? what?* n. as adv., **quid,** *why? how?* indef. pron., *any one, anything, any.*

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or **quicquam,** *anyone, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quodque, and as subst., **quidque** or **quicque,** *each, every, all.*

quisquis, quidquid or **quicquid,** *whoever, whatever.*

quō, inter. and rel. adv., *whither, where, to what end, wherefore;* conj., *in order that, that.*

quod, conj., *that, because; in that, as to;* **quod sī**, *but if.*

quondam, adv., *once, formerly, once of old; at times, sometimes.*

quot, adj., indecl., *how many? as many as.*

R

rabiēs, em, ē, f., *fury; madness.*

rapidus, a, um, *swift, fierce.*

raptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drag, drag along.*

raptor, ōris, m., *plunderer;* as adj., *plundering, ravening.*

ratiō, ōnis, f., *reason, sense.*

re-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *give way; stand apart, be retired.*

recēns, entis, *fresh, recent, new.*

re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *recover; receive, admit.*

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse.*

red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, restore; utter.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go back, come again, return.*

reditus, ūs, m., *return.*

re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *bring back, restore.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *bring back; recall, relate;* with reflex. or in pass., *go back, ebb, return, retreat.*

re-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, *flee back, retreat; shrink back, recoil.*

rēgīna, ae, f., *queen.*

rēgius, a, um, *royal.*

rēgnum, ī, n., *kingship, sovereignty, lordship; kingdom, realm.*

rēligiō, ōnis, f., *consecration; worship, religion; divinity; sacred duty.*

rēligiōsus, a, um, *holy, sacred.*

re-linquō, ere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave behind, leave, give up, desert, forsake, abandon.*

re-lūceō, ēre, -lūxī, *shine, gleam, be lit up.*

remeō, āre, āvī, ātum, *return.*

re-mētior, īrī, -mēnsus sum, *remeasure, retrace, traverse again.*

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew, revive, recall.*

reor, rērī, ratus sum, *think, suppose, fancy, believe.*

repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repel, foil.*

re-pendō, ere, -pendī, -pēnsum, *repay, requite.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repet-ō, ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, *seek again; repeat, renew.*

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring back, report.*

reposcō, ere, *demand, claim, require.*

re-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check, restrain.*

re-quiēscō, ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, *rest.*

re-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī (iī), -quīsītum, *seek out, seek; ask.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, affair, matter, event, fortune, lot, interest, fact.*

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, hold out.*

re-solvō, ere, -solvī, -solūtum, *unbind; set free, release; break.*

respōnsum, ī, n., *answer, reply.*

re-stō, āre, -stitī, *be left, remain.*

retrō, adv., *backwards, back.*

re-vinciō, īre, -vinxī, -vinctum, *bind back, bind, fasten.*

re-volvō, ere, -volvī, -volūtum, *roll back; repeat.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king, prince, ruler.*

Rhīpeus, ī, m., a Trojan.

rōb-ur, -oris, n., *oak, beam of oak, timber, wood.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, request, ask for.*

rota, ae, f., *wheel.*

ruīna, ae, f., *fall, downfall, ruin, overthrow, disaster.*

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, *break, burst, force, burst through; cause to break forth;* in pass., *burst forth.*

ruō, ere, ruī, rutum, *fall, fall in ruins; rush, rush forth, pour forth.*

rūrsus, adv., *back; again.*

S

sacer, cra, crum, *consecrated, sacred, holy;* n. as subst., **sacrum, ī**, n., chiefly in plur., *holy things; sacred rites; hymns.*

sacerdōs, ōtis, m., *priest.*

sacrātus, a, um, part. of **sacrō**, *sacred, holy, hallowed.*

sacrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *consecrate.*

saepe, adv., *often, oft.*

saeviō, īre, iī (īvī), ītum, *rage, be furious.*

saevus, a, um, *fierce, cruel, pitiless.*

salsus, a, um, *salted, salt.*

salum, ī, n., *the sea, the deep.*

salūs, ūtis, f., *safety, welfare.*

sanguineus, a, um, *bloody, blood-red; blood-shot.*

sanguis, inis, m., *blood; descent, race, offspring.*

saniēs, ēī, f., *foul matter, gore.*

sat, see **satis**.

sata, ōrum, n. plur., part. of **serō**, *sown fields, crops.*

satis (also **sat**), adv. or adj., *enough; sufficiently, sufficient.*

saucius, a, um, *wounded, stricken.*

saxum, ī, n., *rock, stone.*

scālae, ārum, f. plur., *ladder, scaling ladders.*

scandō, ere, *climb, mount, ascend.*

scelerātus, a, um, *accursed; impious, wicked, infamous.*

scelus, eris, n., *crime, deed; guilt, villainy.*

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *cleave, rend, tear, divide.*

scītor, ārī, ātus sum, *ask, inquire; consult.*

Scyrius, a, um, *of Scyros*, an island in the Aegean, *Scyrian.*

secō, āre, secuī, sectum, *cut, saw, cut through, cleave.*

sēcrētus, a, um, part. of **sēcernō**, *retired, apart, remote.*

secūris, is, f., *axe.*

secus, adv., *otherwise;* **haud secus**, *even thus, just so.*

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode, dwelling, home, temple, foundation.*

seg-es, -etis, f., *corn-field.*

sēgnitiēs, ēī, f., *slowness, sloth.*

semper, adv., *always, ever.*

sententia, ae, f., *opinion, judgment, view.*

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *perceive, feel; understand, know.*

sentis, is, m., *brier, bramble.*

sepel-iō, īre, -īvī, sepultum, *bury.*

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

serēnus, a, um, *clear, cloudless; serene, calm.*

serpēns, entis, m. and f., *serpent, snake.*

serpō, ere, serpsī, serptum, *creep; steal upon.*

sērus, a, um, *late, tardy; sluggish, lingering.*

servāns, antis, part. of **servō**, *observant.*

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, *watch over, save, preserve, keep, guard.*

seu, conj., see **sīve**.

sī, conj., *if, in case; whether; if only, would that; so sure as.*

sībilus, a, um, *hissing.*

sīc, adv., *thus, so.*

siccus, a, um, *dry; thirsty, parched.*

sīdus, eris, n., *star.*

Sīgēus, a, um, *of Sigeum*, a promontory near Troy.

sīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mark, notice.*

sīgnum, ī, n., *mark, sign, token.*

silentium, **ī**, n., *silence, stillness.*

sileō, **ēre**, **uī**, *be silent, calm, still.*

silva, **ae**, f., *wood, forest; thicket.*

simul, adv., *at the same time, together;* **simul ac**, *as soon as.*

simulācrum, **ī**, n., *image.*

simulō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *pretend.*

sīn, conj., *but if.*

sinister, **tra**, **trum**, *left;* f. as subst., **sinistra** (sc. **manus**), *the left hand.*

Sinōn, **ōnis**, m., a Greek.

sinuō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *wind, wreathe.*

sinus, **ūs**, m., *fold; bay.*

sistō, **ere**, **stitī**, **statum**, *set, place, plant.*

sīve or **seu**, conj., *or, or if;* **sīve** (**seu**)—**sīve** (**seu**), *whether—or.*

socer, **erī**, m., *father-in-law;* plur., *parents-in-law.*

socius, **ī**, m., *companion, comrade, ally.*

socius, **a**, **um**, *allied, friendly.*

sōl, **sōlis**, m., *sun; sunlight; day.*

soleō, **ēre**, **solitus sum**, *be wont, be accustomed.*

sollemnis, **e**, *annual, accustomed, wonted; solemn, religious.*

solum, **ī**, n., *ground, earth.*

sōlus, **a**, **um**, *alone, only.*

solvō, **ere**, **solvī**, **solūtum**, *free.*

somnus, **ī**, m., *sleep, slumber.*

sonitus, **ūs**, m., *sound, noise, roar.*

son-ō, **āre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, *sound, resound, roar, echo, thunder.*

sonus, **ī**, m., *sound, noise.*

sopor, **ōris**, m., *deep sleep, slumber.*

sors, **sortis**, f., *lot; fate, fortune.*

sortior, **īrī**, **ītus sum**, *draw lots for; choose, select.*

spargō, **ere**, **sparsī**, **sparsum**, *scatter; fling, spread abroad.*

speciēs, **ēī**, f., *sight; appearance.*

spērō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *hope for, look for; expect, fear.*

spēs, **eī**, f., *hope, expectation.*

spīra, **ae**, f., *fold, coil.*

spolium, **ī**, n., *booty, plunder, spoil.*

spōnsa, **ae**, f., *betrothed, bride.*

spūmeus, **a**, **um**, *foaming, covered with foam.*

spūmō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *foam, froth, be covered with foam.*

squāleō, **ēre**, **uī**, *be rough, neglected, ragged, unkempt.*

squāmeus, **a**, **um**, *scaly.*

stabulum, **ī**, n., *stall, pen.*

statiō, **ōnis**, f., *resting place, haunt; roadstead, anchorage.*

stat-uō, **ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, *put, set, place; establish, build.*

sternō, **ere**, **strāvī**, **strātum**, *stretch out; lay low, sweep, lay waste; overthrow, slay.*

Sthenelus, **ī**, m., a Greek.

stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statum**, *stand; stand firm, abide, remain; rest, depend, be centred, be upheld.*

strīdō, **ere**, **strīdī**, *make a shrill, harsh sound; cry, groan, gride.*

stringō, **ere**, **strīnxī**, **strīctum**, *draw, unsheathe.*

struō, **ere**, **strūxī**, **strūctum**, *build; accomplish, compass.*

studium, **ī**, n., *eagerness, zeal; party spirit, party, faction.*

stupeō, **ēre**, **uī**, *be astonished, be amazed; wonder at, marvel at.*

stuppeus, **a**, **um**, *hempen.*

suā-deō, **ēre**, **-sī**, **-sum**, *advise, urge, counsel.*

sub, prep. (1) with abl., *under, beneath, at the foot of; near; in;* (2) with acc., *under, beneath; up to, towards; about, at.*

sub-eō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum**, *come up, move up, enter, approach.*

sub-jiciō, **ere**, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, *put beneath, place under.*

sub-lābor, **ī**, **-lāpsus sum**, *fall back, slip away, fail.*

sublātus, **a**, **um**, from **tollō**.

sub-sistō, **ere**, **-stitī**, *stop, halt.*

suc-cēdō, **ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, *come from below; go up, climb.*

successus, **ūs**, m., *success.*

suc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, *aid, help, succor; occur.*

sūdor, ōris, m., *sweat.*

sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum, *endure, hold out.*

suf-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *color, suffuse.*

suī, reflexive pron., 3rd pers., *himself, themselves; him, them.*

sum, esse, fuī, *be, exist, belong.*

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take; wreak, inflict.*

summus, a, um (superlative of **superus**), *highest, top of, summit of; high, lofty; chief, supreme, greatest.*

super, adv., *above; moreover; further, besides;* prep. with acc., *over, upon.*

superbus, a, um, *haughty, proud; magnificent, splendid, stately.*

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mount, surmount; overtop, tower above; overcome, overwhelm, overpower.*

superus, a, um, (superior, suprēmus or **summus),** *upper, above;* m. plur. as subst., **superī, ōrum,** *the gods above.*

suprēmus, a, um (superlative of **superus**), *highest; last, final.*

suspectus, a, um, part. of **suspiciō,** *suspected, mistrusted.*

sus-pendō, ere, -pendī, -pēnsum, *hang up; hang.*

suspēnsus, a, um, part. of **suspendō,** *in suspense, perplexed.*

sustulī, from **tollō.**

suus, a, um, *his, hers, its, theirs; one's own, one's proper.*

T

tabulātum, ī, n., *floor, story.*

taceō, ēre, uī, itum, *be silent, be still.*

tacitus, a, um, part. of **taceō,** *silent, quiet, in silence.*

tālis, e, *such, of such a kind, such, such as this, like this, this.*

tam, adv., *so.*

tamen, conj., *yet, still.*

tandem, adv., *at length, finally.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, such great, this great, such;* **tantum,** adv., *only, merely, but.*

tardus, a, um, *slow, crippled.*

taurus, ī, m., *bull, ox.*

tēctum, ī, n., *roof; house, dwelling, home, building, palace.*

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover, shelter; shut up, hide; protect.*

tellūs, ūris, f., *land, country.*

tēlum, ī, n., *missile, dart, weapon.*

temperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *calm; appease; refrain.*

templum, ī, n., *temple, shrine.*

tempus, oris, n., *time;* chiefly in plur., *temple* (of head).

tendō, ere, tetendī, tentum and **tēnsum,** *stretch, extend; strive, strain; hasten, go, proceed; try.*

tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., *darkness, gloom.*

Tenedos, ī, f., an island near Troy.

teneō, ēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold; hold possession; keep, detain; bind, restrain; cling to.*

tener, era, erum, *tender, soft, delicate.*

tentō (or **temptō**), **āre, āvī, ātum,** *try, attempt, essay; explore.*

ter, adv., *thrice, three times.*

terebrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pierce.*

tergum, ī, n., *back; body;* **ā tergō,** *behind.*

terra, ae, f., *earth, land.*

terreō, ēre, uī, itum, *terrify, frighten.*

testor, ārī, ātus sum, *call to witness, invoke.*

testūdō, inis, f., *a tortoise-shell; roof of overlapping shields.*

Teucrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Teucri* or *descendants of Teucer,* first king of Troy; *the Trojans.*

Teucria, ae, f., *the Teucrian land, Troy.*

texō, ere, texuī, textum, *weave, interweave; join, frame, build.*

thalamus, ī, m., *chamber, bridal-chamber.*

Thessandrus, ī, m., a Greek.

Thoās, antis, m., a Greek.

Thymoetēs, ae, m., a Trojan.

timeō, ēre, uī, *fear, be afraid of.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise.*

torrēns, entis, m., *torrent.*

torus, ī, m., *cushion, couch.*

tot, indecl., *so many, these many.*

tōtus, a, um, *all, the whole.*

trabs, trabis, f., *beam, timber.*

trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *draw, drag, drag down, hurl, sweep; carry; lead along; drag out.*

trā-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *put through, pierce.*

tranquillus, a, um, *quiet, calm.*

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *transfer, carry.*

tremefactus, a, um, part. of **tremefaciō**, *trembling, startled.*

tremendus, a, um, part. of **tremō**, *dreadful, awful.*

trem-ō, ere, -uī, *tremble, quiver.*

tremor, ōris, m., *trembling, shudder.*

trepidus, a, um, *trembling, alarmed, agitated, in alarm.*

tridēns, entis, m., *trident.*

trīstis, e, *sad, gloomy; wretched, grim, dreadful.*

trisulcus, a, um, *triple-cloven, three-forked.*

Trītōnia, ae, or **Trītōnis, idis**, f., *the Tritonian*, an epithet of *Minerva*, of uncertain origin.

Trōja, ae, f., *Troy.*

Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan, of Troy.*

Trōs, ōis, m., *Trojan; a Trojan.*

trucīdō, āre, āvī, ātum, *slaughter, butcher, cut down.*

tū, pron., *thou, you.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) sum, *protect, defend.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time; now, thereupon.*

tumeō, ēre, *swell, be swollen.*

tumidus, a, um, *swollen, huge.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *tumult, uproar, clamor; commotion, excitement.*

tunc, adv., *then, at that time.*

turbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *disturb, agitate, trouble, confound; alarm.*

turbō, inis, m., *whirlwind.*

turpis, e, *base, craven, disgraceful.*

turris, is, f., *tower, turret.*

tuus, a, um, *thy, thine, your;* m. plur. as subst., *thy people.*

Tȳdīdēs, ae, m., *son of Tydeus, Diomede.*

U

ubi, rel. adv., *where, when, as soon as;* interrog., *where?*

ubīque, adv., *anywhere; everywhere.*

Ūcalegōn, ontis, m., a Trojan.

Ulixēs, is (eī or ī), m., *Ulysses*, king of Ithaca, a Greek.

ūllus, a, um, *any; anyone.*

ultimus, a, um, *furthest, last.*

ultor, ōris, m., *avenger.*

ultrō, adv., *beyond; besides, too, more than this; of one's own accord, voluntarily, designedly.*

ululō, āre, āvī, ātum, *howl; resound, echo.*

ulva, ae, f., *sedge.*

umbra, ae, f., *shade, shadow, darkness.*

umquam (unquam), adv., *at any time, ever.*

unda, ae, f., *wave, billow, sea.*

unde, adv., *whence, from whom, from which.*

undique, adv., *on all sides, from all sides.*

ūnus, a, um, *one; the same; alone, only.*

urbs, is, f., *city.*

ūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum, *burn.*

usquam, adv., *anywhere.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use.*

ut or **uti**, adv., *how, as; just as; when;* conj., *that, so that.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each, both ; either.*

uterus, ī, m., *womb ; belly.*

utinam, conj., *O that ; would that.*

V

vādō, ere, *go, march, advance.*

vagor, ārī, ātus sum, *roam, rove ; go about, spread abroad.*

valeō, ēre, uī, itum, *be strong ; be able, avail.*

validus, a, um, *strong, vigorous, mighty, great.*

vānus, a, um, *empty ; idle ; false, deceitful, lying.*

varius, a, um, *manifold, divers.*

vātēs, is, m. and f., *prophet, seer.*

-ve, enclitic conj., *or.*

vel, conj., *or ;* **vel—vel,** *either—or.*

vellō, ere, vellī (vulsī), vulsum, *pull, tear, wrench ; pull up.*

vēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deck, wreathe.*

vēlum, ī, n., *sail ; canvas.*

velut, velutī, adv., *as, just as, as if.*

venēnum, ī, n., *poison, venom.*

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

venter, tris, m., *belly ; hunger.*

ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

verbum, ī, n., *word.*

vērō, adv., *in truth, truly ; indeed, but.*

versō, āre, āvī, ātum, *turn ; ply, practice.*

vertex, icis, m., *top, summit.*

ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn ;* in pass., *revolve, roll round.*

vērus, a, um, *true, real ;* n. as subst. (usually plur.), *the truth.*

Vesta, ae, f., the goddess of the hearth and household.

vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*

vestibulum, ī, n., *entrance, vestibule, porch.*

vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *forbid, oppose.*

vetus, eris, *old, ancient, former.*

via, ae, f., *way, street.*

vibrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *quiver, flicker.*

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), f., *change, interchange ; chance, lot.*

victor, ōris, m., *victor, conqueror ;* as adj., *victorious, triumphant.*

victus, a, um, from **vincō.**

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see, perceive ;* in pass., *seem, appear.*

vigeō, ēre, *flourish ; have influence.*

vigil, ilis, *watchful, sleepless ;* m. as subst., *watchman, guard.*

vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, overcome, defeat.*

vinculum (vinclum), ī, n., *bond, fetter ; rope.*

vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*

violābilis, e, *violable.*

violō, āre, āvī, ātum, *violate, injure, profane.*

vir, ī, m., *man ; hero.*

virgineus, a, um, *maiden.*

virgō, inis, f., *maiden, virgin.*

virtūs, ūtis, f., *courage, valor.*

vīs (vīs), f., *force, violence, might ;* plur. **vīrēs,** *strength, power, might.*

vīsō, ere, vīsī, vīsum, *see.*

vīsus, ūs, m., *view, sight, vision.*

vīta, ae, f., *life.*

vītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid, shun.*

vitta, ae, f., *fillet, band, chaplet.*

vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely, with difficulty.*

vocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, summon.*

volō, velle, voluī, *wish, desire.*

volūmen, minis, n., *coil, fold.*

vōtum, ī, n., *vow, prayer ; votive offering.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, cry, sound ; saying, word, speech.*

Vulcānus, ī, m., the god of fire ; hence, *fire.*

vulgus, ī, m. and n., *the common people ; the people ; crowd, mob.*

vulnus, eris, n., *wound, blow.*

vultus, ūs, m., *countenance, face, visage.*

Z

Zephyrus, ī, m., *the west wind.*

INDEX.

(The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning on page 169).

Ablative absolute, 45-50; 104.

Ablative case, various uses of, 92-108; 45-50; 54, 55.

Accompaniment, ablative of, 103.

Accusative and infinitive construction, 14-18.

Accusative case, various uses of, 69-75.

Adjectives, used as substantives, 205, *g*; used as adverbs, 205, *h*; used in a partitive sense, 86, iv, *b*; genitive with, 90; dative with, 78, ii.; ablative with, 107, iii.

Adverbial accusative, 72, *i*.

Agent, ablative of, 97; dative of, 80, *d*; the secondary agent, 99, i.

Agreement, forms of, 10-13.

aliquis, use of, 167, *a*.

alius, use of, 168, *a*.

alter, use of, 168, *b*.

Antecedent, peculiarities of, 173; agreement of pronoun with, 13.

Apposition, 10.

Arrangement of words and clauses, 1-9.

Causal clauses, 145-148, 171.

Cause, ablative of, 96.

Characteristic, relative clause of, 32.

Cognate accusative, 72.

Commands, how expressed, 132.

Comparison, ablative of, 98; expressed by *quam*, 98, iii.; conditional clauses of, 68.

Complementary infinitive, 19-22.

Compound verbs, dative with, 78, v. *c*.

Concessive clauses, 65, 66; 171.

Concords, 10-13.

Conditional sentences, 58-64; in indirect discourse, 192; conditional clauses of comparison, 68.

Connection of thought, how expressed, 3, *b*; 202.

Consecutive clauses, 29-33.

Coordinating relative, 172; 205, *k*.

cum (conjunction), uses of, 148-151.

Dative case, various uses of, 76-81; 52, 55.

dēbeō, use of, 140, *b*.

Definition, genitive of, 89.

Deliberative questions, 134, *d*.

Demonstrative pronouns, uses of, 158-163.

Dependent questions, 35-37; dependent clauses in indirect discourse, 175, 176; 186, 187.

Desire, subjunctive of, 135.

Difference, ablative of measure of, 101.

Disjunctive questions, 38.

Distance, accusative of, 128; ablative of, 101, i.

dum, uses of, 67; 153-155.

Duration of time, 129.

Duty, how expressed, 140.

Ethical dative, 80, *c*.

Exclamations, accusative in, 74.

Fearing, construction with verbs of, 138.

Final clauses, 23-28.

fore ut, periphrasis with, 33, iv.

Frequentative clauses, tenses in, 149.

Future infinitive, with verbs of *hoping*, *promising*, etc., 17.

Future participle, 122, 123.

Future perfect tense, uses of, 184.

Future tense, uses of, 181.

Genitive case, various uses of, 82-91; 53, 55.

Gerund, uses of, 113, 114.

Gerundive, uses of, 118-121.

hīc, use of, 158.

Hindering, verbs of, 139.

Historical infinitive, 112.

Historical present, 179, *c*.

Hortatory subjunctive, 134, *a*.

īdem, followed by *quī* or *ac*, 174; use of, 162.

Idiom, differences between English and Latin, 203; 205.

ille, use of, 160.

Imperative mood, use of, 132, 133; in indirect discourse, 186, 1, *c*.

Imperfect tense, uses of, 180.

Impersonal passive, 56, 57.

Indefinite pronouns, uses of, 166-169.

Indirect discourse, 185-193; principal clauses put in, 186, 1; subordinate clauses in, 175; 186, 2; virtual, 177; tenses in, 187; pronouns in, 188; adverbs in, 189; real or apparent exceptions to rules of, 175, i.; 190; conditional sentences in, 192.

Indirect object, 77, 78.

Indirect questions, 35-39.

Infinitive, uses of, 109-112; 14-18; 19-22; 195.

inquam (**inquit**), use of, 18, vi.; 4, *g*.

Instrumental ablative, 92; 99.

interest, construction with, 53, *b*.

Interest, dative of, 79, 80.

Interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōnne*, *num*, 34, i., 35, i., 39, iv.; *utrum* . . . *an*, 38, 39, ii.; *annōn*, *necne*, 39. i.

Intransitive verbs, corresponding to English transitive verbs, 51-55; used impersonally in the passive, 56-57.

ipse, use of, 163.

is, use of, 159.

iste, use of, 161.

Jussive subjunctive, 134, *b*.

licet, use of, 143.

Limit of motion, accusative of, 125.

Locative ablative, 92; 127.

Manner, ablative of, 103.

Means, ablative of, 99.

Motion, limit of, 125; motion *from*, 126.

Necessity, how expressed, 141.

nēve, and **neu**, 28, ii.

nōlī (**nōlīte**), with infinitive, to express prohibitions, 133.

Noun clauses, different forms of, 194-199.

Object, direct, 69; indirect, 77, 78.

Objective genitive, 85; 90.

oportet, use of, 140, *b*.

Optative use of subjunctive, 135.

Ōrātiō oblīqua, see Indirect discourse.

Order of words, 1-4; of clauses, 5-9; 204.

Participial phrases, value of, 43, 47.

Participles, use of, 40-44; 45-50; 118-123; with force of substantives, 205, *g*; for abstract noun, 205, *i*.

Partitive genitive, 86.

Passive voice, impersonal 56, 57; with reflexive or middle force, 69, vii.; 164, iv.

Perfect tense, uses of, 182.

Periodic structure, 9; 204.

Periphrastic conjugations, 120, 123.

Permission, how expressed, 143.

Personal pronouns, use of, 157.

Place, *from which*, 126; *in which*, 127; *to which*, 125.

Pluperfect tense, uses of, 183.

Possessive genitive, 83.

Possessive pronouns (adjectives), use of, 165.

Possessor, dative of, 80, *e*.

possum, use of, 142.

Potential subjunctive, 136.

Prepositions, with accusative, 70; with ablative, 108; construction with verbs compounded with prepositions, 78, v.

Present tense, uses of, 179.

Price, genitive of, 88; ablative of, 100.

Primary tenses, 25; primary sequence, 25; 176; 187; 190, vi.

Prohibitions, how expressed, 133.

Proviso, clauses of, 67.

Purpose, various ways of expressing, 124; dative of, 81.

Quality, genitive of, 87; ablative of, 105.

quam, with superlative, 174, i.; after comparatives, 98, iii.

Questions, direct and indirect, 34-39; in indirect discourse, 186, 1, *b*; deliberative questions, 134, *d*; rhetorical questions, page 248, fn. 2.

quī, see Relative Pronoun.

quīdam, use of, 167, *e*.

quīn, with words of *doubting*, *preventing*, etc., 139; in relative clauses of characteristic, 33, ii.

quis, indefinite, use of, 166. *a*.

quisquam, use of, 166, *b*.

quisque, use of, 169, *a*.

quīvīs, use of, 166, *c*.

quō, with clauses of purpose, 28, iii.

quod, causal, 145-147; introducing noun clauses, 198.

quōminus, use of, 139.

Reference, dative of, 80, *b*.

rēfert, construction with, 53, *b*.

Reflexive pronoun, use of, 16, *a*; 164.

Relative clauses, ordinary, 170-174; of purpose, 26; of characteristic, 32; causal, 171; concessive, 171.

Relative pronouns, use of, 170-174.

Result, clauses of, 29-33.

sē, use and reference of, 16, *a*; 164.

Secondary tenses, 25; secondary sequence, 25, 176, 187; 190, vi.

Separation, ablative of, 93; dative with verbs of, 80, *a*.

Sequence of tenses, 25, 176, 187, 190, vi.

Should, different values and ways of translating, 144.

Source, ablative of, 95.

Space, accusative of extent of, 128.

Specification, accusative of, 73; ablative of, 102.

Structure of sentences in Latin, 1-9; 204.

Subjective genitive, 84.

Subjunctive mood, in principal clauses, 134-136; in clauses of purpose, 24-27; of result, 29-32; in dependent questions, 35; in conditional clauses, 61, 63; in concessive clauses, 65; in conditional clauses of comparison, 68; with verbs of *fearing*, 138; with *quīn* and *quōminus*, 139; with *quod*, 147; with *cum*, 148, 151; with *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 67; 155; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 156; with *quī*, 26; 32; 171; in indirect discourse, 175; 186; of virtual indirect discourse, 177; by attraction, 177, i.

Substantival use of infinitive, 109-111.

Substantive clauses, 27; 31; 194-199.

Supine, uses of, 115-117.

Temporal clauses, 149-156.

Tenses of the indicative, 178-184; of the infinitive, 15; 110, ii.; of participles, 41; 122; in indirect discourse, 187; of the subjunctive, 25; 30; 33, iii; 36; 61; 63.

Time, duration of, 129; time *when*, 130; time *within which*, 131.

Translation, idiomatic, 201-205.

ūllus, use of, 166, *b*.

uterque, use of, 169, *b*.

utinam, use of, 135.

utrum....**an**, 38.

Value, genitive of, 88; ablative of, 100.

Volitive subjunctive, 134.

Wish, how expressed, 135.

Would, different values and ways of translating, 137.

182116
Carruthers, Adam and Robertson, J.C.
Matriculation Latin.

LaL.Gr
C3196m.2

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED